

Owner's Manual

Q2

Audi Vorsprung durch Technik

Warranty entitlement record

Vehicle identification number	
Model, engine output, gearbox, month and year of manufacture	
Engine and gearbox code	
Paint no., interior equipment no. Optional equipment no.	

Date of delivery to customer:

Audi dealer's stamp

Foreword

Thank you for choosing an Audi.

Your new Audi is a combination of superb craftsmanship and state-of-the-art technology. Audi recommends that you read this Owner's Manual carefully so that you quickly become familiar with your vehicle and can take full advantage of all its functions in everyday use.

In addition to information on how to use the controls and equipment, this Manual also contains important information on looking after your vehicle. This is relevant for your safety and will help preserve your car's value. The Manual also offers useful driving tips and advice, together with some suggestions on how to drive your car with minimum impact on the environment.

Audi wishes you safe and enjoyable motoring with your vehicle.

WARNING

Please read the important safety information about the use of child restraint systems on the front passenger's seat ⇨ *page 59*.

81B012720AJ

Notes on this Owner's Manual . . . 6

Quick reference . . . 7
Getting started . . . 7
Online information . . . 7
FAQs . . . 7
Front cabin . . . 10
Overview of warning and indicator lamps . 11

Displays and controls . . . 16
Instrument cluster . . . 16
Instrument cluster overview . . . 16
How to use the multi-function steering wheel . . . 17
Control buttons . . . 18
Changing views . . . 18
Coolant temperature gauge . . . 19
Rev counter . . . 19
Mileage recorder . . . 20
Outside temperature display . . . 20
Engine oil temperature gauge . . . 20
Boost display . . . 21
Vehicle functions . . . 21
Further function selector buttons . . . 24

Setting off . . . 25
Doors and windows . . . 25
Central locking system . . . 25
Keys . . . 30
Boot lid . . . 32
Child lock . . . 35
Electric windows . . . 36
Panorama sun roof . . . 37

Lights and vision . . . 39
Exterior lights . . . 39
Interior lights . . . 43
Clear vision . . . 44
Windscreen wipers . . . 45

Sitting correctly and safely . . . 49
Ensuring the correct seating position . . . 49
Front seats . . . 49
Steering wheel . . . 51
Head restraints . . . 51
Seat belts . . . 53
Airbag system . . . 56
Child restraint systems . . . 59

Storage and convenience . . . 65
Ashtray . . . 65
Cigarette lighter . . . 65
Power sources . . . 65
Cup holders . . . 66
Storage compartments . . . 66
Luggage compartment . . . 66
Roof carrier . . . 69

Heating and cooling . . . 71
Air conditioner . . . 71
Auxiliary heating/ventilation . . . 76
Fluids in the air conditioner . . . 79

Driving . . . 81
Starting the vehicle . . . 81
Driving . . . 84
Engine . . . 89
Start/stop system . . . 90
Brakes . . . 92
Electromechanical parking brake . . . 93
Releasing the parking lock manually . . . 95
Special driving situations . . . 96

Handling dynamics . . . 98
Audi drive select . . . 98
Suspension . . . 99
Steering . . . 99
Four-wheel drive (quattro) . . . 100
Electronic stabilisation control . . . 100

Towing a trailer . . . 103
Driving the vehicle with a trailer or caravan . . . 103
Removable towing bracket . . . 105

Assistance systems . . . 112
Driver assist systems . . . 112
General information . . . 112
Sensors for detecting the vehicle's surroundings . . . 113

Driver information . . . 116
Speed warning function . . . 116
Camera-based traffic sign recognition . . . 116
Rest recommendation . . . 119
Lap timer . . . 120

Driver assistance 122
Speed regulation systems 122
Adaptive cruise assist 124
Distance warning 134
Lane departure warning 135
Audi pre sense 138
Audi side assist 141
Emergency assist 143

Parking and manoeuvring 144
Introduction 144
Rear parking aid 144
Parking system plus 145
Reversing camera 148
Rear cross-traffic assist 149
Assisted parking 150
Park assist 153

Infotainment 156
Multi Media Interface 156
Notes on traffic safety 156
Introduction 156
MMI ON/OFF button with joystick function 156
Infotainment display 157
How to use the MMI 158
MMI touch 159
Rotary pushbutton with joystick function . 162
Speller for letters/numbers 164
Search function 165
Menus and symbols 166

Multi-function steering wheel plus 168
Introduction 168
Radio 168
Media 168
Telephone 169
Navigation 170

Speech dialogue system 174
General information 173
How to use the speech dialogue system . . 174
Notes on the overviews of commands . . . 175
Commands 175

Telephone 182
Introduction 182
Setting up 182
Using the Audi phone box 186
Using the telephone 187
Favourites 189
Messages 190
Listening to voicemail messages 193
Directory 193
Further settings 195
Troubleshooting 197

Audi connect 198
General information 198
Audi connect infotainment 199
Using the Wi-Fi hotspot 201
Audi connect infotainment services 201
Audi connect vehicle control services 203
Settings 204
Troubleshooting 206

Emergency call 207
Overview 207
Emergency call 207
Online roadside assistance call 208

Navigation 210
Calling up the navigation menu 210
Entering a destination 210
Personal route assist 216
Home address 217
Favourites 217
Directory contacts 218
Alternative routes 218
Further settings 218
Map 220
Satellite map 223
Map update 224
myAudi special destinations 225
Calling up traffic information 226
Troubleshooting 228

Radio 229
Calling up the radio menu 229
Radio functions 229
Radio menu 231
Favourites 231

81B012720AJ

Further settings 232
Troubleshooting 234

Media 235
Introduction 235
Notes 235
Media drives 236
Bluetooth audio player 238
Wi-Fi audio player 238
Online media and Internet radio 240
Multimedia connections 241
Playing media 245
Further settings 248
Supported media and file formats 250
Troubleshooting 251

Audi smartphone interface 254
Setting up 254
How to use 255
Troubleshooting 255

System settings 256
Setting the time and date 256
MMI settings 256
Connection manager 257
System update 260
Sound settings 260
Volume settings 261
Restarting the MMI system 262
Notes on software licences 262

Service and care 263
Checking and topping up fluids . 263
Fuel 263
Filling the tank 265
Selective catalytic reduction (AdBlue/ DEF) 267
Emission control system 270
Engine compartment 272
Engine oil 275
Cooling system 278
Brake fluid 280
Electrical system 281
Battery 281
Windscreen washer system 284
Service interval display 284

Wheels 286
Tyres and rims 286
Tyre pressure loss indicator 291

Care of vehicle and cleaning 293
General information 293
Washing the vehicle 293
Notes on cleaning and care 294
Taking the vehicle out of service 298

Self-help 299
Mobility 299
General information 299
Equipment 299
Tyre repair kit 300
Changing a wheel 302
Spare wheel 305
Jump-starting 306
Towing away 308

Fuses and bulbs 312
Fuses 312
Bulbs 314
Changing bulbs for rear lights 316

Customer information 317
Data protection 317
Information on data protection 317
Image recording 317
Data recorders 317
Information transmitted 318

Accessories and modifications to the vehicle 320
Maintenance, repairs and technical changes 320
Accessories and replacement parts 321

Technical data 323
Identification data 323
Vehicle data 323

Other information 326
Driving school mode 326
Trademarks and licences 326
Information according to EU chemicals regulation REACH 326
Information on waste disposal 326

Radio equipment 327
Additional customer information 330

Index 332

This Owner's Manual contains important information, safety precautions and tips for operating your vehicle.

MAKE SURE TO READ THE OWNER'S MANUAL AND KEEP IT IN A SAFE PLACE

Read this Owner's Manual carefully before using your vehicle. Please ensure that this Owner's Manual and all associated documents are always kept in the vehicle. This is especially important if you lend or sell the vehicle to others.

Updates to the Owner's Manual: Please bear in mind that Audi[1)] works continuously to develop and further improve all products and models. Audi reserves the right to alter any part of the vehicle and its equipment or technical specifications at any time. Depending on the vehicle and the market, such alterations may be possible via software updates. It is therefore also possible that the Owner's Manual will be updated. This is done by publishing supplements which may be made available to you as printed documents and in digital form. You can find out whether a digital or printed supplement applies to your vehicle by referring to the corresponding information in the supplement.

Vehicle-specific features: This Owner's Manual describes standard, country-specific and optional equipment which is available for the entire model series. It is also possible that some equipment and functions will only be introduced at a later date or are only available in specific markets. The Manual therefore also describes items which are not fitted in your specific vehicle. Illustrations are intended as a general guide and may vary from the equipment fitted in your vehicle. No legal commitment can therefore be implied by the information, illustrations and descriptions.

Indications of applicability: Some sections do not apply to all vehicles. In such cases, a text at the start of the section indicates which vehicles it applies to, e.g. "Applies to: vehicles with speed warning function". In addition to this, optional and/or vehicle-specific equipment and functions may be marked with an asterisk "* " or indicated by a corresponding remark (e.g. "depending on vehicle equipment").

Symbols and descriptive conventions in the Owner's Manual:

* Optional or vehicle-specific equipment

▶ Section continued on next page

⇨ *page 56* Cross-reference to other descriptions or subjects

⇨ ⚠ Cross-reference to a "WARNING"

References to **positions** such as "left", "right", "front" or "rear" are given as seen facing in the direction of travel.

WARNING

Texts with this symbol contain safety information. They warn you of serious dangers, possibly involving accident or injury.

CAUTION

Texts with this symbol draw your attention to a possible risk of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Texts with this symbol refer to points relevant to the protection of the environment.

Note

Texts with this symbol contain additional information of a more general nature.

1) "Audi" refers to AUDI AG, the importer for your country and the joint ventures.

Getting started

Online information

myAudi

You can access your Owner's Manual in digital form on myAudi using Audi online manuals. You can also find information on Audi Service, the maintenance of your vehicle or the Digital Service Schedule.

Important: You must have a myAudi account. You must have added your vehicle to the myAudi account.

- ▸ Go online to my.audi.com, or
- ▸ Start the myAudi app on your mobile device.

Note

Audi online manuals and the Digital Service Schedule are not available in all countries or on all mobile devices.

FAQs

Before you set off

- – How do I adjust the seats? ⇨ *page 49*
- – How do I adjust the steering wheel? ⇨ *page 51*
- – How does the selector lever work? ⇨ *page 85*
- – How does the electromechanical parking brake work? ⇨ *page 93*
- – How do I adjust the exterior mirrors? ⇨ *page 44*
- – How do I refuel my vehicle? ⇨ *page 265*
- – How do I refill the AdBlue tank on my diesel vehicle? ⇨ *page 268*
- – How do I operate the windscreen wipers on vehicles with rain sensor? ⇨ *page 45*
- – Where is the windscreen washer container? ⇨ *page 275*
- – How can I store the tyre pressures? ⇨ *page 292*
- – How do I drive with a trailer or caravan? ⇨ *page 103*

Breakdowns and emergencies

- – How do I jump-start my vehicle? ⇨ *page 306*
- – Where can I find the warning triangle? ⇨ *page 299*
- – Where can I find the first-aid kit? ⇨ *page 299*
- – Where can I find the recommended tyre pressures? ⇨ *page 288*
- – Which airbags are installed in my vehicle? ⇨ *page 56*
- – Where are the towline anchorages on the vehicle? ⇨ *page 308*

Useful functions

- – How can I automatically control the distance to the vehicle in front? ⇨ *page 124*
- – How can I stay in my lane more easily? ⇨ *page 135, Lane departure warning*
- – How can I receive a warning if I don't stay in my lane? ⇨ *page 135*
- – How can I use the parking aid? ⇨ *page 144*
- – How can I operate the main beam headlights automatically? ⇨ *page 40*
- – How can I drive off more easily? ⇨ *page 94, Hold assist*
- – How can I check the blind spot more easily when changing lanes? ⇨ *page 141, Audi side assist*
- – How can I adjust the brightness of the instrument and display lighting? ⇨ *page 43*
- – How can I change the vehicle set-up in different driving situations depending on my personal mood and driving style? ⇨ *page 98, Audi drive select*

Displays and controls

- – How do I switch on the infotainment system and adjust the volume? ⇨ *page 156*
- – How do I navigate through the infotainment menus? ⇨ *page 158, How to use the MMI*
- – How can I enter letters and numbers by handwriting? ⇨ *page 159, MMI touch*
- – How do I use the search function on the infotainment system? ⇨ *page 165, Search function*
- – How do I operate the infotainment system by voice? ⇨ *page 174*
- – Which functions can I control using the buttons on the steering wheel? ⇨ *page 17*
- – How do I set the date and time? ⇨ *page 256*

81B012720AJ

Infotainment

- How can I connect my mobile phone to the handsfree telephone system? ⇨ *page 182*
- How can I charge my mobile phone battery without a cable? ⇨ *page 186, Using the Audi phone box*
- How can I control certain apps on my smartphone via the infotainment system? ⇨ *page 254, Audi smartphone interface*
- How can I call up information online? ⇨ *page 198, Audi connect*
- How can I use the Wi-Fi hotspot? ⇨ *page 201*
- What ways are there to enter a navigation destination? ⇨ *page 210*
- How do I operate the map functions? ⇨ *page 220*
- How can I display traffic information? ⇨ *page 226*
- How can I listen to the radio? ⇨ *page 229*
- How can I play media? ⇨ *page 245*
- How can I play music from my mobile phone via the infotainment system? ⇨ *page 238, Bluetooth audio player*

Tips and tricks

- How can I unlock my vehicle from inside to let passengers in? ⇨ *page 27*
- How can I open all the windows from outside using the remote control key? ⇨ *page 37, Convenience open/close function*
- How can I adjust the opening position of the boot lid? ⇨ *page 34*
- How can I operate both sides of the air conditioner together? ⇨ *page 74*
- How can I deactivate the front passenger's airbag? ⇨ *page 58*
- How do I secure a child restraint system? ⇨ *page 59*
- What do I have to be aware of when driving through an automatic car wash? ⇨ *page 293*
- How can I drive in an efficient and environmentally conscious way? ⇨ *page 89*
- How can I see when the next service date is? ⇨ *page 284*

81B012720AJ

Front cabin

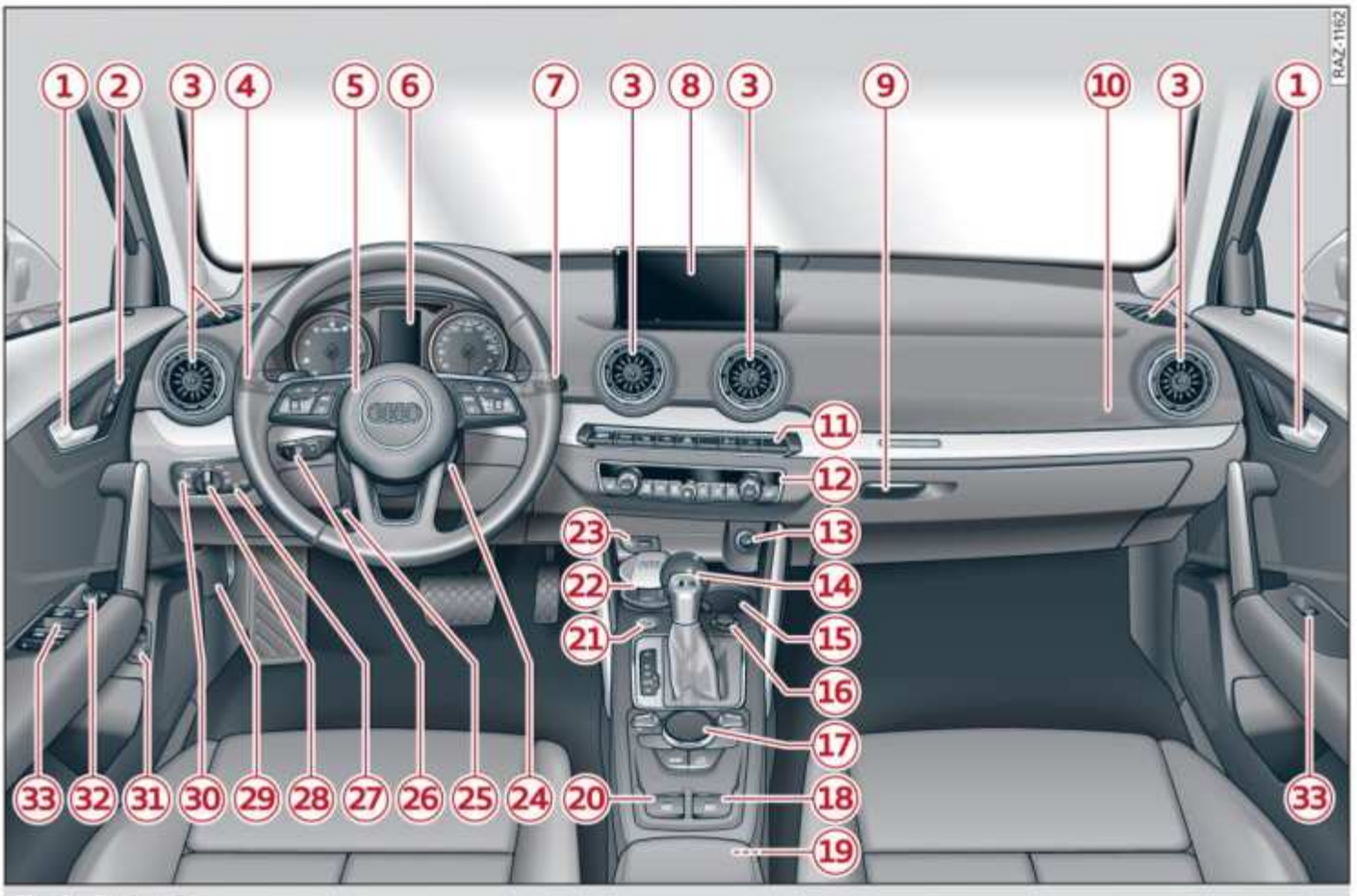


Fig. 1 Front cabin

① Interior door handle

② Central locking switch 27

③ Vents 76

④ Control lever for:

– Turn signals and main beam headlights 40

– Main beam assist 40

– Lane departure warning 135

– Lane guidance 128

⑤ Multi-function steering wheel with:

– Horn

– Driver's airbag 56

– Controls 17, 24

– Paddle levers 86

⑥ Instrument cluster 16

⑦ Control lever for windscreen wipers and washer 45

⑧ Infotainment display 157

⑨ Lockable glove box with:

– Key-operated switch for front passenger's airbag 58

– Drives for CDs and SIM/SD cards . 236, 199

⑩ Front passenger's airbag 56

⑪ Depending on equipment fitted, buttons for:

– Drive select 98

– Start/stop system 90

– Park assist 153

– Parking aid 145

– Hazard warning lights 42

– Electronic stabilisation control (ESC) 100

– Infotainment display 157

⑫ Air conditioner 71

⑬ Depending on equipment fitted:

– Cigarette lighter 65

– Electrical socket 65

⑭ Depending on equipment fitted:

– Selector lever (for automatic gearbox) 85

– Gear lever (for manual gearbox) . 85

⑮ Cup holder . . . . . 66 ▶

⑯ On/off button for MMI system 156
⑰ MMI control console 156
⑱ Hold assist 94
⑲ Centre armrest with storage compartment and the following optional equipment:
– Audi music interface 241
– AUX input/USB charging socket . 243
– Audi smartphone interface 254
– Audi phone box 186
⑳ Electromechanical parking brake .. 93
㉑ START ENGINE STOP button 81
㉒ Ashtray 65
㉓ Audi music interface 241
㉔ Steering column with optional equipment:
– Ignition lock 82
– Starting the engine in the event of a malfunction 83
㉕ Steering wheel adjustment 51
㉖ Control lever for:
– Speed regulation systems 122
– Adaptive cruise assist 124
㉗ Instrument lighting 43
㉘ Light switch 39
㉙ Bonnet lock release 274
㉚ Switches for:
– All-weather lights 39
– Rear fog light 39
㉛ Button for boot lid 33
㉜ Adjuster for exterior mirrors 44
㉝ Switches for:
– Window regulators 36
– Child lock 35

Note

– Some of the items of equipment listed in this section are only fitted on certain models or are optional extras.
– The arrangement of switches and controls on right-hand drive models* may be slightly different from the layout shown on ⇨ *page 10*. However, the symbols used to identify the controls are the same.

Overview of warning and indicator lamps

Description

The warning and indicator lamps light up or flash in the instrument cluster. Their purpose is to indicate functions or faults. Certain warning and indicator lamps light up when the ignition is switched on and must go back out when the engine is switched on or once the vehicle is moving.

Some of the warning and indicator lamps may be accompanied by a driver message and a warning tone. The warning/indicator lamps and driver messages can be masked by further displays. To display a warning or message again in the driver information system*, use the controls on the multi-function steering wheel to select the second display tab (driver messages) ⇨ *page 17*.

Some of the warning lamps may be displayed in different colours.

⚠ Central warning/indicator lamps

If the warning lamp ⚠ or indicator lamp ⚠ lights up, note the information in the instrument cluster.

Applies to: vehicles with monochrome display

If a driver message appears and a central warning lamp ⚠/central indicator lamp ⚠ lights up, the central warning/indicator lamp indicates the priority level of the warning. If a white indicator lamp also appears, the central warning/indicator lamp indicates its actual colour. For example, if lights up with ⚠, read the description for .

Overview

The equipment installed on your vehicle determines which of the following warning/indicator lamps are shown:

Red warning lamps	
⚠	Central warning lamp ⇨ *page 11*, instrument cluster ⇨ *page 16* ▶

81801 2720AJ

	Cooling system ⇨ *page 19*, ⇨ *page 278*, ⇨ *page 278*, ⇨ *page 279*
	Seat belt ⇨ *page 55*
	Gearbox ⇨ *page 88*
	Engine stopped while vehicle is moving ⇨ *page 90*
	Brake system ⇨ *page 93*, ⇨ *page 280*, electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 95*
	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 93*
	Steering ⇨ *page 99*
	Steering lock ⇨ *page 99*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 126*, take over braking prompt ⇨ *page 129*, safe start monitor ⇨ *page 133*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 126*, ⇨ *page 129*
	Take over steering prompt (adaptive cruise assist) ⇨ *page 129*
	Distance warning ⇨ *page 134*
	Lane departure warning ⇨ *page 136*
	Lane departure warning ⇨ *page 136*
	Pre sense ⇨ *page 138*, ⇨ *page 139*

	AdBlue ⇨ *page 267*
	AdBlue ⇨ *page 268*
	Bonnet ⇨ *page 274*
	Engine oil pressure ⇨ *page 276*
	Electrical system ⇨ *page 281*

Yellow indicator lamps

	Central indicator lamp ⇨ *page 11*
	Engine speed governing ⇨ *page 20*
	Engine speed governing ⇨ *page 20*, drive system ⇨ *page 90*
	Engine speed governing ⇨ *page 20*, drive system ⇨ *page 90*
	Central locking system ⇨ *page 27*
	Battery in remote control key ⇨ *page 32*
	Bulb monitor ⇨ *page 42*
	Dipped headlights ⇨ *page 42*
	Light sensor/rain sensor ⇨ *page 42*, ⇨ *page 48*
	Headlight range control ⇨ *page 42*
	Windscreen wipers ⇨ *page 48*
	Safety systems ⇨ *page 57*
	Preheating (glow plugs) ⇨ *page 82*

	Engine start system ⇨ *page 83*
	Convenience key ⇨ *page 83*
	Hill hold assist ⇨ *page 85*
	Gearbox ⇨ *page 88*, clutch ⇨ *page 88*
	Brake pads ⇨ *page 93*
	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 95*
	Suspension control ⇨ *page 99*
	Steering ⇨ *page 99*
	Steering lock ⇨ *page 99*
	Electronic stabilisation control ⇨ *page 101*, ⇨ *page 101*
ESC OFF	Electronic stabilisation control ⇨ *page 101*
	Electronic stabilisation control ⇨ *page 102*
	Anti-lock brake system ⇨ *page 102*
	Take over steering prompt (adaptive cruise assist) ⇨ *page 129*, take over steering prompt (lane departure warning) ⇨ *page 136*
	Lane departure warning ⇨ *page 136*, ⇨ *page 138*
	Pre sense ⇨ *page 138*, ⇨ *page 140*
	Audi side assist ⇨ *page 142*

	Emergency assist ⇨ *page 143*
	Emergency assist ⇨ *page 143*
	Parking aids ⇨ *page 147*
	Rear cross-traffic assist ⇨ *page 150*
	Park assist ⇨ *page 154*
	Emergency call function ⇨ *page 208*
	Emission control system ⇨ *page 265*, ⇨ *page 272*
	Fuel tank system ⇨ *page 265*, ⇨ *page 271*
	AdBlue ⇨ *page 267*
	AdBlue ⇨ *page 268*
	Particulate filter ⇨ *page 271*
	Engine oil level (MIN) ⇨ *page 276*
	Engine oil sensor ⇨ *page 276*, ⇨ *page 277*
	Engine warm-up requested ⇨ *page 276*
	Electrical system ⇨ *page 281*
	Washer fluid level ⇨ *page 284*
	Tyre pressure ⇨ *page 291*
TPMS	Tyre pressure ⇨ *page 291*

▶

Further indicator lamps	
	Turn signals ⇨ *page 40*, ⇨ *page 42*
	Turn signals ⇨ *page 40*, ⇨ *page 42*
	Rear seat belt ⇨ *page 55*
	Start/stop system ⇨ *page 91*
	Hold assist ⇨ *page 94*
	Trailer turn signals ⇨ *page 104*
	Cruise control ⇨ *page 122*
LIM	Speed limiter ⇨ *page 122*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 126*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 126*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 126*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 126*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 126*
	Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 130*
	Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 130*
km/h	Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 130*
	Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 130*
	Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 130*
	Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 130*
	Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 130*
	Lane departure warning ⇨ *page 136*
	Lane departure warning ⇨ *page 136*, ⇨ *page 137*
	Main beam headlights ⇨ *page 40*, ⇨ *page 41*
	Main beam assist ⇨ *page 40*
	Main beam assist ⇨ *page 40*, ⇨ *page 42*
	Rear seat belt ⇨ *page 55*
	Rear seat belt ⇨ *page 55*
	Auxiliary heating/ventilation ⇨ *page 77*, ⇨ *page 79*
	Convenience key ⇨ *page 83*
	Clutch ⇨ *page 88*
	Start/stop system ⇨ *page 91*
	Start/stop system ⇨ *page 91*
	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 95*
	Brakes ⇨ *page 95*
	Speed warning function ⇨ *page 116*
	Camera-based traffic sign recognition ⇨ *page 118*
	Rest recommendation ⇨ *page 119*
	Cruise control ⇨ *page 124*

LIM	Speed limiter ⇨ *page 124*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 126*, ⇨ *page 128*
	Predictive control ⇨ *page 130*, adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 134*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 131*, ⇨ *page 133*
	Lane departure warning ⇨ *page 136*
	Take over steering prompt (lane departure warning) ⇨ *page 136*
	Lane departure warning ⇨ *page 137*, ⇨ *page 138*
	Pre sense ⇨ *page 138*, ⇨ *page 140*
	Pre sense ⇨ *page 138*, ⇨ *page 139*
	Audi side assist ⇨ *page 142*
	Emergency assist ⇨ *page 143*
	Emergency assist ⇨ *page 143*
	Parking aids ⇨ *page 147*
	Rear cross-traffic assist ⇨ *page 150*
	Park assist ⇨ *page 154*
	AdBlue ⇨ *page 267*
	AdBlue ⇨ *page 268*

81B012720AJ

Instrument cluster

Instrument cluster overview



Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

Fig. 2 Instrument cluster overview



Applies to: vehicles with analogue instrument cluster

Fig. 3 Instrument cluster overview

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the following content may be displayed in the instrument cluster:

① Display
- – Coolant temperature gauge ... 19
- – Boost pressure display ... 21

② Left dial
- – Rev counter ... 19

③ Tab area ... 17

④ Central area ... 17

⑤ Status line (one or two lines)

⑥ Reset button for trip recorder ... 20

⑦ Right dial
- – Convenience display
- – Speedometer

⑧ Display
- – Fuel gauge ... 265

⑨ Additional display on right with speedometer

⑩ Additional display on left with:
- – Transmission position ... 85
- – Audi drive select ... 98 ▶

WARNING

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

The display may be deactivated if a serious system fault occurs. The warning lamp may also light up. Stop the vehicle safely. Seek professional assistance.

Note

- Most of the illustrations on the following pages show the colour analogue instrument cluster*. The display and position of the elements may be different on the monochrome instrument cluster or the Audi virtual cockpit*.
- You can change the measurement units for temperature or speed, etc. via the infotainment system ⇨ *page 256*.
- If there is a fault in the instruments, the letters **DEF** appear in the trip recorder display. Have the fault rectified as soon as possible.
- Depending on the vehicle equipment, the instrument lighting (for dials and needles) may be switched on when the ignition is on and the vehicle's lights are off. The illumination of the dials and needles is automatically reduced as it becomes dark outside and is eventually switched off altogether. This function is intended to remind the driver to switch on the dipped headlights in good time.

How to use the multi-function steering wheel

Applies to: multi-function steering wheel plus



Fig. 4 Driver information system display (Audi virtual cockpit)

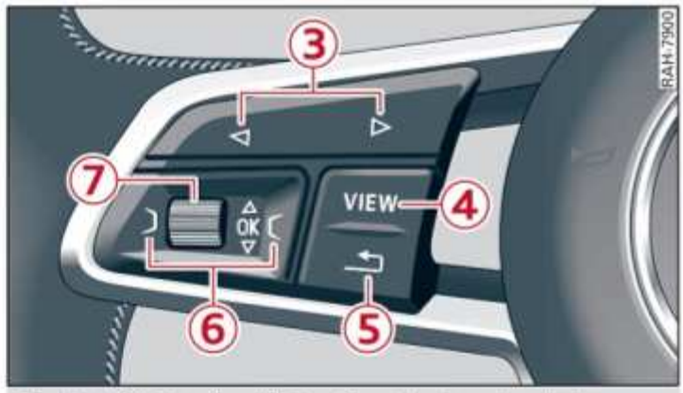


Fig. 5 Left side of multi-function steering wheel plus

The information in the instrument cluster is organised in different tabs ①. The details from each tab are displayed in the central area ②.

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

Selecting a tab

▸ Press the ◁ or ▷ button ③ repeatedly until the desired tab is selected.

Returning to the previous function level

▸ Press the ⮌ button ⑤.

Opening/closing a menu

▸ Press the left or right control button ❳ or ❲ ⑥.

Selecting and confirming a function

Important: A menu or a list must be displayed.

▸ To select a function, scroll the left thumbwheel ⑦ to the desired function.
▸ To confirm a selection, press the left thumbwheel ⑦.

Changing views

▸ Press the VIEW button ④ ⇨ *page 18*.

Overview of tabs

The following tabs are available depending on the vehicle equipment:

Symbol	Description
	Vehicle functions
	Driver messages (only visible if one or more warning/indicator lamps or driver messages are displayed)
	Multimedia

Symbol	Description
	Telephone
	Navigation

Control buttons

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

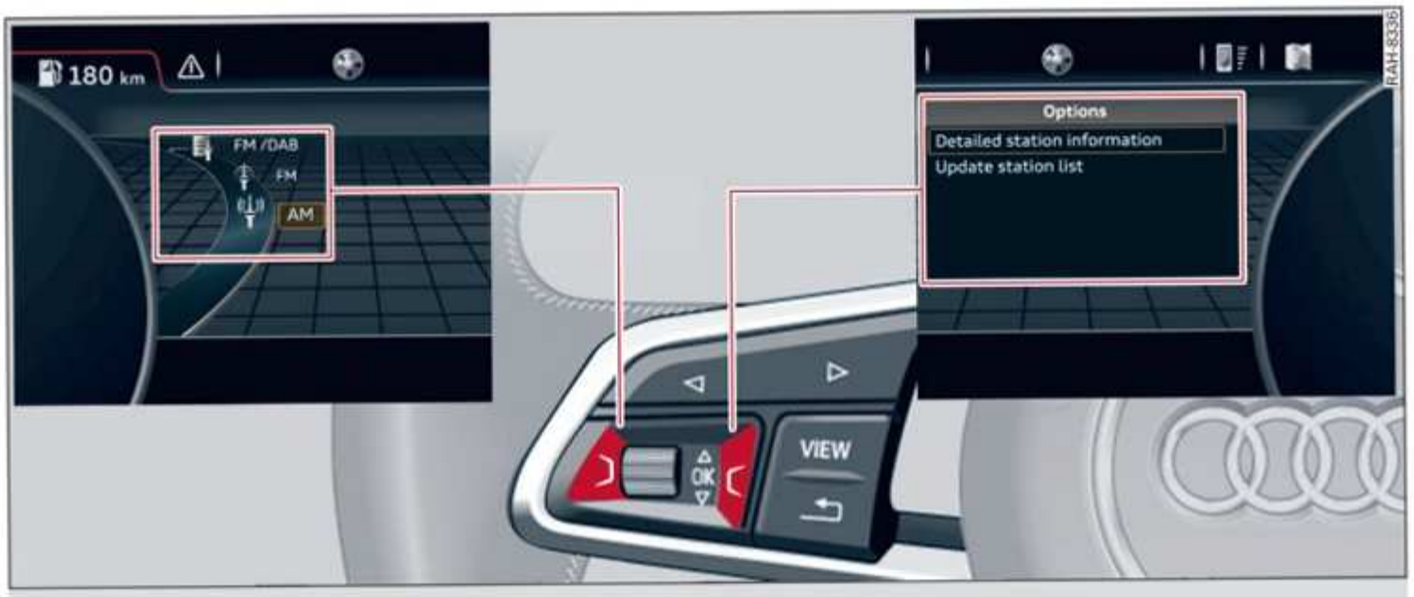


Fig. 6 Selection menu and options menu

Left control button

– **To call up/close the selection menu**: Press the left control button ⇨ *Fig. 6* on the multi-function steering wheel. You can use the left thumbwheel to select and confirm a function in the selection menu (e.g. to select a new waveband).

Right control button

– **To call up/close the options menu**: Press the right control button ⇨ *Fig. 6* on the multi-function steering wheel. You can use the left thumbwheel in the options menu to select context-sensitive functions or change certain settings (e.g. extended programme information).

Note

Whether a selection menu or options menu is available depends on the function you have selected.

Changing views

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit



Fig. 7 Standard view: classic/sport*



Fig. 8 Extended view

Changing views

- Press the VIEW button ④ ⇨ *page 17, Fig. 5* to switch from the standard view ⇨ *Fig. 7* to the extended view ⇨ *Fig. 8*. Press the VIEW button again to return to the standard view.

Choosing a standard view

Applies to: vehicles with sport view

You can choose between classic and sport view, depending on your vehicle's equipment.

- Call up the first tab (Vehicle functions) using the ◁ / ▷ button on the multi-function steering wheel.
- Select the following on the multi-function steering wheel: left control button > **Layout** > **Sport layout** or **Classic layout**.

Changing settings for additional display

The additional displays that can be selected vary depending on the equipment installed on your vehicle.

- Call up the first tab (Vehicle functions) using the ◁ / ▷ button on the multi-function steering wheel.
- On the multi-function steering wheel, select right control button > **Additional display**.
- Select the desired additional display.

Note

Applies to: vehicles with sport view

Always select the desired standard view before starting a journey, because the display functions will not be available for a few seconds.

Coolant temperature gauge

Applies to: vehicles with coolant temperature gauge

The coolant temperature gauge ① ⇨ *page 16* only works when the ignition is switched on. In order to avoid possible damage to the engine, please read the following notes for the different temperature ranges.

Engine cold

If the LEDs are still in the lower range of the display, this indicates that the engine has not yet reached operating temperature. Avoid high engine speeds, full acceleration and heavy engine loads.

Normal temperature

The LEDs will settle somewhere in the centre of the display once the engine has reached operating temperature. If the warning lamp lights up in the instrument cluster display, the coolant temperature is too high ⇨ *page 278*.

CAUTION

– Additional lights and other accessories in front of the air inlet reduce the cooling effect of the radiator. At high outside temperatures and high engine loads, there is a risk of the engine overheating.
– The front spoiler also ensures proper distribution of the cooling air when the vehicle is moving. If the spoiler is damaged this can reduce the cooling effect, which could cause the engine to overheat. Seek professional assistance.

Note

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine

These engines are so efficient that they may not reach their full operating temperature in very cold weather. This is quite normal and no cause for concern.

Rev counter

The rev counter ② ⇨ *page 16* indicates the number of engine revolutions per minute. The start of ▶

the red zone on the dial indicates the maximum engine speed which may be used briefly in all gears when the engine is warm and after it has been run in properly. However, it is advisable to change up a gear or move the selector lever to D/S (or lift your foot off the accelerator) before the needle reaches the red zone.

Engine speed governing

Applies to: vehicles with engine speed governing

If the indicator lamp lights up, the engine speed will automatically be governed to the speed displayed in the instrument cluster. This protects the engine components, e.g. against overheating or when starting a cold engine.

The rev limiter is deactivated when you take your foot off the accelerator briefly while the engine is running at its normal operating temperature.

If the rev limiter has been activated because of a fault in the engine management system, the indicator lamp or EPC will also light up. Make sure that the engine speed does not exceed the speed displayed in the driver information system, for example when shifting down a gear. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

CAUTION

The rev counter needle ② must only ever briefly go into the red zone on the scale; otherwise there is a risk of engine damage. The start of the red zone on the dial is different for some engine versions.

Mileage recorder

The trip recorder and odometer are displayed in the status line ⑤ ⇨ *page 16*.

The trip recorder shows the distance that has been travelled since it was last reset. It is used to measure individual journeys. The odometer records the vehicle's total mileage.

Resetting trip recorder

▸ To reset the trip recorder to zero, press the reset button ⑥ ⇨ *page 16*.

Outside temperature display

The outside temperature is displayed in the status line ⑤ ⇨ *page 16*.

When the vehicle is stationary or travelling at very low speeds, the temperature displayed in the instrument cluster may be higher than the actual outside temperature as a result of the heat radiated from the engine.

At temperatures below +5°C a snowflake symbol appears next to the temperature display ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

Do not rely on the outside temperature display as an ice warning. Bear in mind that there may be patches of ice on the roads even at outside temperatures around +5 °C – risk of accident!

Engine oil temperature gauge

Applies to: vehicles with engine oil temperature gauge

The engine oil temperature is indicated by a bar display in the instrument cluster, depending on your vehicle's equipment.

Applies to vehicles with analogue instrument cluster: Call up the lap timer ⇨ *page 120*.

▸ Applies to vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit: Call up the vehicle functions tab and change to the extended view or the sport view* ⇨ *page 18*.

The display shows --- °C at low engine oil temperatures.

The engine has reached its operating temperature in normal driving conditions when the oil temperature is between 80 °C and 120 °C. If the engine is running under increased load at high ambient temperatures, the oil temperature may increase above this value. This is no cause for concern, provided that the indicator/warning lamps or are not lit.

Boost display

Applies to: vehicles with boost display

The current boost level of the engine (that is, the current charge pressure) is indicated by a bar.

▸ Applies to vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit: Call up the vehicle functions tab and change to the extended view or the sport view* ⇨ *page 18*.

Vehicle functions

Overview

The on-board computer is displayed in the first tab of the driver information system. Further vehicle functions are available depending on the equipment on your vehicle.

▸ Press the left control button.

– On-board computer ⇨ *page 21*, or ⇨ *page 22*
– Efficiency program ⇨ *page 23*
– Digital speedometer
– Lap timer ⇨ *page 120*
– Assist
– Traffic signs ⇨ *page 116*
– Reduced display
– Lap times ⇨ *page 120*
– Statistics ⇨ *page 121*
– Layout ⇨ *page 18*

On-board computer (Audi virtual cockpit)

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit



Fig. 9 Instrument cluster: Consumption display

Resetting values to zero

Important: The **consumption**, **short-term memory** or **long-term memory** display must be selected.

▸ To reset the figures in the selected memory to zero, press the left thumbwheel on the multi-function steering wheel for one second. Or:
▸ On the multi-function steering wheel, select right control button > **Reset values***.

The equipment installed on your vehicle determines which of the following displays are available:

– Date and time ⇨ *page 256*
– Average fuel consumption ⇨ *page 21*
– AdBlue range ⇨ *page 267*
– Short-term memory summary
– Long-term memory summary
– Energy consumers ⇨ *page 21*
– Driver assistance ⇨ *page 122*
– Traffic sign recognition

The short-term memory collects the information on a journey from the time the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If the journey is resumed within two hours after the ignition is switched off, the new figures are automatically included in the calculation.

Unlike the short-term memory, the long-term memory is not erased automatically. In this way, you can determine the period for which you wish the on-board computer to supply driving information.

Average fuel consumption

The current power consumption can be shown in a bar display. The average power consumption from the short-term memory can also be displayed. If the bar turns green, your vehicle is saving energy (e.g. using recuperation).

Energy consumers*

In the **Energy consumers** view, auxiliary equipment currently affecting the vehicle's fuel consumption is listed. The display shows up to three energy consumers. The energy consumer drawing the most power appears at the top of ▸

81B012720AJ

the list. If more than three energy consumers are switched on, the ones currently using the most power are displayed. In addition, a scale indicates the overall current fuel consumption of all energy consumers.

Economy tips*

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select and efficiency mode

In **efficiency** mode, economy tips are shown briefly on the instrument cluster display in certain situations where fuel economy is affected. By following these economy tips, you can save fuel.

To clear an economy tip from the display immediately, press the left thumbwheel on the multi-function steering wheel.

To activate/deactivate economy tips: Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > **Audi drive select**. Select: **efficiency** > right control button > **Economy tips**.

Note

- The date, the time and the time/date display format can be changed via the infotainment system ⇨ *page 256*.
- The economy tips are not always displayed in every conceivable situation, but are deliberately spaced out over time.
- Once you have cleared an economy tip from the display, it will not appear again until the next time you switch on the ignition.

On-board computer (analogue instrument cluster)

Applies to: vehicles with analogue instrument cluster



Fig. 10 Instrument cluster: Consumption display

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, you may be able to call up different displays on the on-board computer. Alternatively, specific types of information may be shown, such as the mileage recorder.

Resetting values to zero

Important: The **consumption**, **short-term memory** or **long-term memory** display must be selected.

▸ To reset the figures in the selected memory to zero, press the left thumbwheel on the multi-function steering wheel for one second.

On-board computer

On the on-board computer you can call up the following displays in turn by scrolling the left thumbwheel on the multi-function steering wheel:

- Date ⇨ *page 256*
- Range
- AdBlue range* ⇨ *page 267*
- Short-term memory 1
- Average fuel consumption
- Long-term memory 2
- Engine oil temperature*

The short-term memory collects the information on a journey from the time the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If the journey is resumed within two hours after the ignition is switched off, the new figures are automatically included in the calculation.

Unlike the short-term memory, the long-term memory is not erased automatically. In this way, you can determine the period for which you wish the on-board computer to supply driving information.

Note

The date, the time and the time/date display format can be changed via the infotainment system ⇨ *page 256*.

Efficiency program

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency program

Resetting values to zero

▸ To reset the figures in the selected memory to zero, press the left thumbwheel on the multi-function steering wheel for one second.

The efficiency program can help to save fuel. It evaluates fuel efficiency data, shows a list of auxiliary equipment affecting fuel consumption, and suggests gear changes. It also provides economy tips for saving fuel.

The efficiency program uses the trip and fuel consumption data from the short-term memory. When you clear the data from the efficiency program, the values in the short-term memory are reset to zero.

The following additional displays are available in the efficiency program, depending on the vehicle equipment:

– **Advanced gear shift indicator**: The advanced gear shift indicator is based on the same logic as the "regular" gear shift indicator. The "regular" gear shift indicator disappears from the display when the advanced gear shift indicator appears ⇨ *page 23*.
– **Energy consumers**: The efficiency program shows a list of energy consumers currently affecting the vehicle's fuel consumption. The display shows up to three energy consumers. The energy consumer drawing the most power appears at the top of the list. If more than three energy consumers are switched on, the ones currently using the most power are displayed. In addition, a scale indicates the overall current fuel consumption of all energy consumers.
– **Economy tips**: Economy tips will automatically appear intermittently in the efficiency program in certain situations. By following these economy tips, you can save fuel. To clear an economy tip from the display immediately, press any of the controls on the multi-function steering wheel.

Gear shift indicator

To familiarise yourself with the gear shift indicator, drive in the normal way to start with. A gear change will be recommended on the instrument cluster display if the gear you are in is not the most economical choice. If no gear change is recommended, you are already in the most economical gear.

Vehicles with manual gearbox

– ▶ **Change up a gear:** The suggested gear appears to the right of the current gear when a higher gear is recommended.
– ◀ **Change down a gear:** The suggested gear appears to the left of the current gear when a lower gear is recommended.
– ▶**N**: This is displayed in place of the current gear. Put the gear lever in neutral and take your foot off the clutch pedal. The engine will be switched off automatically.

Vehicles with automatic gearbox

The display is only visible in tiptronic mode ⇨ *page 86*. The symbol ↑ after the current gear means **change up a gear**.

CAUTION

The gear shift indicator is intended to help the driver save fuel. It is not intended to recommend the right gear for all driving situations. In certain situations, only the driver can choose the correct gear (for instance when overtaking or driving up a steep gradient).

Further function selector buttons

Applies to: multi-function steering wheel plus

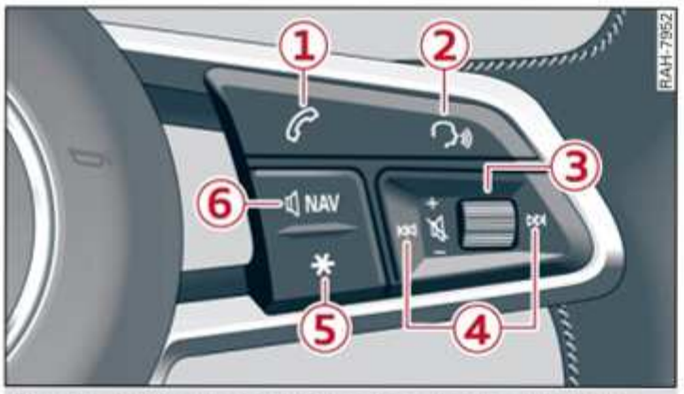


Fig. 11 Right side of multi-function steering wheel plus

Adjusting the volume

You can adjust the volume of an audio source or system message (e.g. during a speech dialogue) directly while it is being played.

- To turn the volume up/down, scroll the right thumbwheel ③ ⇨ *Fig. 11* up/down or turn the volume control knob ⇨ *page 156, Fig. 123* clockwise or anti-clockwise.
- To mute the sound, press the right thumbwheel or the volume control knob.

Selecting the previous/next track/station

- Press the |◁◁ / ▷▷| button ④ or briefly push the volume control knob to the left/right.

Fast forward/rewind

- Press and hold the |◁◁ / ▷▷| button ④ or push the volume control knob to the left/right and hold it there until the desired playing position is reached.

Quick access button on steering wheel

Button ⑤ gives you quick access to various functions, depending on your vehicle's equipment.

You can program the ✳ button with various functions.

- To use the function currently programmed, press the ✳ button.
- To find out which function is currently programmed, press and hold the ✳ button. Or:
- Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Steering wheel button**.
- Select and confirm the desired function.

Repeating the last navigation cue

- Press the NAV button ⑥ while route guidance is active.
- To adjust the volume of the navigation cues, scroll the right thumbwheel ③ up/down during route guidance while a navigation cue is being spoken.

Switching the voice control function on/off

button ②; refer to ⇨ *page 174*.

Operating telephone functions

button ①; refer to ⇨ *page 169*.

Doors and windows

Central locking system

General information

WARNING

- Always switch off the ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. This is especially important if children are left in the car. They might otherwise be able to start the vehicle or use power-operated equipment such as the electric windows – this could lead to injuries.
- Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside: the windows cannot then be opened from the inside. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.
- Applies to vehicles with anti-theft alarm system: Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the safelock mechanism* is activated: the doors cannot then be opened from the inside ⇨ *page 28, Anti-theft alarm system*. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.
- Applies to child lock: Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car when the child lock is activated: the rear doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside – risk of fatal injury!

Description

All doors and the boot lid can be locked or unlocked simultaneously via the central locking system. When you unlock the vehicle, the central locking system will unlock either the entire vehicle or the driver's door only, depending on the setting you have selected on the MMI system ⇨ *page 26*. The turn signals will flash twice when the vehicle is unlocked and once when the vehicle is locked. If the turn signals do not flash when you lock the vehicle, check that all the doors and the boot lid are properly closed.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, you have the following options for locking/unlocking your vehicle centrally:

- Vehicle key ⇨ *page 31*
- Sensors in the front door handles ⇨ *page 31*
- Lock on the driver's door ⇨ *page 28*
- Interior central locking switch ⇨ *page 27*
- Mobile device (e.g. smartphone) ⇨ *page 203*

Key / vehicle key

In this manual, the word "key" may refer to a remote or convenience key* or a mobile device.

"Vehicle key" refers to the remote control key or convenience key*. The convenience key* is a remote control key with special functions ⇨ *page 31* and ⇨ *page 81*.

Automatic locking function

The vehicle will be locked again automatically if you do not open one of the doors, the boot lid or the bonnet within a short time after unlocking the car. This function prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked if the unlock button is pressed by mistake.

Automatic locking function (Auto Lock)

The Auto Lock function locks the doors and the boot lid when the vehicle exceeds a speed of about 15 km/h. The vehicle is unlocked again immediately when the unlock button in the central locking switch is pressed.

You can open the doors individually from the inside by pulling the inside door handle.

In the event of an accident in which the airbags inflate, the doors will be automatically unlocked to facilitate access and assistance.

Accidental lock-out

To prevent yourself from being locked out, only lock the vehicle when there are no keys in the vehicle and all of the doors and the boot lid are closed.

The central locking system prevents you from being locked out of the vehicle in the following situations: ▶

– When the driver's door is open, you cannot lock the vehicle by pressing the button on the remote control key or touching the locking sensor* on one of the front doors.
– Applies to vehicles with convenience key: The boot lid will automatically spring open again slightly if the vehicle key that was last in use is left inside the luggage compartment when the boot lid is closed ⇨ (!).
– Applies to vehicles with convenience key: If the vehicle key that was last in use is detected in the vehicle, it is not possible to lock the vehicle from the outside ⇨ (!).

WARNING

Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ *page 25*.

CAUTION

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

The following applies when locking the vehicle:

– If the most recently used vehicle key is detected in the passenger compartment, it is not possible to lock the vehicle **by sensor** from the outside. Take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle again; otherwise the vehicle will not be secure.
– If you attempt to lock the vehicle **using the button on the vehicle key** while the front passenger's door or a rear door is open, the vehicle will be locked initially when you close the door if you have accidentally left the key in the vehicle. However, if the keyless system detects a vehicle key inside the vehicle after it is locked as described above, the vehicle is unlocked again. The turn signals flash several times to indicate this. However, if you do not open the vehicle and take out the key within a short period of time, the vehicle will be locked automatically (this prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked indefinitely). In this case, the vehicle key will be locked inside the passenger compartment.
– If the boot lid is closed and the vehicle key that was last in use is detected inside the boot, the boot lid will spring open again slightly. The turn signals flash several times to indicate this. The doors will be locked. Take the vehicle key with you; otherwise it will not be protected against unauthorised access.

Note

– Never leave any valuable items in the vehicle unattended. Even a locked vehicle is not a safe.
– When you lock the vehicle, the LED on the driver's window sill flashes. If the LED is still on about 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked, the central locking system is not working properly. You should have the malfunction repaired by a qualified workshop.

Adjusting the settings for the central locking system

The central locking system can be adjusted to your individual settings. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

▸ Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Central locking**.

Doors to unlock

– If you select **All**, all doors and the boot lid will be unlocked when you unlock the vehicle.
– If you select **Driver's door**, only the driver's door will be unlocked. You can still unlock all the doors and the boot lid by pressing the button on the vehicle key twice. On vehicles with convenience key*, only one door will be unlocked (whichever door you grip by the handle).

The whole vehicle is always locked when you press the button.

Long press to open windows

You can set whether all windows and the panorama sun roof* can be opened using the vehicle key ⇨ *page 37, Convenience open/close function*. Pressing and holding the button on the vehicle key will always close all the windows and the panorama sun roof*. ▶

Fold mirrors

You can set whether the exterior mirrors fold in automatically when the vehicle is locked.

Tone when locking[1)]

You can set the system to give an acoustic signal when you lock the vehicle.

Central locking switch



Fig. 12 Driver's door: Central locking switch

▸ To lock/unlock the vehicle, press the 🔒 / 🔓 button ⇨ ⚠.

Please note the following when you use the central locking switch to lock your vehicle:

- The doors and the boot lid cannot be opened from the outside (for safety reasons, when stopped at traffic lights, etc.).
- The LED in the central locking switch lights up when all of the doors are closed and locked.
- You can open the doors individually from the inside by pulling the inside door handle.
- In the event of an accident in which the airbags inflate, doors locked from the inside will be automatically unlocked to facilitate access and assistance.

⚠ WARNING

- Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ *page 25*.
- The central locking switch also works when the ignition is switched off.
- The central locking switch inside the vehicle is not operative if you lock the vehicle from the outside.

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Automatic gearbox: **Driver's door: fault. Shift to P before leaving vehicle. See owner's manual**

A malfunction has occurred in the driver's door. Select transmission position P to hold the vehicle before getting out. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

1) This function is not available on all export versions.

Locking/unlocking the doors manually

If the central locking system should fail to work at any time, the doors will have to be locked/unlocked separately.

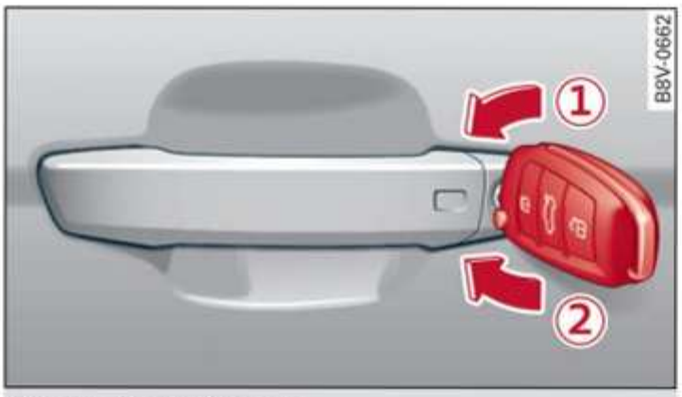


Fig. 13 Driver's door lock

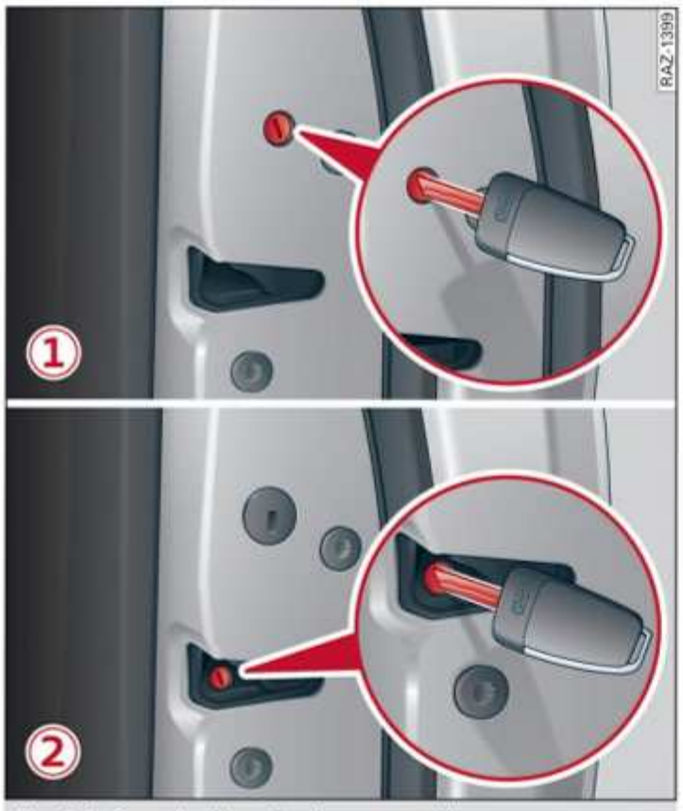


Fig. 14 Door: Locking the door manually

Applies to vehicles with anti-theft alarm system: Switch on the ignition or press the button on the vehicle key after opening the driver's door manually. Otherwise the alarm will be triggered. The anti-theft alarm system is not activated when the doors are locked manually.

Locking/unlocking the driver's door with the vehicle key

- Fold open the vehicle key ⇨ *page 30, Fig. 15*.
- To unlock the driver's door, turn the key to the unlock position ① ⇨ *Fig. 13* ⇨ ⓘ.
- To open the driver's door, pull the door handle.
- Manual gearbox: To lock the driver's door, turn the key to the lock position ② once ⇨ ⚠.
- Automatic gearbox: To lock the driver's door, select transmission position P, close the door and turn the key to the lock position ② once ⇨ ⚠.

Locking front passenger's door/rear doors with the vehicle key

The mechanical locking device is located on the end face of the doors ① or in the lock mechanism ② ⇨ *Fig. 14*. It is only visible when the door is open.

- Fold open the vehicle key ⇨ *page 30, Fig. 15*.
- If necessary, pull the cap out of the opening ⇨ *Fig. 14*.
- Insert the vehicle key in the slot inside and turn it as far as the stop to the right (if the door is on the right side) or to the left (if the door is on the left side).
- If necessary, insert the cap to seal the opening and close the door.

Once the front passenger's door/rear doors have been closed, they can no longer be opened from the outside. The door can be opened from the inside by pulling the door handle once. If the child lock is engaged on one of the rear doors, the door can be opened by pulling the inside door handle and then opening the door from the outside.

⚠ WARNING

Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ *page 25*.

ⓘ CAUTION

Ensure that you only insert the key in the lock in the direction illustrated to avoid damaging the key and the lock ⇨ *Fig. 13*. On right-hand drive vehicles, the key should be inserted the other way around correspondingly.

Anti-theft alarm system

Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system

If the anti-theft alarm system senses interference with the vehicle it triggers an audible and visible alarm. The anti-theft alarm system is ▶

activated/deactivated automatically when you lock/unlock your vehicle. When the alarm is deployed, it switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

Switching the alarm off manually

- To deactivate the alarm press the button on the remote control key or switch on the ignition.

Depending on the equipment on your vehicle, the following components may be integrated in the alarm system:

Anti-theft alarm

The alarm is triggered if the boot lid, the bonnet or one of the doors is forced open, or if a door is opened after it is unlocked by turning the key in the lock.

Interior monitor and tow-away protection

The alarm is triggered if movements (e.g. of animals) are detected in the interior or if the vehicle's angle of inclination is changed (e.g. during transport).

You can prevent the alarm from being triggered accidentally by deactivating the interior monitor and/or tow-away protection.

Safelock[1)]

The doors can no longer be opened from the inside. This makes it more difficult to break into the vehicle ⇨ ⚠. The message **Be aware of door safelock. See owner's manual** appears on the instrument cluster display when you switch off the ignition as a reminder that the safelock mechanism* will be activated.

You must deactivate the safelock mechanism if you leave people behind in the vehicle.

Deactivating the interior monitor/tow-away protection and safelock[1)]

There are various ways to deactivate the interior monitor/tow-away protection and safelock mechanism*:

- Press the button on the vehicle key a second time **within 2 seconds**. Or:
- Applies to vehicles with convenience key: Touch the sensor on the front door handle a second time **within 2 seconds**. Or:
- Turn the vehicle key in the door lock to the lock position a second time **within 2 seconds**.

If you lock the vehicle in this way, the interior monitor/tow-away protection and safelock mechanism* will remain deactivated until the vehicle is unlocked again.

When the function has been deactivated, the LED on the door sill will flash briefly and then remain off for approx. half a minute.

WARNING

Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the safelock mechanism* is activated: the doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.

CAUTION

- If you switch off the safelock mechanism*, the interior monitor and tow-away protection are automatically disabled, and vice versa. This means that your vehicle is no longer completely protected against break-ins and theft.
- Applies to vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control services: The safelock mechanism is not switched on if you use Audi connect services to lock the vehicle remotely.

Note

- The interior monitor and tow-away protection will only function as intended if the windows and the sun roof* are closed.
- The alarm is triggered if you pull one of the interior door handles, even if you have switched off the safelock mechanism*.

1) This function may be optional in your country and is not available in all countries/equipment versions.

Keys

Set of keys

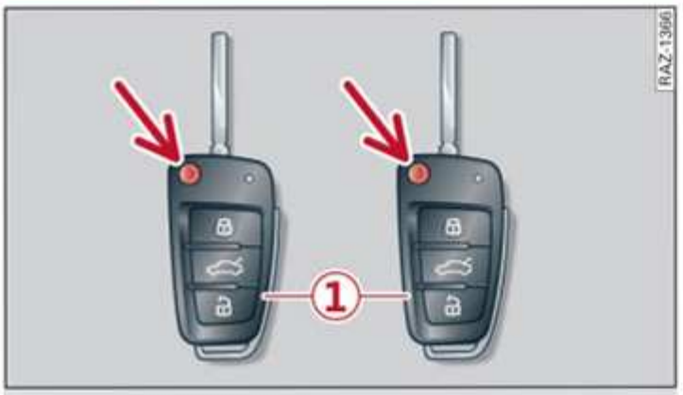


Fig. 15 Keys supplied with the vehicle

Two keys are supplied with each new vehicle.

① Vehicle key

The vehicle key can be used to lock and unlock the car. Press the release button ⇨ *Fig. 15* to make the key spring out of the handle.

You can use the vehicle key to

- activate and deactivate the front passenger's airbag* ⇨ *page 58*.
- Applies to vehicles with lockable glove box: lock/unlock the glove box.
- lock/unlock the doors manually ⇨ *page 28*.
- release the boot lid manually ⇨ *page 35*.

Replacing a key

If you should lose a vehicle key, please contact an Audi dealer. Have the remote control coding for that vehicle key deactivated. For this purpose you should bring all available keys with you. It is also important to notify your insurance company if a key has been lost.

Applies to Audi connect vehicle control services: If you should lose a mobile device on which Audi connect vehicle control is active (remote locking/unlocking), the corresponding device must be deactivated ⇨ *page 203*.

Electronic immobiliser

The immobiliser is designed to prevent unauthorised persons from driving the vehicle.

It may not be possible to start the vehicle if there is another vehicle key from a different make of vehicle on the same key ring.

Data stored on the vehicle key

Data related to the service and maintenance of the vehicle are stored continuously on your vehicle key while you are driving. Your Audi dealer can read out the data and will then be able to tell you what service work is required.

WARNING

Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ *page 25*.

CAUTION

The key must not be exposed to excessive temperatures; do not leave it in the sun.

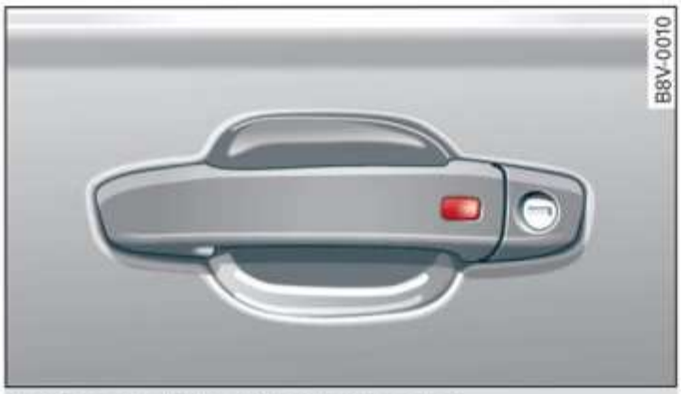
For the sake of the environment

Batteries and electric/electronic equipment must be disposed of appropriately ⇨ *page 326, Information on waste disposal*.

Note

- The function of the vehicle key may be impaired by interference from other nearby radio signals (for example from a mobile telephone or TV transmitter) if these are in the same frequency range. You should always check that your vehicle is locked.
- You can check how many keys are initialised for your vehicle. Select the following on the infotainment system: **MENU** button > **CAR** > left control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Car information**.
- A key fob may be attached to the set of keys when the vehicle is delivered from the factory. The key fob contains information on the vehicle keys. The key fob can be used to order new vehicle keys. Please store the key fob in a safe place and give it to the new owner if you sell the car.

Locking and unlocking the vehicle



Applies to: vehicles with convenience key
Fig. 16 Door handle: Sensor* for locking

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, there are various ways to lock/unlock your vehicle. You can select which doors are unlocked in the settings on the infotainment system display ⇨ *page 26*.

Unlocking/locking via buttons on vehicle key

- To unlock the vehicle, press the 🔓 button ⇨ *page 30, Fig. 15*.
- To lock the vehicle, press the 🔒 button **once**.

Unlocking/locking via sensors

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

- To unlock the doors/boot lid, take hold of the front door/boot lid handle.
- To lock the vehicle, close the door and touch the sensor on the front door handle **once** ⇨ *Fig. 16*. Do not take hold of the door handle when doing so, otherwise the vehicle will not be locked. Once the doors have been locked, they cannot be opened again immediately. This will enable you to check that the doors are properly closed.

Deactivating unlocking via sensors

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

You can deactivate the function for unlocking the vehicle with the convenience key (keyless entry) for one lock/unlock cycle.

- Automatic gearbox: Move the selector lever to position P; otherwise it will not be possible to lock the vehicle.
- Close the door.
- Press the lock button 🔒 on the convenience key and touch the sensor on the door handle (driver's door) once within five seconds ⇨ *Fig. 16*. Do not take hold of the door handle when doing so, otherwise the vehicle will not be locked.
- To check if the function has been deactivated, wait at least ten seconds and then pull the door handle. It should not be possible to open the door.

The vehicle can be unlocked the next time only by using the remote control key or by turning the key in the lock. Keyless entry is reactivated the following time the vehicle is locked/unlocked.

Locking/unlocking the vehicle using the Audi connect vehicle control services[1)]

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control services

Important: The Audi connect vehicle control services must have been set up ⇨ *page 203, Audi connect vehicle control services*. The vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched off.

Please note the information on the safelock mechanism ⇨ (!) *in Anti-theft alarm system on page 29*.

WARNING

Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ *page 25*.

Note

- Do not use the vehicle key when the vehicle is out of sight.
- Automatic gearbox: The vehicle can only be locked when transmission position P is selected.
- Do not use the vehicle key for unlocking/locking when you are inside the vehicle, as you might trigger the anti-theft alarm*. In this situation, press the unlock button 🔓.

Note

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

- The convenience key must be no more than approx. 1.5 m from the door handle/ ▶

1) Depending on country

luggage compartment to unlock/lock the vehicle.
- You can deactivate the function for unlocking the vehicle with the convenience key (keyless entry) ⇨ *page 31*.
- To prevent the vehicle battery from becoming discharged, the energy management system will gradually switch off convenience functions that are not required. In this case you may not be able to unlock the vehicle via sensor.

LED and battery in remote control key

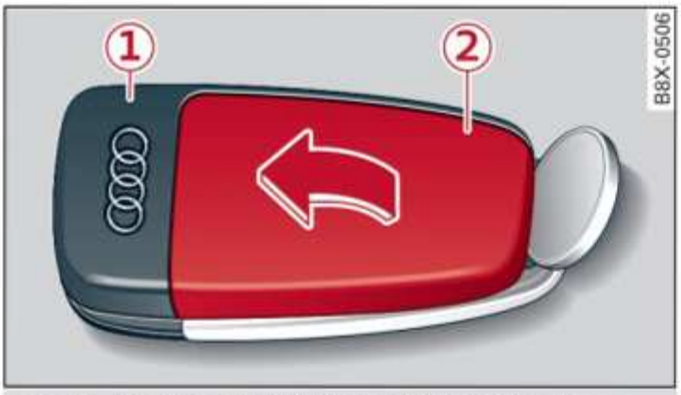


Fig. 17 Remote control key (rear): Opening the cover

LED on remote control key

The LED on the front of the remote control key lights up when you press the buttons.

- The LED should flash once when you press one of the buttons briefly.
- The LED should flash repeatedly when you press and hold one of the buttons (convenience open/close).
- If the LED does not flash, the battery in the vehicle key is flat. Replace the battery in the vehicle key.

Replacing the battery for the remote control key

The new battery must be of the same type as the original one (battery type **CR 2032**).

- Use a coin to lever the cover ② off the key ① ⇨ *Fig. 17*.
- Insert the new battery with the "+" symbol facing up.
- Press the cover back onto the key until it clicks into place.

If the indicator lamp lights up and the corresponding message appears, the battery in the vehicle key is empty and must be replaced.

WARNING

If batteries or button cells are swallowed or enter the body in any other way, they can cause severe or lethal injuries within an extremely short period of time – risk of chemical burns!
- Keep the vehicle key and the key fob with batteries out of the reach of children.
- Keep new and used batteries away from children.
- If the battery compartment does not close securely, stop using the vehicle key and keep it away from children.
- Seek a doctor's assistance immediately if you suspect that a battery has been swallowed or has entered the body in any other way.

For the sake of the environment

Batteries and electric/electronic equipment must be disposed of appropriately ⇨ *page 326, Information on waste disposal*.

Synchronising the remote control key

If the remote control key fails to lock/unlock the vehicle, it will be necessary to re-synchronise the system.

- Press the button on the remote control key.
- Unlock the driver's door within 30 seconds by turning the key in the lock ⇨ *page 28*.
- Press button or .

Boot lid

General information

WARNING

- Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside: the windows cannot then be opened from the inside. Locked doors could delay assistance ▶

in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.

– Applies to vehicles with anti-theft alarm system: Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the safelock mechanism* is activated: the doors cannot then be opened from the inside ⇨ *page 28, Anti-theft alarm system*. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.
– Always close and lock the boot lid and all the doors when you are not using the vehicle. Children could otherwise enter the vehicle e.g. through the luggage compartment and become locked inside. To avoid risk of injury, never allow children to play in or around the vehicle.
– To prevent any risk of injury when closing the boot lid, make sure that no one is in its path – in particular around the hinges, the upper and lower edges and the complete surrounding edge.
– After closing the boot lid, always check that the catch has engaged properly. The boot lid could otherwise open suddenly when the vehicle is moving – this could result in an accident.
– The boot lid must always be completely closed when the vehicle is moving; otherwise toxic exhaust fumes can be drawn from outside the vehicle into the interior.
– If a luggage rack (e.g. a bicycle carrier) is attached to the boot lid, the boot lid may not open completely or may move downwards by itself due to the added weight. For this reason, make sure you support the boot lid or take the luggage off the carrier before opening the boot lid – risk of injury!
– Applies to vehicles with power-operated boot lid: Always be careful when closing the boot lid. A safety feature is provided (pinch protection), but this may not always be able to prevent serious injuries to yourself or others in all circumstances.

CAUTION

To avoid damage, please take care that the boot lid does not hit the ceiling when opening it inside a garage or car park, etc.

Note

When the vehicle is locked, you can unlock the boot lid separately by pressing the button on the vehicle key. The boot lid will lock automatically when you close it again.

Opening/closing boot lid



Fig. 18 Boot lid: Release catch



Fig. 19 Driver's door: Opening boot lid

Opening boot lid

▸ Applies to vehicles without convenience key: Unlock the vehicle or the boot lid with the / button on the vehicle key and press the release catch on the boot lid ⇨ *Fig. 18*. Or:
▸ Applies to vehicles with convenience key: Press the release catch on the boot lid ⇨ *Fig. 18*. The vehicle key must be within a range of about 1.5 metres from the luggage compartment if the luggage compartment is locked. Or:
▸ Applies to vehicles with power-operated boot lid: Pull the button in the driver's door. ▶

Closing boot lid

- Applies to vehicles without power-operated boot lid: Pull down the boot lid by the handle on the inside and let it drop into the latch. Or:
- Applies to vehicles with power-operated boot lid: Refer to ⇨ *page 34*.

WARNING

Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ *page 32*.

Power-operated boot lid

Applies to: vehicles with power-operated boot lid

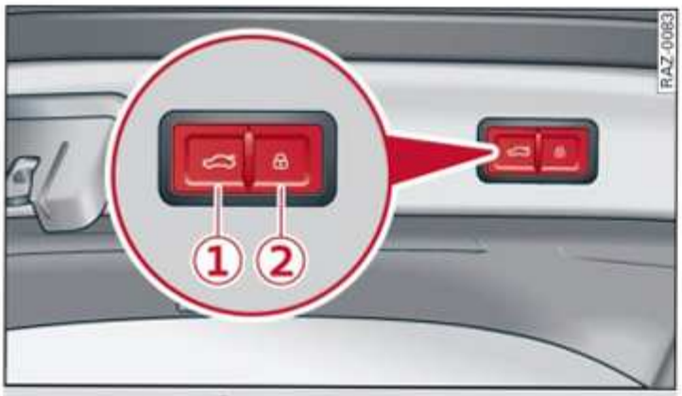


Fig. 20 Boot lid: ① close button*, ② lock button* (vehicles with convenience key*)

The boot lid can be opened and closed automatically ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 32*.

Opening boot lid

- Press the button on the vehicle key ⇨ *page 30, Fig. 15* for at least one second with the ignition switched off. Or:
- Briefly pull the button in the driver's door. Or:
- Applies to vehicles with convenience key: Press the release catch on the boot lid ⇨ *page 33, Fig. 18*. The vehicle key must be within a range of about 1.5 metres from the luggage compartment if the luggage compartment is locked.

Closing boot lid

- Press the button inside the boot lid. Or:
- Press the release catch on the boot lid ⇨ *page 33, Fig. 18*. Or:
- Press the boot lid down slightly. Or:
- With the ignition switched on, pull and hold the button in the driver's door ⇨ *page 33, Fig. 19* until the boot lid is closed. Or:
- Applies to vehicles with convenience key: With the ignition switched off, press and hold the button on the vehicle key until the boot lid closes. Make sure to stand clear of the boot lid when doing so (do not stand further away than 1.5 m). Or:
- Press the button inside the boot lid. Or:
- Applies to vehicles with convenience key: With the ignition switched off, press the / button inside the boot lid. The vehicle key should be within a range of about 1.5 metres from the luggage compartment and should not be inside the vehicle. The vehicle will be locked when you press the * button.

Stopping the automatic movement

The boot lid will stop moving if:

- You press the button or the release catch in the boot lid ⇨ *page 33, Fig. 18* again. Or:
- You press the button on the convenience key*. Or:
- If it cannot open/close freely or if it is obstructed.

If you now press the button or the release catch in the boot lid ⇨ *page 33, Fig. 18* again, the boot lid will open/close again.

Storing the open position of the boot lid

The boot lid must be opened at least as far as the minimum open setting, otherwise it will not be possible to store the setting.

- Open the boot lid as far as desired. When pulling the boot lid downwards, you should move it slowly in small steps; otherwise the boot lid will close automatically.
- Press the button on the inside of the boot lid for at least four seconds to store the desired open position. A visual and audible signal will be given.
- To set a higher open position, wait for five seconds and then push the boot lid carefully upwards.
- Then press the button for at least four seconds again to store the desired open position. ▶

Opening/closing boot lid manually

The boot lid can be opened/closed manually if the power-operated mechanism fails or the vehicle battery charge is low. This will require more effort. If you move the boot lid slowly less effort will be required.

- Pull the boot lid down by the handle on the inside and then push the boot lid down until it closes.

WARNING

Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ *page 32*.

Note

If the vehicle key is in the luggage compartment or the passenger compartment while the boot lid is open, the button on the boot lid will not function.

Releasing the boot lid manually

The boot lid can be released manually from the inside.



Fig. 21 Detail of inside of boot lid: Access to manual release

- Fold the rear seat backrest forwards ⇨ *page 68*.
- Fold open the vehicle key ⇨ *page 30, Fig. 15*.
- Prise off the cover ① using the vehicle key.
- To unlock the boot lid, press the release lever in the direction of the arrow ② using the vehicle key.
- Move the backrest back into its upright position and make sure it engages.

WARNING

Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ *page 32*.

WARNING

After you have folded the backrest back upwards, always check to see if the locking mechanism is properly engaged by pulling the backrest forwards.

Child lock

The child locks disable the rear window switches and prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside.

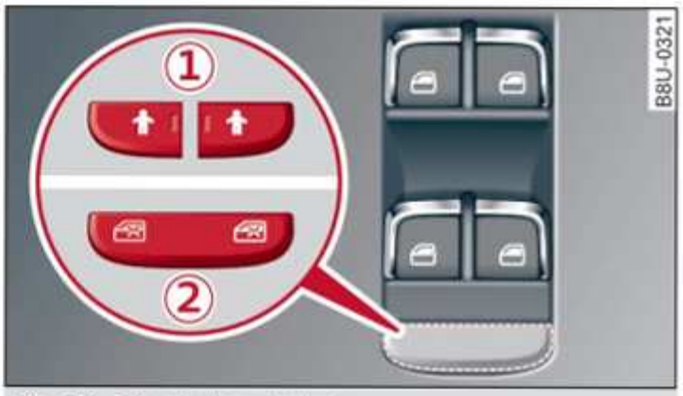


Fig. 22 Driver's door: Controls



Fig. 23 Rear door: Manual child lock

Vehicles with button

Applies to: vehicles with electric child lock

- To activate/deactivate the child lock (for the interior door handle and electric window switch) on each of the rear doors, press the left/right button on the driver's door ① ⇨ *Fig. 22*. The LED in the button will light up or go out.
- Make sure that the child lock is working by checking that the rear electric window switches and door handles are out of action. ▶

Vehicles with button

Applies to: vehicles with manual child lock

- To activate/deactivate the child lock for the electric window switches in the rear doors, press the button on the driver's door ② ⇨ *Fig. 22*. The LED in the button will light up or go out.
- To activate/deactivate the manual child lock for the interior handles in the rear doors, open the corresponding rear door and use the car key to turn the key-operated switch in the direction of the arrow (or in the opposite direction) ⇨ *Fig. 23*. The rear door handle is out of action while the child lock is on.
- Make sure that the child lock is working by checking that the rear electric window switches and door handles are out of action.

Switching on the child lock deactivates the following functions:

– The rear interior door handles
– The rear window switches

Driver message in the instrument cluster display

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Child lock: fault. Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the child lock. Press the / button again.

If the message remains displayed, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

– Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ *page 25*.
– If there is a malfunction in the child lock, it may be possible to open the rear doors from the inside – risk of accident!

Electric windows

Opening/closing windows

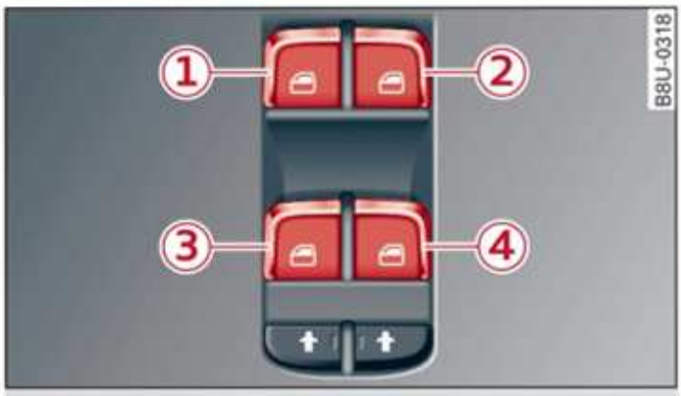


Fig. 24 Driver's door: Switches for electric windows

Switches for electric windows:

① Front left window
② Front right window
③ Rear left window
④ Rear right window

Opening/closing the windows

All of the window switches can be operated from the driver's seat. All electric windows have two-stage switches:

- Press/pull the switch briefly to the second stop: the window will automatically open/close all the way. The window will stop moving immediately if the switch is operated again.
- To set an intermediate position, press/pull the switch to the first position until the window has reached the desired position.

What to do if the one-touch open/close function fails to operate

You may be able to reactivate the one-touch open/close function if it fails to operate.

- Pull and hold the electric window switch until the window is fully closed.
- Release the switch and then pull it again for at least one second.

WARNING

– Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ *page 25*.
– Take care when closing the windows. Careless use of the windows can cause injuries. ▶

Note

- The windows can be operated for a few minutes after the ignition has been switched off. The window switches are only deactivated when the driver's door or the front passenger's door is opened.
- The electric windows have a roll-back function. The window may stop moving upwards automatically, and may also re-open even when there does not appear to be an obstacle. Pull and hold the electric window switch until the window is fully closed.

Convenience open/close function

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

Convenience open/close function for windows/sun roof*

You can use the MMI to set whether all the windows and the sun roof* are opened all at once ⇨ *page 26, Adjusting the settings for the central locking system*.

- Press and hold the 🔓/🔒 button on the vehicle key until all the windows have reached the desired position and the sun roof* is open/closed ⇨ ⚠. Or:
- Touch and keep your hand in contact with the sensor* on the door handle ⇨ *page 31, Fig. 16* until all the windows and the sun roof* are closed. Do not rest your hand on the door handle while this is happening.

The turn signals flash once when all the windows and the sun roof* are closed.

WARNING

- Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ *page 25*.
- Take care when closing the windows and the sun roof*. Careless or uncontrolled use can cause injuries.
- For safety reasons, you should only use the vehicle key to open and close the windows and sun roof* when you are at least 2 metres away from the vehicle and the vehicle is in sight. To avoid injuries, always keep an eye on the windows and the sun roof* when pressing the 🔒 button to close them. The windows and sun roof stop moving as soon as the 🔒 button is released.

Panorama sun roof

Operating sun roof and sun roof blind

Applies to: vehicles with panorama sun roof

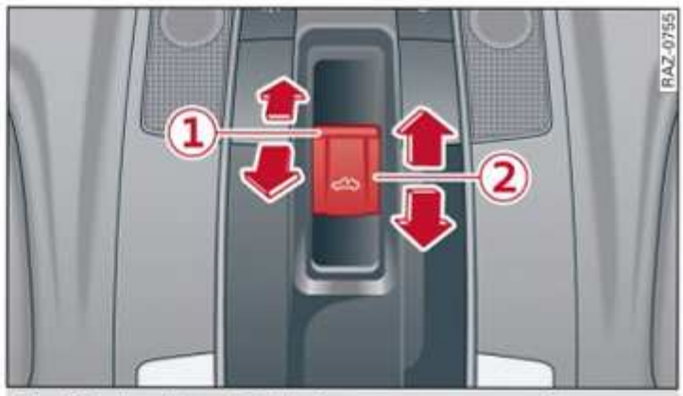


Fig. 25 Headliner: Switch for panorama sun roof

The switch has two stages.

Operating the sun roof blind

The roof blind can be opened and closed by hand, regardless of how far open the panorama sun roof is at the time. The roof blind can be adjusted to any intermediate position.

Operating the sun roof

- To tilt the roof open: Briefly press the switch in the headliner upwards to the second position ①.
- To tilt the roof closed: Briefly pull the switch downwards to the second position.
- To slide the roof open: Briefly slide the switch backwards to the second position ②.
- To slide the roof closed: Briefly slide the switch forwards to the second position.
- To set an intermediate position: Slide, press or pull the switch to the first position until the roof has reached the desired position.

Closing the sun roof manually

If a trapped object is detected in the mechanism when the sun roof is closing, a safety cut-out will be triggered and the roof will open again automatically. If this happens, you can use the safety cut-out override to close it. ▶

▸ After the sun roof opens automatically, pull and hold the corresponding switch within 5 seconds until the sun roof is closed.

WARNING

– Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ *page 25*.
– Take care when closing the sun roof. Careless or uncontrolled use can cause injuries. For this reason, always switch off the ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle.

CAUTION

Always close the sun roof when you leave your vehicle and when it is raining or snowing to avoid damaging the interior equipment and, in particular, the electronic equipment.

Note

– The sun roof can still be operated for a few minutes after the ignition is switched off if neither of the front doors is opened.
– The sun roof cannot be opened if the temperature is too cold.

Lights and vision

Exterior lights

Switching lights on and off



Fig. 26 Dashboard: Light switch with buttons

Light switch

With the ignition switched on, turn the light switch to the appropriate position. The symbol and the selected position will light up (except if the switch is at position 0).

0 – On vehicles for some markets, the daytime running lights*, tail lights and number plate light are switched on permanently.

AUTO – The headlights are switched on automatically according to the ambient light conditions.

– Side lights

– Dipped headlights

Buttons

When you turn the light switch to AUTO or dipped headlights, you can activate the following:

– All-weather lights*. The front lights are adjusted automatically so that you are not dazzled, for instance when driving on a wet road.

– Rear fog light(s)

Automatic headlight range control

Your vehicle is equipped with automatic headlight range control. This prevents oncoming traffic from being dazzled when your vehicle is heavily loaded. The headlight range is adjusted automatically.

Audi adaptive light

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive light

With the adaptive light feature, you have better vision in the dark because the lights are controlled dynamically to match the vehicle speed and road conditions, e.g. on motorways or country roads, at intersections or through corners. The adaptive light is activated only when the light switch is set to AUTO and the all-weather lights* are switched off.

WARNING

- The automatic headlights are only intended to assist the driver. The driver must always ensure that the headlights are used when required, and may have to switch them on or off manually, e.g. when the light conditions or visibility are poor. For example, the light sensors are not able to detect fog. Therefore, you should always switch on the dipped headlights in these conditions and when driving after dark.
- To avoid dazzling the traffic behind you, the rear fog light should only be used in accordance with statutory regulations.

Note

- Always adhere to the locally applicable laws and regulations when parking the vehicle and using the lights.
- If the vehicle battery has been losing charge for a while, the side lights or parking lights may be switched off automatically. Avoid using the side lights for long periods (several hours). Switch the left or right parking lights on where appropriate.
- The light sensor for the automatic headlights* is located in the mounting for the interior mirror. Do not affix any stickers on this section of the windscreen.
- Depending on the export market, the rear lights on some vehicles may be switched on together with the headlights when the daytime running lights* are activated. On other vehicles, the rear lights remain off.
- In cool or damp weather, the inside of the headlights, turn signals or rear lights can sometimes mist up, due to the temperature ▶

difference between the interior and exterior of the car. They should clear again partially or completely soon after you switch on the headlights. This phenomenon has no influence on the life expectancy of the vehicle lights.

Turn signal and main beam lever

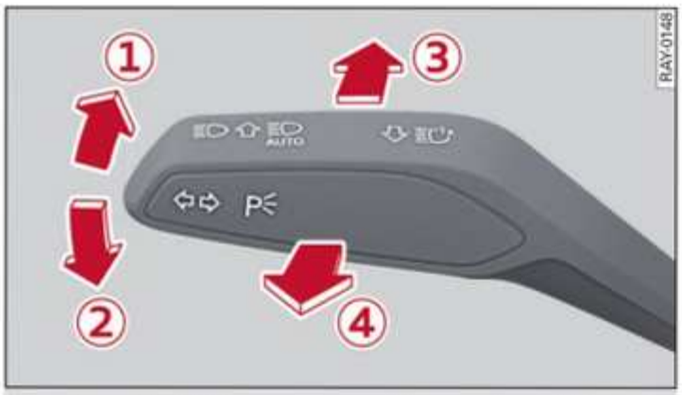


Fig. 27 Control lever: Switching on turn signals and main beam headlights

The turn signal lever also operates the main beam headlights, parking lights and headlight flasher.

Turn signals ⇦ ⇨ and parking lights P≤

The turn signals will flash if you move the lever while the ignition is switched on. The corresponding indicator lamp ⇦ or ⇨ will flash. If you just tap the lever, the turn signals will flash three times (one-touch signalling).

The parking lights will be switched on if you operate the lever with the ignition switched off:

① Turn signals/parking lights (right side)

② Turn signals/parking lights (left side)

When the ignition is switched off, you can switch on the parking lights on both sides by switching on the side lights ≫≤ and locking the vehicle from outside.

If one of the indicator lamps flashes twice as fast as usual, a turn signal bulb has failed. Drive carefully to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Main beam ≡D and headlight flasher

▸ Move the lever to the appropriate position:

③ Main beam headlights on (vehicles with main beam assist* ⇨ *page 40*)

④ Main beam headlights off or headlight flasher

The indicator lamp will light up in the instrument cluster.

⚠ WARNING

The main beams can dazzle other road users. Risk of accident! Never use the main beam headlights or the headlight flasher if they could dazzle other road users.

Main beam assist

Applies to: vehicles with main beam assist

The main beam assist automatically switches the main beam headlights on or off depending on the surrounding light conditions.

A camera (located in the mounting for the interior mirror) detects light sources from other road users. The main beams are activated/deactivated automatically depending on the position of vehicles on either side of the road, on the road speed, and on other traffic and ambient conditions.

On vehicles with matrix LED headlights*, individual segments of the main beam are activated or deactivated. The relevant sector in front of the vehicle is masked, while the surrounding areas remain lit. The ambient surroundings are thus illuminated optimally without dazzling other road users.

Activating the main beam assist ≡D AUTO

Important: The light switch must be set to AUTO, the dipped beam headlights must be on and the main beam assist must be activated on the infotainment system ⇨ *page 41*.

▸ Press the lever forwards ③ ⇨ *page 40, Fig. 27* to activate the main beam assist. The indicator lamp ≡D AUTO will light up in the instrument cluster display and the main beams will be activated/deactivated automatically. The indicator lamp ≡D AUTO is lit when the main beams are partially or fully on. ▶

Activating/deactivating the main beams manually

If the main beams are not activated/deactivated as expected, you can do this manually:

- To activate the main beams manually, briefly press the lever forwards ③. The indicator lamp will light up.
- To deactivate the main beams manually, pull the lever towards you ④. The main beam assist will be deactivated.

Flashing the headlights

- Pull the lever towards you ④ to flash the headlights when the main beam assist is activated and the main beams are dipped. The main beam assist will remain activated.

WARNING

The main beam assist is only intended to assist the driver. It is always the driver who is responsible for controlling the lights and making adjustments according to the light conditions and visibility. In the following situations manual intervention may be necessary:

- Hazardous weather conditions such as fog, heavy rain and snow or road spray.
- Roads on which oncoming traffic is partially concealed (e.g. on motorways)
- Indiscernible road users (e.g. cyclists with poor lighting)
- Tight corners, steep hill crests or valleys
- Poorly lit towns
- Highly reflective objects, such as road signs
- Windscreen misted up, dirty, frosted or covered by stickers in front of the sensor
- The main beam can dazzle other road users. Risk of accident! Never use the main beam headlights or the headlight flasher if they could dazzle other road users.

Note

When using the lights, make sure you adhere to the relevant country-specific regulations, for example with regard to dazzling other road users. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

Adjusting the settings for the exterior lighting

The following settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

You can change the settings for these functions on the infotainment system.

- Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Exterior lighting**.

Automatic headlights

The following settings are available in the **Automatic headlights** menu:

Activation time – You can determine how soon the lights are switched on by using the settings **early**, **medium** or **late** to adjust the sensitivity of the light sensor.

Main beam assist – You can switch the main beam assist on/off.

Entry/exit lights

The **entry/exit lights** illuminate the area around the vehicle after dark when you unlock the vehicle or when the ignition has been switched off and the driver's door opened.

The entry/exit lights are operational only after dark when the light switch is set to **AUTO**.

Headlight dip settings for driving at home and abroad

If you drive a right-hand drive vehicle in a left-hand drive country, or vice versa, it is not necessary to adjust the headlights, as they are designed for use when driving on the left or right.

One exception to this is when you are driving on motorways. In this case you should turn the light switch to the dipped headlights setting to prevent oncoming traffic from being dazzled.

Hazard warning lights



Fig. 28 Dashboard: Switch for hazard warning lights

The hazard warning lights are used to make other road users aware of your vehicle in hazardous situations.

- Press the switch ⚠ to switch the hazard warning lights on/off.

When the hazard warning lights are on, the indicator lamps ⇦ and ⇨ both flash simultaneously.

If you brake hard at high speed, the brake lights will flash and the hazard warning lights will come on automatically[1].

You can use the turn signals to indicate a change of direction (or lane) even when the hazard warning lights are on. The hazard warning lights will be interrupted temporarily.

The hazard warning lights also work when the ignition is switched off.

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

If the indicator lamp lights up, a bulb has failed. The message indicates the location of the bulb. You should have the bulb replaced without delay.

Vehicle lights: fault. Please contact workshop

There is a fault with the headlights or light switch. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Audi adaptive light: fault. See owner's manual

The adaptive light feature is out of action. The dipped beam headlights will still be working normally.

Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Automatic headlights: fault. See owner's manual

The light sensor/rain sensor is out of action.

For safety reasons, the dipped beam headlights will then be switched on permanently when the light switch is set to the **AUTO** position. You can still switch the lights on and off in the normal way with the light switch.

Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Headlight range control: fault. See owner's manual

There is a malfunction in the dynamic headlight range control which may cause other road users to be dazzled.

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Main beam assist: fault. See owner's manual

Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified. You can still switch the main beam headlights on and off manually.

Main beam assist: currently unavailable. Camera view restricted due to surroundings. See owner's manual

The camera vision is impaired, e.g. by stickers or dirt. Please clean the windscreen.

The sensor is located in the mounting for the interior mirror. Do not affix any stickers on this section of the windscreen.

[1] This function is not available on all export versions.

Interior lights

Front interior lights



Fig. 29 Headliner: Front interior lights

Buttons for interior lights

☼* – Interior lights on/off

– Courtesy lighting on/off. The interior lights are switched on and off automatically when this function is activated.

Touch-sensitive reading lights*

- Briefly touch the surface (1) to turn the appropriate reading light on/off.
- To use the manual dimmer function, touch the surface (1) when the light is switched off, and hold your finger on the surface until the desired brightness level is reached.

Rear interior lights

Applies to: vehicles with rear reading lights



Fig. 30 Headliner: Rear reading lights

- Press the ☼ or * button to switch the appropriate reading light on/off.

Background lighting

Applies to: vehicles with background lighting

The background lighting can be adjusted via the infotainment system.

- Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Background lighting**.

It may be possible to adjust the brightness of the individual zones, depending on the equipment fitted in your vehicle:

- Press the right control button and select one of the zones displayed.

The background lighting will be switched on when you switch on the headlights with the ignition on.

Instrument lighting



Fig. 31 Light switch: Instrument lighting

– The background lighting of the instruments and the display can be adjusted as required.

- Briefly press the knob to release it.
- Turn the knob towards - or + to reduce or increase the brightness of the lighting.
- Briefly press the knob again to engage it.

Note

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the instrument lighting (for dials and needles) may be switched on when the ignition is on and the vehicle's lights are off. The illumination of the dials and needles is automatically reduced as it becomes dark outside and is eventually switched off altogether. This function is intended to remind the driver to switch on the dipped headlights in good time.

Clear vision

Adjusting the exterior mirrors



Fig. 32 Driver's door: Adjuster knob for exterior mirrors

▸ Turn the knob in the driver's door to the appropriate position:

0 – To deactivate all setting functions.

– To select the exterior mirror (left or right side). To adjust the mirror surface, tilt the knob in the desired direction.

– To heat* the mirrors (depends on the outside temperature).

– To fold in the exterior mirrors*. To fold the mirrors out, turn the knob to any of the other positions. One of the infotainment settings allows you to control whether or not the mirrors are folded in when you lock the vehicle ⇨ *page 26*.

Tilt function* for exterior mirror on passenger side

Important: The knob must be in the position for adjusting the exterior mirror on the passenger side.

The mirror is tilted slightly when you select reverse gear in order to provide a better view of the kerb, for example, when reversing into a space.

You can adjust the mirror surface by tilting the knob in the desired direction. This new position is automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key when you take the car out of reverse.

The mirror returns to its original position as soon as you drive forwards at over 15 km/h or switch off the ignition.

WARNING

Convex or wide-angle* exterior mirrors give a larger field of vision. However, they make objects look smaller and further away than they really are. If you use these mirrors to estimate the distance to vehicles behind you when changing lane, you could misjudge the distance. Risk of accident!

CAUTION

– Applies to vehicles with electrically retractable exterior mirrors: If one of the mirror housings is knocked out of position (e.g. when parking), the mirrors must be fully retracted with the electric control. You will hear a loud noise when the mirrors snap back into place. Do not readjust the mirror housing by hand, as this will interfere with the mirror adjuster function.

– Applies to vehicles without electrically retractable exterior mirrors: If one of the mirror housings is knocked out of position (e.g. when parking), it must be returned to its proper position by hand.

– Before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, please make sure to retract the exterior mirrors to prevent them from being damaged. Electrically retractable exterior mirrors* must NOT be folded in or out by hand. Always use the electrical power control.

Note

If the electrical adjustment should fail to operate, both of the mirrors can be adjusted by hand by lightly pressing the edge of the mirror glass.

Anti-dazzle setting

Your vehicle is equipped with a manual or automatic* anti-dazzle interior mirror.

Manual anti-dazzle interior mirror

▸ Pull the lever at the bottom of the mirror towards you. ▶

Automatic anti-dazzle mirrors*

▸ The interior and exterior mirrors will darken when bright light (e.g. from the headlights of a following vehicle) shines on the surface of the interior mirror.

WARNING

Applies to: vehicles with automatic anti-dazzle mirrors

Electrolyte fluid can leak from a broken mirror. This fluid can cause irritation to the skin, eyes, and respiratory organs. Wash thoroughly with clean water should you come into contact with this fluid. Seek medical assistance if necessary.

CAUTION

Applies to: vehicles with automatic anti-dazzle mirrors

Electrolyte fluid can leak from a broken mirror. This fluid can damage plastic surfaces. Use a wet sponge or similar to remove the fluid as soon as possible.

Note

Applies to: vehicles with automatic anti-dazzle mirrors

– The automatic anti-dazzle mirrors may not function as intended if the light falling on the surface of the interior mirror is obstructed.
– The automatic anti-dazzle mirrors do not darken if the interior lighting is on or the car is in reverse gear.

Sun visors



Fig. 33 Headliner: Sun visor

The sun visor can be pulled out of its mounting and turned towards the door ①.

The light* for the make-up mirror comes on automatically when you slide open the mirror cover ②.

Windscreen wipers

Switching on the windscreen wipers

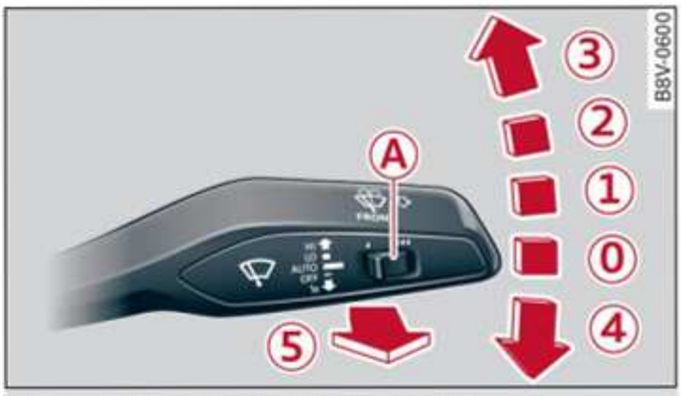


Fig. 34 Control lever: Windscreen wipers



Fig. 35 Control lever: Rear window wiper

▸ Move the windscreen wiper lever to the appropriate position:

⓪ Wipers off

① Intermittent wipe. Move switch Ⓐ to the left or to the right to increase or reduce the wiper delay interval. If your vehicle is equipped with a rain sensor*, the windscreen wipers will be activated automatically in the rain as long as the vehicle has been moving faster than approx. 4 km/h at least once. The higher the sensitivity level for the rain sensor (i.e. the further switch Ⓐ is moved to the right), the sooner the windscreen wipers react to moisture on the windscreen. You can deactivate the rain sensor mode on the infotainment system (this will activate the intermittent wipe mode).

▸ Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Driver assist** > **Rain sensor**. ▶

81B012720AJ

② Slow wipe

③ Fast wipe

④ Single wipe. If you hold the lever in this position, the wipers will switch from slow continuous wiping to fast continuous wiping after a while.

⑤ Wash/wipe. The windscreen is given an extra wipe a few seconds later to remove any dribbles of water (if the vehicle is moving and the temperature is above approx. 4 °C). You can deactivate this function by moving the lever to position ⑤ again within 10 seconds after the extra wipe. The extra-wipe function is activated again the next time you switch on the ignition.

The headlight washer system* only operates when the dipped headlights are switched on. The headlights are also automatically washed intermittently when you move the lever to position ⑤.

⑥ Rear wipe. The rear window is wiped approximately every 6 seconds.

If the windscreen wipers are on and in operation, the rear window wiper will also be switched on automatically when you engage reverse gear.

⑦ Rear wash/wipe. The number of wiper cycles depends on how long you hold the lever in position ⑦.

WARNING

- The rain sensor* is only intended to assist the driver. The driver is still obliged to manually operate the windscreen wipers as required depending on visibility.
- Do not use water-repellent coatings on the windscreen. In bad visibility conditions such as light rain, low sun or when driving at night these coatings can cause increased dazzle, which is a serious safety hazard. Such coatings can also cause the wiper blades to judder.
- Poor visibility can cause accidents. Always ensure that the wiper blades are in good condition ⇨ *page 47, Changing the windscreen wiper blades*.

CAUTION

- In icy conditions, check that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the wiper blades are frozen to the windscreen when you switch on the windscreen wipers, this could damage the wiper blades.
- Make sure you switch off the windscreen wiper system (lever in position ⓪) before you use an automatic car wash. This will avoid inadvertent triggering of the wipers and possible damage to the wiper system.

Note

- The windscreen wipers are deactivated when the ignition is switched off. You can activate the windscreen wipers after switching the ignition on again by moving the windscreen wiper lever to any position.
- Worn or dirty wiper blades can cause smearing on the glass. This can also impair the effectiveness of the rain sensor. Please check the wiper blades regularly.
- The windscreen washer jets are heated* when the ignition is switched on if the outside temperature is low.
- If you stop briefly, e.g. at traffic lights, the wiper speed setting will automatically be reduced by one level.

Cleaning the wiper blades

Clean the wiper blades if the wipers leave smearing on the glass. Use a soft cloth and glass cleaning solution.

Windscreen wipers

▸ Set the wiper arms to the service position ⇨ *page 47*.

▸ Lift the wiper arms away from the glass.

Rear window wiper

▸ Lift the rear wiper arm away from the glass.

WARNING

Dirty wiper blades can impair the driver's view – risk of accident!

CAUTION

If the wipers still leave smearing on the glass after they have been cleaned, the wiper blades should be replaced ⇨ *page 47*.

Changing the windscreen wiper blades

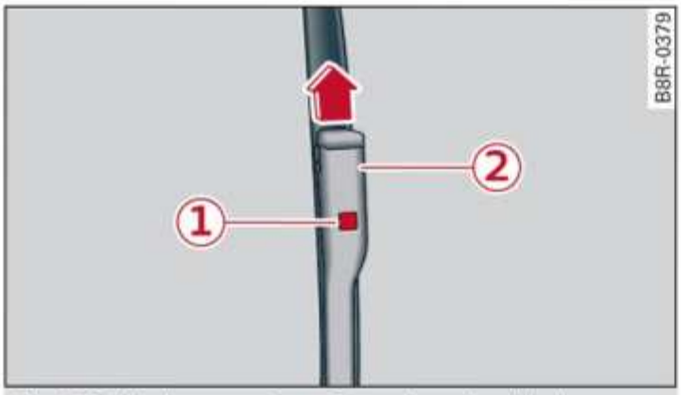


Fig. 36 Windscreen wipers: Removing wiper blade

Service position / wiper change position

- To move the windscreen wipers into the service position, switch off the ignition and move the windscreen wiper lever to position ④ for at least 2 seconds ⇨ *page 45, Fig. 34*.
- To move the windscreen wipers back to their original position, switch on the ignition and hold the windscreen wiper lever in position ④ until the wipers have returned to their original position, or drive faster than 12 km/h.

Taking off the wiper blade

- Lift the wiper arm away from the glass.
- Press the release button ① on the wiper blade ⇨ *Fig. 36*. Keep hold of the wiper blade while doing so.
- Take off the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow.

Fitting the wiper blade

- Fit the new wiper blade into the mounting on the wiper arm ②. You should hear it engage in the wiper arm.
- Fold the wiper arm back down onto the windscreen.
- Switch off the service position again.

WARNING

For safety, the wiper blades should be changed once or twice a year.

CAUTION

- Do NOT lift the wipers off the windscreen unless they are in the service position. Otherwise the wiper motor or the paintwork on the bonnet may be damaged.
- Never drive your vehicle or operate the windscreen wiper lever while the wiper arms are off the glass in a raised position. The wipers will otherwise automatically return to their park position and may damage the bonnet and windscreen.

Note

- You can also use the service position, for example, if you want to fix a cover over the windscreen in the winter to keep it clear of ice.
- You cannot activate the service position when the bonnet is open.

Changing the rear wiper blade



Fig. 37 Rear window wiper: Taking off the wiper blade

Taking off the wiper blade

- Lift the rear wiper arm away from the glass.
- Take hold of the wiper blade below the centre and pull the blade out of the retainer in the direction of the arrow. Keep hold of the wiper arm while doing so. ▶

Fitting the wiper blade

- ▸ Press the mounting on the wiper blade into the retainer. While doing so, keep holding the plastic top end of the wiper arm.
- ▸ Fold the wiper arm back down onto the rear window.

WARNING

For safety, the wiper blades should be changed once or twice a year.

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

If the indicator lamp lights up, there is a fault in the wiper system. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Automatic wipers: fault. See owner's manual

The light sensor/rain sensor is out of action.

You can continue to use all the other functions of the windscreen wiper lever that do not use the rain sensor.

Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Sitting correctly and safely

Ensuring the correct seating position

General information

As the driver, you are responsible for ensuring that all vehicle occupants are sitting in the correct position and that they stay in this position for the entire journey. Ensure that:

- Every vehicle occupant has adjusted their seat correctly ⇨ *page 49*.
- The steering wheel is set correctly ⇨ *page 51*.
- The mirrors have been adjusted so that you have a good view of the surrounding area ⇨ *page 44*.
- Every vehicle occupant has adjusted their head restraint correctly ⇨ *page 51*.
- Every vehicle occupant has fastened their seat belt correctly ⇨ *page 53*.
- Applies to vehicles with deactivation switch for front passenger's airbag: The front passenger's airbag is activated or deactivated as appropriate for the person occupying the front passenger's seat ⇨ *page 58*.
- Any children are correctly secured in a suitable child restraint system on an appropriate seat ⇨ *page 59*. Please read the important safety information about the use of child restraint systems on the front passenger's seat ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 59*.

Examples of incorrect seating positions

Seat belts can only provide maximum protection if the belt webbing is positioned correctly. Sitting out of position greatly reduces the effectiveness of the seat belts and increases the risk of injury since the belt webbing is not worn in the position for which it is designed.

The list below contains examples of incorrect positions which can be dangerous to all vehicle occupants. The list is not complete, but will help to make you aware of possible dangers which can be avoided. Therefore, whenever the vehicle is moving:

- Never stand up in the vehicle.
- Never stand on the seats.
- Never kneel on the seats.
- Never travel with the backrest reclined too far.
- Never lean against the dash panel.
- Never lie down on the rear seat.
- Never sit on the front edge of a seat.
- Never sit sideways.
- Never lean out of the window.
- Never put your feet out of the window.
- Never put your feet on the dash panel.
- Never put your feet on the seat cushion.
- Never ride in the footwell.
- Never sit on the armrests.
- Never travel on a seat without wearing the seat belt.
- Never climb into the luggage compartment.

⚠ WARNING

Sitting out of position, not wearing a seat belt or being too close to the airbag exposes the occupants to potentially fatal injuries if, for instance, the airbags inflate and strike an occupant who is not seated in one of the proper positions. Please note the important information and safety precautions in the corresponding chapters on the subjects above.

Note

If physical factors prevent you from being able to assume a correct seating position, please contact a qualified automotive specialist.

Front seats

General information

Ensure that:

- You can press the pedals down completely with your legs still slightly bent.
- Your torso is at least 25 cm away from the steering wheel/dashboard.
- Your knees are at least 10 cm away from the dashboard.
- Your thighs are resting lightly on the front of the seat cushion. ▶

– The backrest is in an upright position and makes full contact with your back.
– You have a good view of your surroundings.
– You have an unobstructed view of the instrument cluster and warning/indicator lamps.

WARNING

– If you are too close to the steering wheel/dash panel, the airbag system cannot protect you correctly – risk of severe or fatal injury!
– To reduce the risk of injury to the driver in the case of sudden braking or an accident, you should never drive with the backrest reclined. The airbag system and seat belts can only provide proper protection when the backrest is in an upright position and the driver is wearing the seat belt in the correct position. If the backrest is reclined too far, the seat belt may slide away from harder body parts towards softer areas such as the stomach – risk of injury!
– Never adjust the seats when the vehicle is moving – this could lead to an accident.
– Be careful when adjusting the seats. Careless use of the seat adjustment controls can cause injuries to both the front seat and rear seat occupants.
– Never place objects in the driver's footwell. Such objects could move under the pedals and interfere with their proper function. In the event of sudden braking or a change of direction, you would not be able to use the pedals. This could result in a loss of control and possibly cause an accident.
– Always make sure that floor mats are properly secured.
– Never lay additional floor mats or other floor coverings over the existing floor mats; this would restrict the pedal area and possibly obstruct the pedals, which could cause an accident.
– Never place your feet on the dashboard, out of the windows or on the seat, as this could lead to injury. This also applies to the rear seat occupants.

CAUTION

Applies to: vehicles with manually adjustable head restraints

Take care when adjusting the seat to ensure the head restraint does not collide with the headliner or sun roof*. This could cause damage.

Manual adjustment of front seats



Fig. 38 Front seat: Manual adjustment

The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Adjusting the seat position

▸ To move the seat forwards/backwards, pull the lever ① and move the seat.
▸ To move the seat upwards/downwards, pull/press the lever ③.

Adjusting the backrest

▸ To move the backrest forwards/backwards, turn the knob ④.

Adjusting the lumbar support

▸ To adjust the lumbar support, press the appropriate side of the button ②.

Front centre armrest

Applies to: vehicles with front centre armrest

The front centre armrest is located between the front seats.

Adjusting the centre armrest

The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle. ▶

- ▸ To move the armrest forwards/backwards, move it in the corresponding direction.
- ▸ To adjust the angle, lift the armrest until it engages in the desired position.
- ▸ To move the armrest back to the initial position, lift the armrest slightly from the top position and then fold it back down.

⚠ WARNING

In certain positions, the centre armrest may limit arm movement – risk of injury!

Steering wheel

General information

Ensure that:

– Your torso is at least 25 cm away from the steering wheel.
– Your arms are bent slightly at the elbows.
– You have a good view of your surroundings and can see the instrument cluster at all times
– You always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the rim at about the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position while driving.

⚠ WARNING

– Before setting off, make sure that the steering wheel is correctly adjusted and that it cannot slip out of the engaged position – risk of accident!
– If you are too close to the steering wheel, the driver airbag cannot protect you correctly – risk of severe or fatal injury!
– Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position, or with your hands inside the rim or on the steering wheel hub. This could result in serious injuries to the arms, hands and head if the driver's airbag inflates.

Adjusting the steering wheel position (manual adjustment)

Applies to: vehicles with manual steering wheel adjustment



Fig. 39 Steering column: Lever for adjusting the steering wheel position

The height and reach of the steering wheel can be adjusted.

- ▸ Press the release lever in the direction indicated by the arrow.
- ▸ Move the steering wheel to the desired position.
- ▸ Push the lever all the way up until the catch engages.

⚠ WARNING

– Adjust the position of the steering wheel only before driving off – risk of accident!
– Press the lever upwards so it is secure and so that the position of the steering wheel cannot shift unexpectedly while the vehicle is moving – risk of accident!

Head restraints

General information

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable head restraints

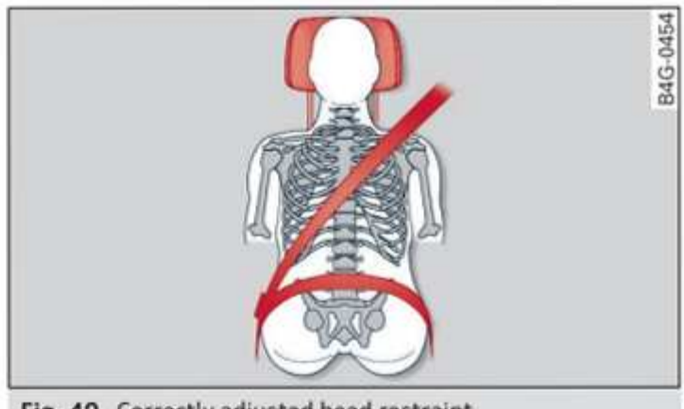


Fig. 40 Correctly adjusted head restraint ▶

Ensure that:

– The top of the head restraint is level with the top of your head.
– The head restraint is as close as possible to the back of your head.
– The head restraints on any occupied rear seats are pulled all the way up.

WARNING

– There is a head restraint for every seat. It is very important that all vehicle occupants adjust their head restraint correctly before every trip. Incorrectly adjusted head restraints can increase the risk of neck injuries in an accident or during sudden or unexpected braking or other manoeuvres.
– Remove the rear head restraints only if this is necessary in order to attach a child restraint system ⇨ *page 59*. Store head restraints securely if you remove them, e.g. in the luggage compartment. Install the head restraint again immediately after removing the child restraint system. Travelling with the head restraints removed increases the risk of severe neck injuries.

Front head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable head restraints

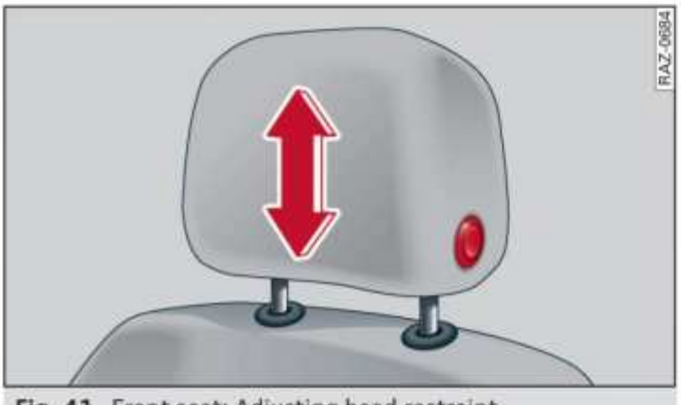


Fig. 41 Front seat: Adjusting head restraint

The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Adjusting head restraint

▸ To raise the head restraint, adjust the position of the head restraint until you feel it click into place.
▸ To raise or lower the head restraint, press the side button and move the head restraint in the desired direction. Release the button and slide the head restraint further until you feel it click into place.

Rear head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable head restraints

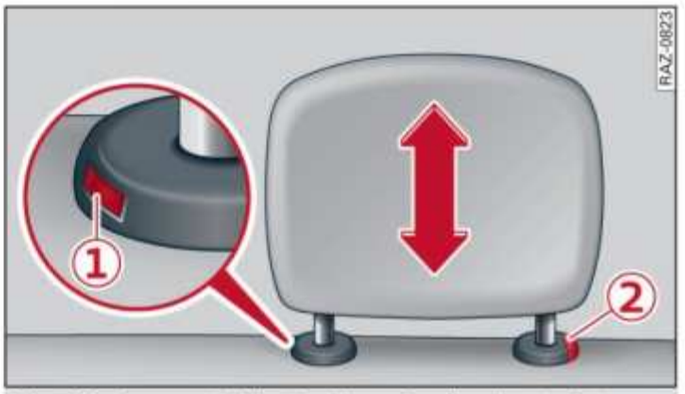


Fig. 42 Rear seat: Adjusting/removing head restraint

Adjusting head restraint

▸ To raise the head restraint, adjust the position of the head restraint until you feel it click into place.
▸ To lower the head restraint, press the button ② and move the head restraint downwards. Release the button and slide the head restraint further until you feel it click into place.

Removing head restraint

Applies to: vehicles with removable head restraints

▸ Fold the backrest forwards slightly ⇨ *page 68*.
▸ Raise the head restraint as far as it will go.
▸ Use a suitable tool from the vehicle tool kit or open the blade of the vehicle key or emergency key and press it into the release point ① ⇨ *Fig. 42* on the inside or outside of the base.
▸ Press the button ② and pull the head restraint out of the backrest ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 52*.

Installing head restraint

Applies to: vehicles with removable head restraints

▸ Fold the backrest forwards slightly ⇨ *page 68*.
▸ Push the posts of the head restraint into the guides until you feel them click into place. ▶

▸ Press the button ② and push the head restraint all the way down. It should no longer be possible to remove the head restraint from the backrest without pressing the button.

Seat belts

General information

Every seat is equipped with a three-point seat belt. When worn correctly, seat belts are the most effective way to reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries in an accident. You should therefore always wear your seat belt correctly and you should also ensure that all vehicle occupants are wearing their seat belts correctly while the vehicle is moving.

Although the vehicle is equipped with an airbag system, every vehicle occupant must still wear a seat belt. In addition to their normal function of protecting the vehicle occupants in a collision, the seat belts also hold them in a position where the airbags can inflate properly and provide maximum protection. Seat belts offer protection in accidents in which no airbags are triggered or where they have already been triggered.

⚠ WARNING

The risk of severe or fatal injury is increased if the seat belt is worn incorrectly or not at all, or if it is damaged.

- All vehicle occupants (including the driver) must put their seat belt on correctly before every trip and must always keep it on while the vehicle is moving, regardless of whether the seat is equipped with an airbag or not. This also applies to children who are being secured in a child restraint system appropriate to their height, weight and age using the seat belt.
- In the event of an accident, anyone not wearing a seat belt will be thrown around in the vehicle and make violent contact with the steering wheel, dashboard, windscreen, doors, etc. They could even be thrown out of the vehicle. Rear passengers not wearing seat belts endanger not only themselves but also the other occupants.
- Never allow passengers to share the same seat belt. Never secure more than one person (including small children) with the seat belt.
- Never travel with children or babies on your lap and never share the same seat belt.
- To ensure that the seat belt is fully effective, the latch plate must always be engaged in the correct buckle for a particular seat.
- To ensure that the seat belts can provide maximum protection, all vehicle occupants must be seated in the correct seating position ⇨ *page 49*.
- Check the condition of the seat belts at regular intervals ⇨ *page 294*. If you notice that the belt webbing, fittings, retractor mechanism or buckle of any of the belts is damaged, the belt must be replaced by a qualified workshop.
- The seat belts must not be removed or modified in any way. Do not attempt to repair a damaged belt yourself.
- Seat belts which have been worn in an accident must be replaced by a qualified workshop.

Wearing a seat belt correctly

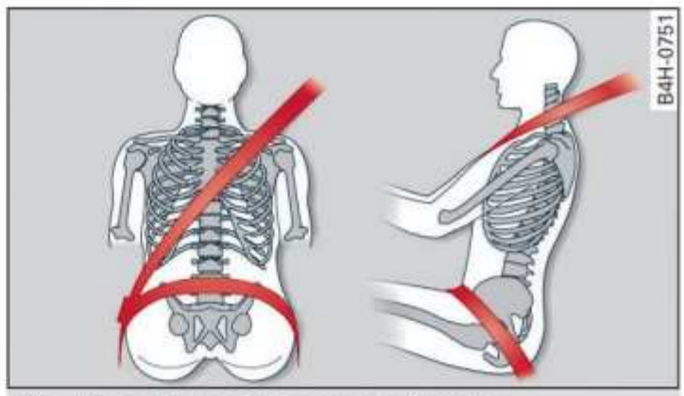


Fig. 43 Seat belt position over lap/shoulder



Fig. 44 Positioning seat belts during pregnancy ▶

Seat belts must always be worn correctly in order to provide the best possible protection in the event of an accident and to reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries. Correctly worn seat belts also hold the vehicle occupants in position in such a way that the airbags provide maximum protection if they are triggered. For this reason, it is essential that you always fasten your seat belt and ensure that it is worn correctly ⇨ *Fig. 43*.

Make sure that you are wearing your seat belt correctly by checking the following points:

- The lap belt section of the seat belt should be worn tightly across the hips.
- The shoulder section of the seat belt should be fitted across the centre of the shoulder.
- The belt must always make firm and even contact with the body.

At all times during pregnancy, women must wear the seat belt so that it runs evenly across the chest and as low as possible over the hips; the belt must make even contact so that there is no pressure on the stomach ⇨ *Fig. 44*.

⚠ WARNING

Wearing a seat belt incorrectly may result in serious injuries in the event of an accident or under sudden braking or manoeuvres.

- Never travel in a moving vehicle with the backrest reclined. The further the backrest is tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the seat belt.
- The seat belt itself or a loose seat belt can cause serious injuries if it slides away from harder body parts towards softer areas such as the stomach.
- The shoulder section of the seat belt should be fitted across the centre of the shoulder and torso and never under the arm, behind the back or over the neck or face.
- The lap belt section of the seat belt must be worn tightly across the hips, and never over the stomach or abdomen.
- The seat belt must make firm and even contact with the upper body and hips.
- Do not allow the seat belt to become twisted or jammed, or to rub on any sharp edges.
- The protection offered by the seat belt in an accident is reduced if the height of the belt is not correctly adjusted or if the seat belt is not properly positioned. Make sure that the seat belts are properly positioned and the height correctly adjusted to suit the vehicle occupants.
- Seat belts worn too loose can result in injuries because they allow excessive forward movement in a crash; the occupant will be brought to a sudden stop by the belt webbing.
- Loose, bulky clothing (such as an overcoat over a jacket) impairs the proper fit and function of the belts.
- Do not wear the belt over hard or fragile objects (such as glasses or pens, etc.).
- During pregnancy, women must wear the lap belt section of the seat belt as low as possible across the hips and underneath the rounded stomach.

! CAUTION

Make sure that no velcro fasteners or sharp objects, such as zip fasteners or rivets on clothing, are in the way of the seat belt while you are wearing it; otherwise the seat belt could be damaged.

Fastening/unfastening the seat belt

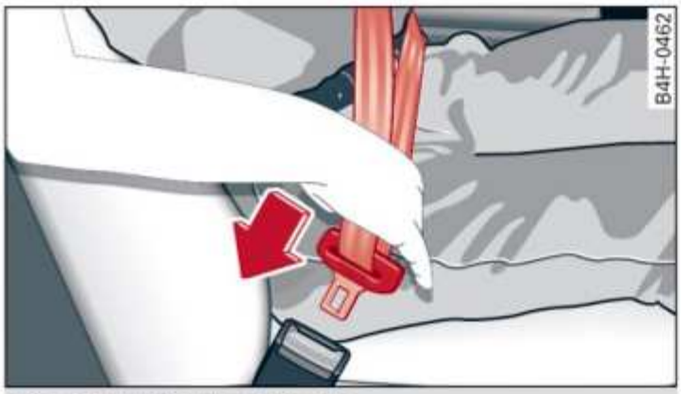


Fig. 45 Latch plate and buckle

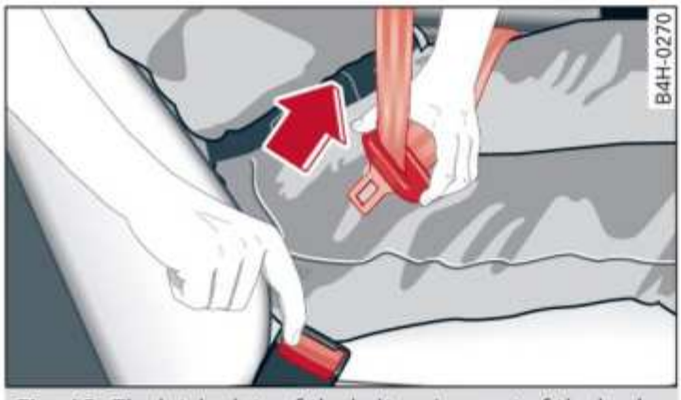


Fig. 46 The latch plate of the belt springs out of the buckle

Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ *page 53*.

Fastening the seat belt

- To fasten the belt, take hold of the latch plate and pull it slowly across your chest and lap.
- Insert the latch plate into the buckle for the appropriate seat and push it down until it is securely locked with an audible click ⇨ *Fig. 45*.
- Pull the belt to check that it is now securely fastened.

Unfastening the seat belt

- Press the red button in the seat belt buckle ⇨ *Fig. 46*. The latch plate is released and springs out.
- Guide the belt back by hand so that it is taken up more easily.

Seat belt monitor

– If the warning lamp lights up/flashes, one of the seat belts is not fastened/was unfastened during driving. Audible warning signals may also be given.

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the status of the rear seat belts may also be monitored by the following indicator lamps:

– If the indicator lamp lights up, the corresponding rear seat is not occupied.

– If the indicator lamp lights up, the rear seat belt has been fastened.

– If the indicator lamp lights up, the rear seat belt has been fastened. If the indicator lamp flashes, one of the seat belts in the rear cabin has not been fastened or has been unfastened while the vehicle was moving.

Adjusting seat belt height

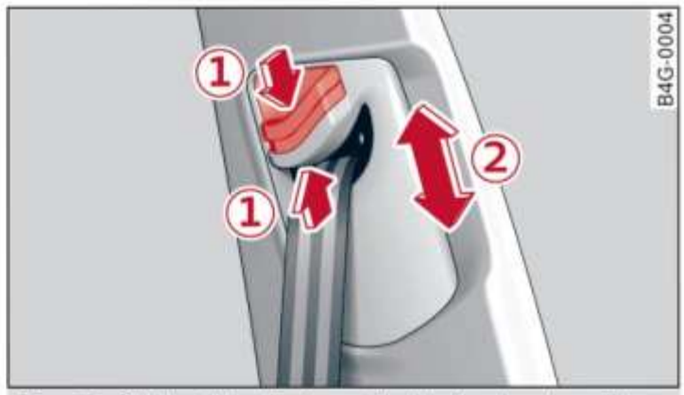


Fig. 47 Belt height adjustment for the front seats: guide fitting

- To move the seat belt higher, slide the guide fitting ② upwards.
- To move the seat belt lower, squeeze the release mechanism ① and slide the guide fitting ② downwards.
- After adjusting, pull the shoulder belt sharply to check that the catch on the guide fitting is engaged securely.

Note

It is also possible to adjust the height of the front seats to obtain the best position for the front seat belts.

Additional seat belt functions

Automatic belt retractors

The seat belts are equipped with automatic belt retractors. The retractor system gives complete freedom of movement, as long as the pull on the ▶

81B012720AJ

belt is slow. Hard braking locks the belt. The belt will also lock when you accelerate, drive up or down a steep hill or corner sharply.

Belt force limiters

Seat belts with belt force limiters reduce the forces acting on the body from the seat belts themselves in an accident.

Belt tensioners

Seat belts with reversible belt tensioners may be tightened in certain driving situations. This is done if the belt is too loose and needs to be taken up in order to lie more tightly against the body.

Seat belts with pyrotechnic belt tensioners may be tensioned automatically in certain types of collision. This helps to reduce the forward motion of the occupants.

WARNING

The pyrotechnic system can only be activated once. If the pyrotechnic belt tensioners have been activated at any time, the system must be replaced by a qualified workshop.

Note

Some smoke may be released when the pyrotechnic belt tensioners are activated. This does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

Airbag system

General information

WARNING

- If you do not wear a seat belt or sit in the correct position, or if you are seated too close to the airbag system, you will not be fully protected by the airbag system. This puts you at risk of serious or fatal injury. Ensure that all occupants are seated in the correct position with their seat belts fastened ⇨ *page 49*. This applies regardless of whether the seat is equipped with an airbag or not.
- Never place your feet on the dashboard, out of the windows or on the seat. To ensure that the airbag systems can open without obstructions, never lean forwards or lean on the door or the side window. You could otherwise sustain potentially fatal injuries if the airbags are triggered.
- Persons, pets or objects positioned between the airbag system and the occupant will prevent the airbag system from inflating properly and could be catapulted through the vehicle cabin – risk of serious or fatal injury. Ensure that there are no objects between the vehicle occupants and the airbag system. Never secure or carry objects in the area of inflation of the airbag systems, in particular around the steering wheel, on the dashboard, against the doors, on the windows and in the footwell.
- Never apply stickers or other coverings to the airbag system covers.
- The built-in coat hooks should only be used for lightweight clothing. Do not use clothes hangers to hang up clothing. Do not leave any heavy, fragile or sharp-edged objects in the pockets. This could otherwise interfere with the effectiveness of the head-protection airbags.
- If you intend to fit protective covers over the seats, these must be of the specific type approved for use on Audi seats with side airbags. The centre airbags inflate from the backrest and the protection they provide would otherwise be seriously impaired.
- Any damage to the original seat upholstery in the area from which the airbags inflate must be repaired immediately by a qualified workshop.
- Components of the airbag system are located in various parts of the vehicle. Improper servicing or repairs to the vehicle can cause damage to parts of the airbag system or prevent the airbags from working properly. As a result, the airbags may not inflate correctly or may not be triggered at all in an accident situation, putting the occupants at ▶

risk of serious or fatal injury. Have any repairs or modifications to the vehicle carried out by a qualified workshop.
- The airbag system can only be activated once; after it has been triggered, have the airbag system replaced by a qualified workshop without delay.
- The airbag may release a fine dust when it is triggered. This is quite normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle. The fine dust can irritate the skin and eyes and/or cause breathing issues, particularly in persons who suffer or have suffered from asthma or other breathing issues. Get out of the vehicle or open the windows or doors to breathe in fresh air.

Note

If you are travelling with children, please note the information and safety precautions ⇨ *page 59*.

Safety system monitoring

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster monitors the safety systems such as the airbags (including control units, sensors and wiring) and belt tensioners. It lights up for a few seconds when you switch on the ignition.

If the indicator lamp does not light up when you switch on the ignition, if it does not go out after a few seconds, or if it lights up or flashes while you are driving, there is a fault in one of the safety systems. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

Have the fault in the safety systems examined without delay; otherwise the systems may fail to trigger in an accident – this could result in serious or possibly fatal injury.

Description

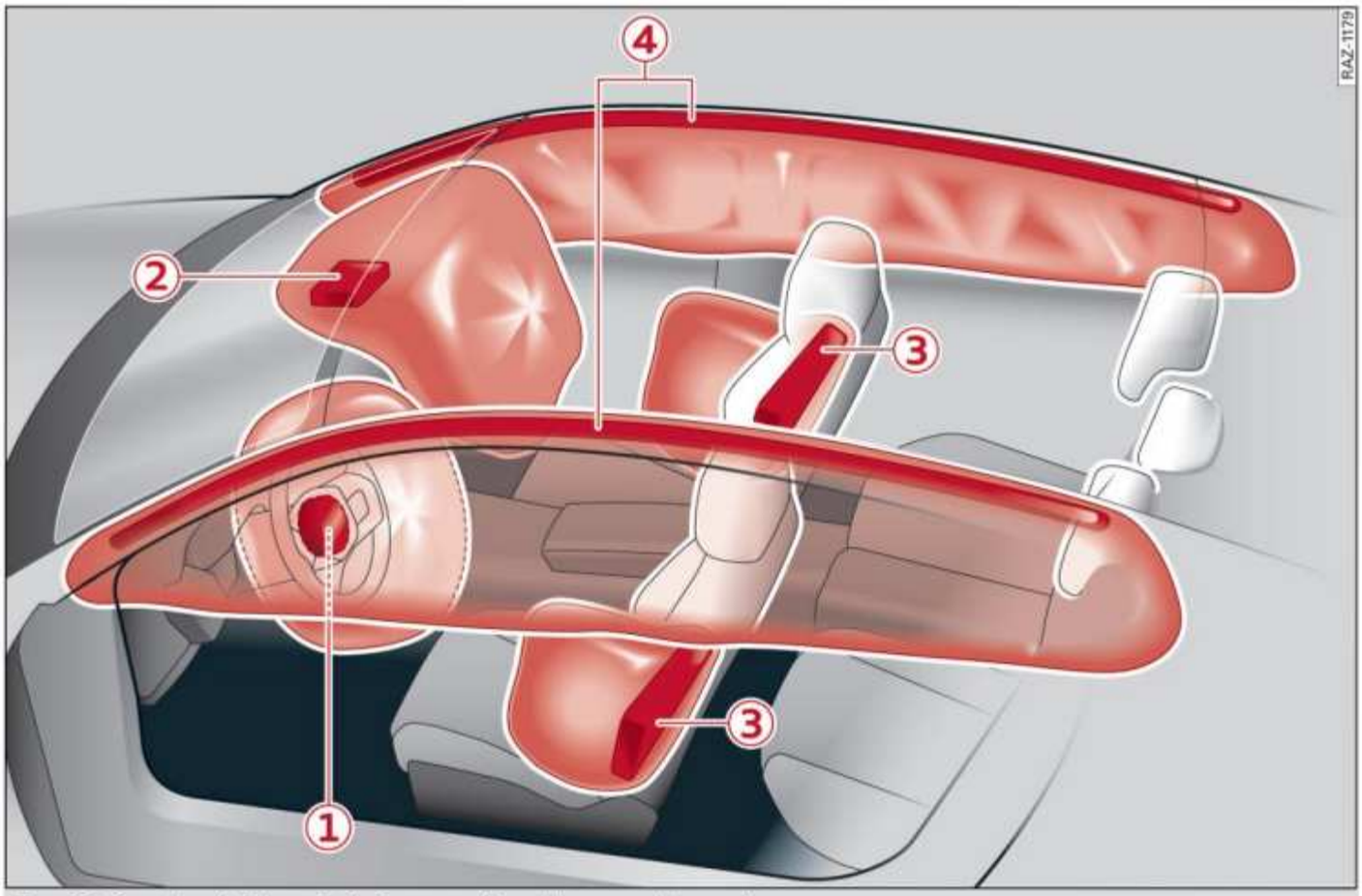


Fig. 48 Overview of airbags (inflation area after airbags are triggered)

The locations of the airbags are marked with the word "AIRBAG". The following airbags are fitted in your vehicle:

① Driver's airbag
② Front passenger's airbag
③ Front side airbags
④ Head-protection airbags

The airbags in your vehicle provide the greatest possible protection in accident situations when passengers are seated in the correct position with their seat belts properly fastened. Airbags are a supplementary restraint system; they are not a substitute for seat belts.

The airbags may be triggered in accidents affecting the front or side areas of the vehicle or (depending on the vehicle's equipment) in accidents in which the vehicle overturns.

It is not possible to define the exact triggering response of the airbag system in all possible situations, since the circumstances in different types of accident will vary considerably. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the object which the car hits, the angle of impact, vehicle speed and so on. Whether the airbags are triggered depends primarily on the vehicle deceleration rate resulting from the collision. By processing the signals from the sensors located in the vehicle, the electronic control unit is immediately able to evaluate the severity of the collision and activate the restraint systems accordingly. If the deceleration rate is below the predefined reference value in the control unit the airbags will not be triggered, even though the accident may cause extensive damage to the car. In these situations, the occupants are restrained by the correctly fastened seat belts.

When an airbag is triggered, it is filled with gas. This causes the relevant airbag cover panel to break off. The airbag then opens into its deployment zone in milliseconds, with significant force. As the seat belt-restrained occupants move in the direction of the impact, the inflated airbags slow their movement, thereby helping to protect e.g. the head, torso and pelvis. Nonetheless, the possibility cannot be ruled out completely that an airbag might cause injury when triggered.

The airbag system works when the ignition is on.

Deactivating the passenger's airbag

Applies to: vehicles with key-operated switch for front passenger's airbag



Fig. 49 Glove box: Key-operated switch for deactivating front passenger's airbag



Fig. 50 Headliner: Indicator lamp for status of passenger's airbag

It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the key-operated switch is set to the correct position.

If you have no other alternative than to use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, always switch the front passenger's airbag off ⇨ *page 60*. If you have deactivated the passenger's airbag, reactivate it as soon as the child restraint system is no longer needed so that the airbag can continue to give the required protection.

- To deactivate the front passenger's airbag, insert the blade of the vehicle key into the key-operated switch and turn it to the (OFF) position ⇨ *Fig. 49*. The indicator lamp OFF will light up and remain lit.
- The front passenger's airbag can be reactivated by turning the vehicle key to the (ON) position. The indicator lamp ON will light up briefly. ▶

WARNING

- A child in a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat could suffer a severe impact if the front passenger's airbag were to deploy – risk of severe or fatal injury! Always secure any child restraint systems to the rear seats. If you have no other alternative than to use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, always check before driving off that OFF is lit continuously.
- Adults travelling on the front passenger's seat will not be protected by the front passenger's airbag if it is deactivated – risk of severe or fatal injury! Before driving off, always check that OFF is not lit.

Child restraint systems

General information



Fig. 51 Passenger's sun visor: Airbag sticker

When installing and using child restraint systems, always observe the information in this Owner's Manual, the applicable country-specific regulations and the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint system.

WARNING

To avoid serious or fatal injury, children travelling in the vehicle must always be protected with child restraint systems appropriate to their height, weight and age.

- Children under 1.50 m tall or younger than 12 must not travel in the vehicle without a suitable child restraint system. Please observe any other applicable regulations in the country in which you are travelling.
- Improperly secured child restraint systems in the vehicle can lead to serious or fatal injuries in the event of an accident. Always secure the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- Children and babies must NEVER travel on another occupant's lap.
- Never allow more than one child to occupy one child restraint system.
- Never leave a child without supervision in a child restraint system.
- Never allow a child to travel unrestrained in the vehicle or to stand up or kneel on a seat while the car is moving. In an accident, the child could be catapulted through the car, potentially causing fatal injuries to itself and other occupants.
- If children are out of position when the car is moving, they are at greater risk of injury during a sudden braking manoeuvre or in an accident. This applies in particular if the child is travelling on the front passenger's seat, or if the child's head is near the opening for the side airbag when the airbag system is triggered in an accident. This incorrect seating position can result in serious or even fatal injury.
- Make sure there is sufficient clearance in front of the child sitting in the child restraint system. If necessary, adjust the seat position and backrest angle of the seat in front of the child restraint system.
- The back of any forward-facing child restraint system must be flush with the backrest of the vehicle seat. Adjust or remove the head restraint if it hinders installation ⇨ *page 51*. Install the head restraint again immediately after removing the child restraint system.
- Always make sure that the backrest of the seat carrying the child restraint system is properly engaged and that it cannot move forwards. Otherwise the backrest could be moved forwards, together with the child restraint system attached to it, in the event of an accident or other emergency.
- NEVER use a rearward-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in ▶

front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

– Applies to vehicles on which the front passenger's airbag cannot be deactivated: Do NOT use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat.
– Applies to vehicles with key-operated switch for deactivating the front passenger's airbag: Do NOT use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat while the front passenger's airbag is active. If you have no alternative but to use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated beforehand via the key-operated switch ⇨ *page 58*. Make sure that the front passenger's airbag is reactivated by means of the key-operated switch as soon as the child restraint system is no longer needed on the front passenger's seat.
– If you need to use a forward-facing child restraint system on the passenger's seat, move the passenger's seat all the way back so that it is as far away from the passenger's airbag as possible. Before doing so, you should ensure that there is nothing blocking the adjustment area. A child in a child restraint system on the front passenger's seat could suffer a severe impact if the front passenger's airbag were to deploy - risk of severe or fatal injury!
– Always replace the child restraint system with a new one after an accident as damage not externally visible may have occurred.
– The child restraint system must always be properly secured, even when it is unoccupied; otherwise it could be flung through the cabin during sudden braking or in the event of an accident.

The right place to seat children

Children should always be protected with child restraint systems appropriate to their height, weight and age.

Audi recommends child restraint systems from the range of Audi Genuine Accessories.

You can secure child restraint systems in your vehicle using the ISOFIX retaining rings or the seat belts. You can also secure child restraint systems to the top tether anchorages.

Always seat children on the rear seats

Accident statistics show that the rear seats are the safest place for children to sit. Children should always be seated in an appropriate child restraint system on the rear seats approved for these systems ⇨ *table on page 61*, ⇨ *table on page 62*.

In exceptional cases: children on the front passenger's seat

Always observe the relevant country-specific regulations regarding whether a child restraint system may be used on the passenger's seat in exceptional circumstances. A child restraint system must not be used on the passenger's seat if this is prohibited by the relevant country-specific regulations. If the relevant country-specific regulations allow the use of a child restraint system, check the tables ⇨ *table on page 61* and ⇨ *table on page 62* to see whether your system can be secured on the passenger's seat in the vehicle.

If your child restraint system complies with the relevant country-specific regulations and is suitable for use on the front passenger's seat of your vehicle, please note the following:

Applies to: rearward-facing child restraint systems

– Vehicles without deactivation switch for front passenger's airbag: Use on the front passenger's seat is **not** permitted.
– Vehicles with deactivation switch for passenger's airbag*: The passenger's airbag must be deactivated ⇨ *page 58*.

Applies to: forward-facing child restraint systems

– Move the front passenger's seat all the way back so that it is as far away from the front passenger's airbag as possible. Before doing so, ▶

you should ensure that there is nothing blocking the adjustment area.

Seats suitable for the attachment of child restraint systems with ISOFIX

Child restraint system	ISOFIX size category	Rear seats		Front passenger's seat*	
		Outer	Centre	Front passenger's airbag on	Front passenger's airbag off*
Category 0: Up to 10 kg	E/R1	IL	X	X	IL
Category 0+: Up to 13 kg	E/R1	IL	X	X	IL
	D/R2				
	C/R3				
Category 1: 9 to 18 kg	D/R2	IL	X	X	IL
	C/R3				
	B/F2	IL, IUF	X	X	IL
	B1/F2x				
	A/F3				
Category 2: 15 to 25 kg	-	IL	X	IL	IL
Category 3: 22 to 36 kg	-	IL	X	IL	IL
i-Size child restraint system	F2x/R2/B2	i-U	X	X	X

- **ISOFIX size category**: The size category specifies the weight range for which the child restraint system is approved. On child restraint systems with universal or semi-universal approval, the size category is specified on the ECE approval label. Each child restraint system carries a label specifying the weight category.
- **IL**: Seat suitable for the attachment of an ISOFIX child restraint system with semi-universal approval. Refer to the vehicle list provided by the manufacturer.
- **IUF**: Seat suitable for the attachment of a forward-facing ISOFIX child restraint system with universal approval.
- **i-U**: Seat suitable for the attachment of an i-Size child restraint system with universal approval.
- **X**: Seat not suitable for the attachment of the corresponding child restraint system. ▶

81B012720AJ

Seats suitable for the attachment of child restraint systems with the seat belt

Child restraint system	Rear seats		Front passenger's seat	
	Outer	Centre[1)]	Front passenger's airbag on	Front passenger's airbag off*
Category 0 Up to 10 kg	U, L	U	X	U
Category 0+ Up to 13 kg	U, L	U	X	U
Category 1 9 to 18 kg	U, L	U	X	U
Category 2 15 to 25 kg	U, L	U	U	U
Category 3 22 to 36 kg	U, L	U	U	U

- **U**: Seat suitable for the attachment of a child restraint system with universal approval.
- **L**: Seat suitable for the attachment of a child restraint system with semi-universal approval. Refer to the vehicle list provided by the manufacturer.
- **X**: Seat not suitable for the attachment of the corresponding child restraint system.
- [1)]: Seat not suitable for the attachment of a child restraint system with a support leg.

Note

- Child restraint systems can also be secured on seats with side airbags. Side airbags can provide additional protection to children who are correctly secured in a suitable child restraint system in the event of an accident.
- For correct installation, some child restraint systems require the use of both the lower ISOFIX anchorages and the seat belt. The simultaneous use of both of these is permissible as long as this does not restrict the restraint systems or seat belts on an adjacent seat.

Attaching a child restraint system to the bottom ISOFIX anchorages



Fig. 52 Rear seat: Bottom ISOFIX anchorages

Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ *page 59*.

The bottom ISOFIX anchorages are located between the seat cushion and the backrest on the vehicle's outer rear seats and on the front passenger's seat*. There are two bottom ISOFIX anchorages on these seats to which you can secure an ISOFIX or i-Size child restraint system, according to the table ⇨ *table on page 61*.

- ▸ Activate the child lock ⇨ *page 35*.
- ▸ Remove the covers* from the two ISOFIX anchorages.
- ▸ Secure the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- ▸ Pull on the child restraint system to check whether both sides have engaged properly in the ISOFIX anchorages. ▶

▸ If possible, also secure the child restraint system to the corresponding top tether anchorage of the vehicle ⇨ *page 63*.

⚠ WARNING

– NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it; DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
– The ISOFIX anchorages in the vehicle are designed only for child restraint systems with ISOFIX. Do not attempt to secure other types of child restraint system, seat belts or other objects to these anchorages – this could result in serious or possibly fatal injury.

Securing child restraint systems with a seat belt

Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ *page 59*.

▸ Activate the child lock ⇨ *page 35*.
▸ When attaching a child restraint system to the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far upwards as possible.
▸ Secure the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions.
▸ After securing the child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, adjust the front passenger's backrest so that it makes full contact with the child restraint system. You should also ensure that the upper securing point for the seat belt is behind the child restraint system.
▸ If you are using a child restraint system on the rear seat, you should additionally secure the child restraint system to the vehicle's corresponding top tether anchorage ⇨ *page 63*, if possible.

⚠ WARNING

– NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it; DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
– To ensure proper protection by the child restraint system, it is important to wear the seat belts in the correct position. Always check that the belt is properly positioned according to the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint system. Incorrectly worn seat belts can give rise to injuries even in a minor collision.

Additionally securing a child restraint system to the top tether anchorage



Fig. 53 Rear backrest: Top tether anchorages for securing a child restraint system with a top tether strap

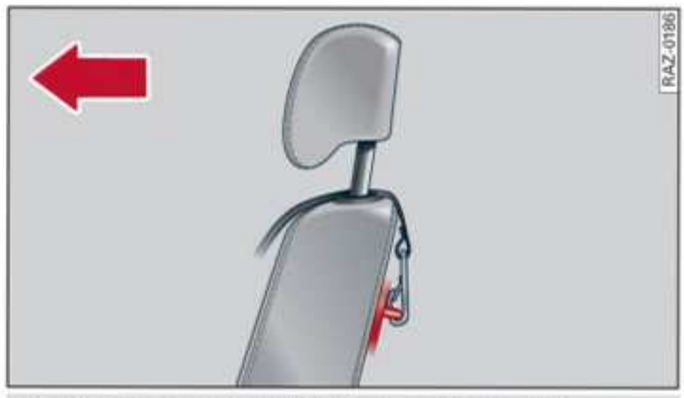


Fig. 54 Rear backrest: Hooking strap into top tether anchorage

Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ *page 59*.

The top tether anchorages for additionally securing a child restraint system with a top tether strap are located behind the outer and centre* rear seats.

▸ Raise the head restraint behind the child restraint system.
▸ Secure the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions.
▸ Guide the top tether strap of the child restraint system underneath or past both sides of the head restraint (depending on the type of child restraint system) towards the rear.
▸ Hook the strap into the top tether anchorage ⇨ *Fig. 54*. When doing so, make sure that the ▶

belt is not twisted and that it is not on any sharp edges.

- ▸ Pull the strap tight so that the top of the child restraint system rests securely against the backrest.
- ▸ If necessary, lower the head restraint behind the child restraint system.

WARNING

The top tether anchorages in the vehicle are designed only for child restraint systems with a top tether strap. Do not attempt to secure other types of child restraint system, seat belts or other objects to these anchorages – this could result in serious or possibly fatal injury.

Storage and convenience

Ashtray

Applies to: vehicles with ashtray



Fig. 55 Front centre console: Ashtray and cigarette lighter

- Open the ashtray ①.
- To empty the ashtray, lift it out of its holder.
- Rotate the upper section to separate it from the ashtray insert.
- Always put the ashtray safely back into the holder after removing it.

WARNING

Never put waste paper in the ashtray, as this could cause a fire.

Cigarette lighter

Applies to: vehicles with cigarette lighter

- Press in the button on the cigarette lighter ② ⇨ *page 65, Fig. 55*.
- When the button on the cigarette lighter springs out, pull the insert out.

WARNING

The cigarette lighter only works when the ignition is on. Improper use can cause serious injury or start a fire. To avoid the risk of injury, never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle with the key.

Power sources

When the ignition is switched on, several power sources for external devices are available (depending on the equipment fitted in your vehicle).

12 Volt sockets

You can connect electrical accessories to the 12 Volt sockets. The devices connected must not exceed a power rating of 120 W. Do not connect several devices to the vehicle sockets at the same time.

The 12 Volt sockets are marked with the symbol or 12V. They are located in the front centre console, in the rear* and in the floor trim on the left of the luggage compartment*.

USB inputs

Applies to: vehicles with USB inputs

You can use the USB inputs to charge mobile devices. Depending on the vehicle model, USB inputs may be indicated by one of the following symbols: , or CHARGE ONLY.

WARNING

- Make sure that all connected devices are securely stowed when driving to prevent them from being catapulted through the car under braking or in an accident – danger to life!
- Improper use can cause serious injury or start a fire. To avoid the risk of injury, never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle with the key.

CAUTION

- Please observe the operating instructions for the connected devices.
- To avoid damage to the vehicle's electrical system, never connect equipment that generates electrical current to the power sources in order to charge the vehicle's battery.
- Do not connect a device with a voltage different from the designated voltage of the socket.
- To avoid damage, please take care when detaching connectors from the power sources.

Note

Do not plug any additional devices into the sockets while the compressor* ⇨ *page 300* supplied with the vehicle is in use. The power rating for the sockets may be exceeded for a ▶

81B012720AJ

short period of time while the compressor* is in use.

Cup holders

Applies to: vehicles with cup holders

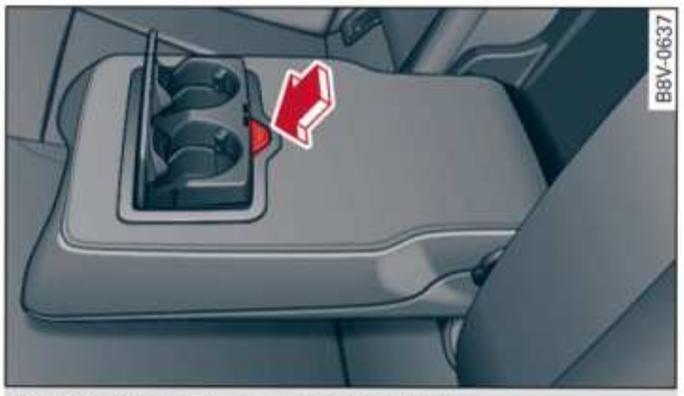


Fig. 56 Rear centre armrest*: Cup holder

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, there may be cup holders in the front centre console, in the door trim and in the rear centre armrest.

Cup holders in rear centre armrest*

- Fold down the centre armrest*.
- To open the cup holder, press the button ⇨ *Fig. 56*.
- To close the cup holder, fold the cover back until it engages.

WARNING

- Do not put any hot drinks in the cup holders while the vehicle is moving. You could be scalded if the hot liquid is spilt.
- Do not use cups, mugs or glasses made from hard materials such as glass or porcelain. These could cause injury in the event of an accident.

CAUTION

You should avoid putting open drinks containers in the cup holders. The drinks could otherwise spill over and cause damage to the vehicle's equipment.

Storage compartments

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, you will find several storage compartments and retainers that can be used to safely store items. These include, for example, the glove box.

WARNING

- To avoid the risk of injuries, always keep all storage compartments closed when driving.
- Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of accident! Stow objects away safely while the vehicle is moving.
- The storage compartments in the door trims should only be used to store small objects. Make sure that they are stored safely inside the compartment, as otherwise they might impair the protection offered by the side airbags.
- The built-in coat hooks should only be used for lightweight clothing. Do not use clothes hangers to hang up clothing. Do not leave any heavy, fragile or sharp-edged objects in the pockets. This could otherwise interfere with the effectiveness of the head-protection airbags.
- Make sure that your view to the rear is not obstructed (e.g. by any items of clothing hanging up or objects in the vehicle).

Luggage compartment

General information

All luggage and other objects must be safely secured in the luggage compartment. To maintain safe handling on the road, please observe the following points:

- Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment.
- Place heavy items as far forward as possible in the luggage compartment.
- Secure items of luggage to the fastening rings with non-elastic straps.

WARNING

- Applies to vehicles with luggage compartment cover: The luggage compartment cover should not be used as a storage shelf. Items placed on this cover could injure the ▶

vehicle occupants in an accident or in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres.
- Applies to vehicles with luggage compartment cover: The luggage compartment cover must always be securely attached when in use – risk of accident!
- Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of accident! Always stow objects safely in the luggage compartment and secure them on the fastening rings. Use suitable securing straps when transporting heavy objects.
- If items of luggage or other objects are secured to the fastening rings with inappropriate or damaged tensioning straps, injuries could result in the event of sudden braking or a collision.
- Transporting heavy objects may affect the vehicle's handling by shifting the centre of gravity – this could cause an accident. Take extra care when driving and adjust your speed accordingly.
- The stretch net* is only strong enough to secure light items. Heavier objects cannot be safely secured – risk of injury!
- Never exceed the maximum axle loads or the maximum gross weight for the vehicle ⇨ *page 324*.
- Never secure a child restraint system to the fastening rings.
- Never leave your vehicle unattended when the boot lid is open. Children could climb into the boot and close the boot lid from the inside. In this case the children would be unable to get out of the vehicle without help. This could have fatal consequences.
- Never allow children to play in or around the vehicle. Always close and lock the boot lid and all the doors when you leave the vehicle.
- Never let passengers ride in the luggage compartment. All occupants must be properly restrained by the seat belts at all times ⇨ *page 53*.
- Be careful when releasing and folding down the backrest! Carelessness when folding it down could result in injuries.
- The rear backrest must always be securely latched so that objects stored in the luggage compartment will not fly forward during sudden braking.
- Make sure that the rear backrest is securely locked in position so that the seat belt can provide proper protection on the centre rear seat.
- Always check to see if the locking mechanism is properly engaged by pulling the backrest forwards.
- If the seat belt is trapped when the backrest is returned to its upright position, fold the backrest down again and free the seat belt. Hold the seat belt in one hand while you carefully fold up the backrest.
- The retaining hooks* should only be used to hold objects weighing up to 3 kg. Heavier objects cannot be safely secured – risk of injury!

CAUTION

- Lower the rear head restraints ⇨ *page 52* before you fold down the backrest – risk of damage!
- When returning the backrest to an upright position, make sure that the seat belts for the outer rear seats are in their guides so that they cannot be caught up and damaged in the catches for the backrest. It is also important to remove any other objects from the rear seats to avoid damaging the backrest when folding it forwards.
- If you need to adjust the front seats when either of the rear backrests is folded forwards, please take care to avoid damaging the rear head restraints.
- Please ensure that hard objects do not chafe against the wires of the heating element in the rear window and cause damage.

Note

- The tyre pressures must be adjusted according to the load the vehicle is carrying ⇨ *page 288*.
- Securing straps are available from specialist retailers.

Luggage compartment cover

Applies to: vehicles with luggage compartment cover

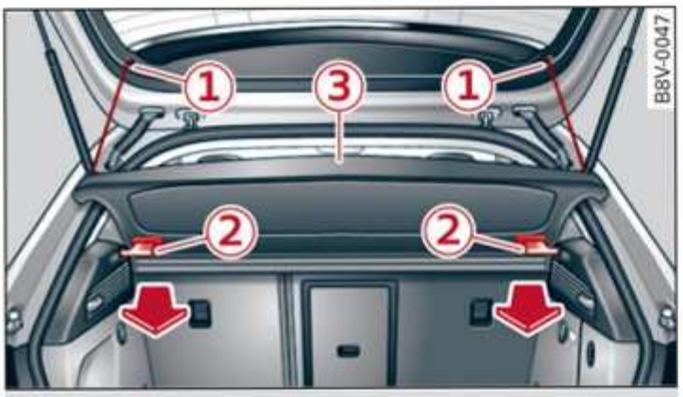


Fig. 57 Luggage compartment: Removing and installing luggage compartment cover

Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ *page 66*.

- ▸ To remove the luggage compartment cover, unhook the cords ①.
- ▸ Pull out the cover ③ in the direction indicated by the arrows.
- ▸ To install the luggage compartment cover, insert the retainers ② in the guides on the side trim and push the cover ③ forwards as far as it will go.
- ▸ Attach the cords ① to the boot lid.

Folding the outer backrest up/down

Applies to: vehicles with folding backrest

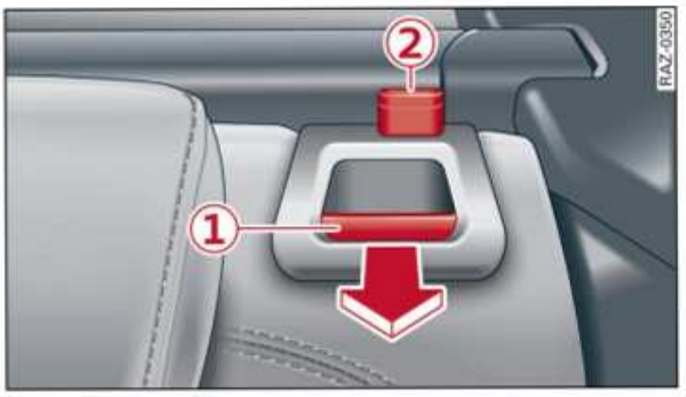


Fig. 58 Outer backrest: Release lever and backrest lock indicator with red marking

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, the backrests can be folded down individually or together.

Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ *page 66*.

Folding the outer backrest up/down

- ▸ Pull the release lever ① in the direction indicated by the arrow and fold down the backrest.
- ▸ When you no longer need the extra luggage space, move the backrest back into its upright position until it engages and the red marking ② is no longer visible.

Folding the centre backrest up/down

Applies to: vehicles with folding centre backrest

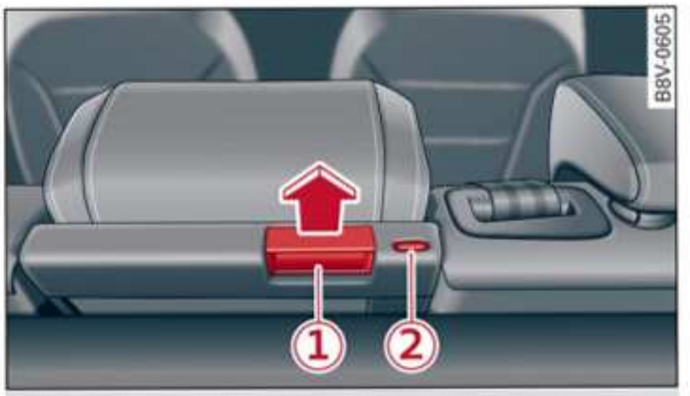


Fig. 59 Centre backrest: Release lever and backrest lock indicator with red marking

Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ *page 66*.

Folding the centre backrest up/down

- ▸ Pull the release lever ① in the direction indicated by the arrow and fold down the backrest.
- ▸ Move the backrest back into its upright position until it engages and the red marking on the lock indicator ② is no longer visible.

Fastening rings and stretch net



Fig. 60 Luggage compartment: Location of fastening rings

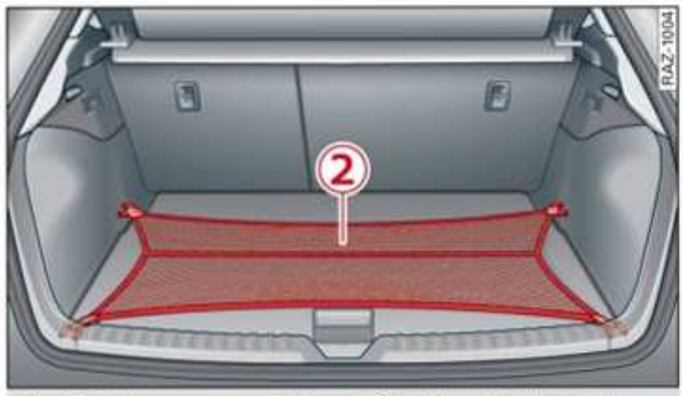


Fig. 61 Luggage compartment: Stretch net* attached

Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ *page 66*.

Fastening rings

There are fastening rings ① in the luggage compartment which can be used to secure luggage and other objects.

- ▸ Use the fastening rings to secure items in the luggage compartment.

Stretch net

Applies to: vehicles with stretch net

The stretch net ② can be used to secure light objects in the luggage compartment.

- ▸ Fold up the clips on the front fastening rings.
- ▸ Insert the hooks of the stretch net into the fastening rings.

Floor panel

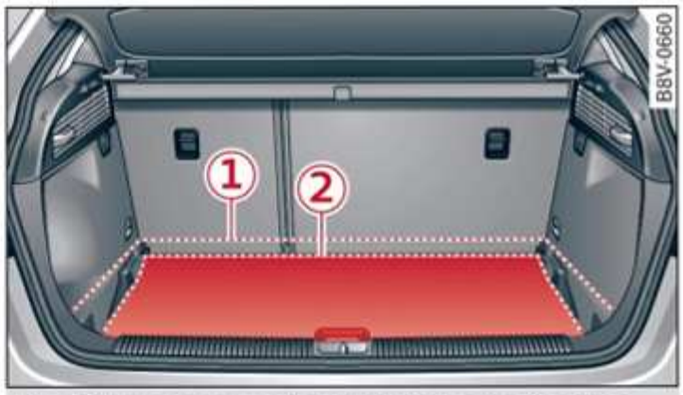


Fig. 62 Luggage compartment: Lowering/raising* floor panel

Removing and installing the floor panel

- ▸ To remove the floor panel, lift it by the handle.
- ▸ Pull the floor panel towards the rear of the vehicle and out of the luggage compartment.
- ▸ To insert the floor panel, slide it all the way in towards the backrest.

Lowering/raising the floor panel

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable floor panel

The height of the floor panel can be adjusted to increase the loading height of the luggage compartment or to facilitate loading/unloading.

- ▸ To lower the floor panel, lift it by the handle.
- ▸ Then pull the floor panel towards you slightly and re-insert it lower down at position ②.
- ▸ To raise the floor panel, take it out and re-insert it in the upper position ①.

Roof carrier

General information

Applies to: vehicles with roof carrier mountings



Fig. 63 Roof: Attachment points ▶

Note the following points if you intend to carry loads on the roof:

– The cross bars form the basic elements of a complete roof carrier system. Only use roof carriers suitable for use with your vehicle. Audi recommends using roof carriers and additional elements from the range of Audi Genuine Accessories.
– Ensure that roof carriers are only fitted at the points provided on the vehicle ⇨ *Fig. 63*.
– You should ensure that you do not exceed the maximum permitted axle loads, gross weight and roof load for your vehicle ⇨ *page 324*. The roof load limit applies to the combined weight of the roof carrier, the additional elements and the load itself. Please do not exceed the maximum carrying load of the carrier system you are using.

WARNING

– Note the fitting instructions provided by the manufacturer of the roof carrier system. If you do not secure the roof carrier system and roof load correctly, they can become separated from the vehicle and cause an accident.
– The use of a roof carrier system affects the vehicle's handling by shifting the centre of gravity and increasing susceptibility to cross winds – risk of accident! Take extra care when driving and adjust your speed accordingly.

CAUTION

Please take care that the boot lid and panorama sun roof* do not come into contact with the roof load when opened.

For the sake of the environment

The increased air resistance means that the vehicle uses more energy. For this reason you should always take off the roof carrier when it is not in use.

Heating and cooling

Air conditioner

Description

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, one of the following options is available:

- Manual air conditioner
- A 2-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner which can be used to adjust the temperature and air distribution at the front left and right individually

The air conditioner heats, cools, dehumidifies and filters the air inside the vehicle. It operates most effectively with the windows and the sun roof (if fitted) closed. If the vehicle has been standing in the sun, it may cool down faster if you open the windows briefly to let the hot air escape.

The deluxe automatic air conditioner will maintain the desired temperature at a constant level. When the heater is on, the blower normally only switches to a higher speed once the coolant has warmed up sufficiently (this does not apply to the defrost setting).

Enhanced air filter with activated carbon

When the blower is switched on, the filter reduces the concentration of fine particulate matter and pollen and neutralises odours in the vehicle interior.

Default settings

Default settings for certain functions can be selected on the infotainment system.

Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **A/C**.

Automatic supplementary heater

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine and automatic supplementary heater

The vehicle interior warms up more quickly with the supplementary heater. The system automatically switches the supplementary heater on temporarily as required, depending on the setting on the vehicle heating system.

The supplementary heater function can be switched on or off as required. Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **A/C** > **Auto supplementary heater**.

Note

- Keep the air intake slots in front of the windscreen clear of snow, ice and leaves to ensure unimpaired heating and cooling, and to prevent the windows misting over.
- Condensation can drip off the air cooling system and form a pool underneath the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a leak.
- If you notice, for instance, that the seat or rear window heating (if fitted) is not working, it may have been temporarily switched off by the energy management system. These systems will be available again as soon as sufficient electrical power is available.
- Depending on the country, the air conditioner may contain fluorinated greenhouse gases. Further information is provided on a sticker in the engine compartment.

81B012720AJ

Manual air conditioner

Applies to: vehicles with manual air conditioner

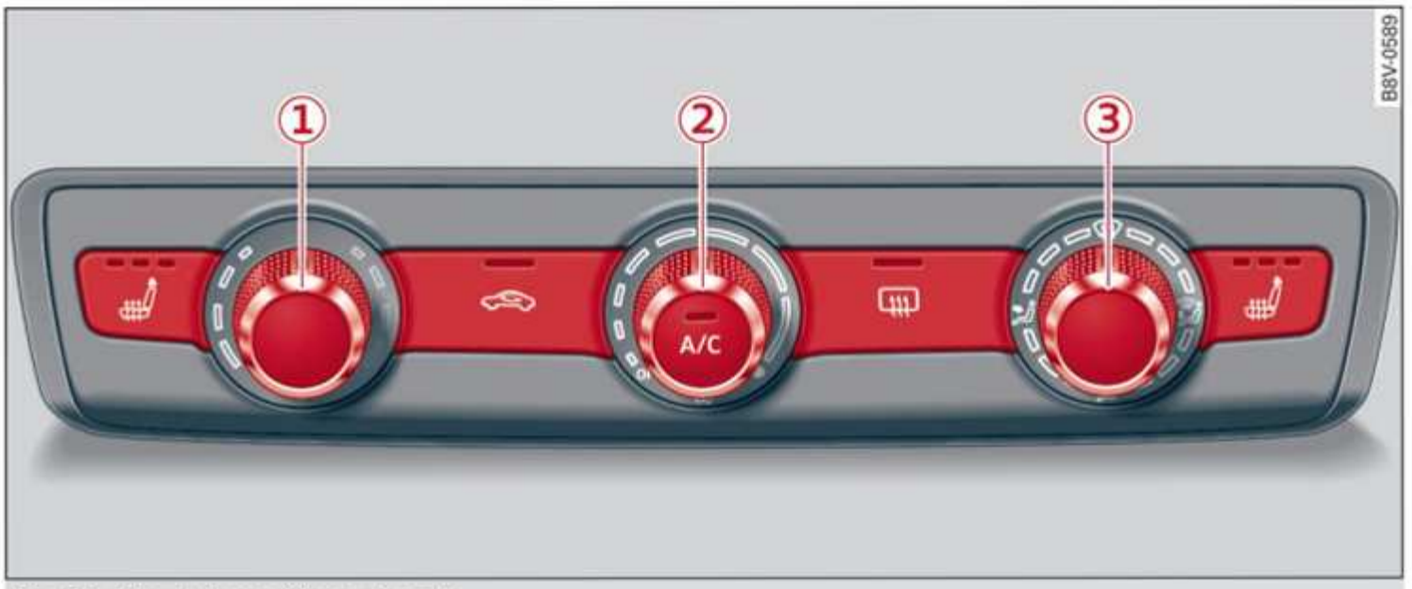


Fig. 64 Manual air conditioner: Controls

The functions can be switched on and off using the buttons and controlled using the rotary controls. The LED in the corresponding button or rotary control lights up when the function is switched on.

A/C Cooling mode

The air cooling system only works when the blower is switched on. The air cooling mode is switched on/off when the A/C button is pressed. When the air cooling is switched off, the air is neither cooled nor dehumidified. The windows may mist up as a result. The air cooling is switched off automatically at low outside temperatures.

Temperature

Rotary control ① is used to adjust the temperature.

Blower

You can adjust the blower speed manually using the rotary control ②. You should leave the blower on and make sure the setting is not too low to prevent the windows from misting up and to ensure that the vehicle interior is constantly ventilated.

If the windows are misted up, turn the control ③ to and set the blower and temperature settings to the highest level.

Air distribution and vents

The rotary control ③ can be used to adjust the air distribution. A setting between and usually provides a comfortable environment.

At the setting, the windscreen and side windows can be defrosted or demisted as quickly as possible. You should also set the blower and temperature settings to the highest level.

The round vents in the dashboard can be adjusted ⇨ *page 76*.

To prevent the front side windows from misting up, open the side vents and point them to the side.

Foot-level vents are provided underneath the front seats for air conditioning in the rear cabin.

Air recirculation mode

In air recirculation mode, the air from the interior of the vehicle is filtered and recirculated. This setting prevents fumes etc. from entering the interior ⇨ ⚠.

To switch the air recirculation mode on/off, press the button. The air recirculation mode is also switched off when the control is in the defrost position . ▶

Rear window heating

If the rear window heating is activated with the ignition switched on, the battery management determines whether or not the vehicle battery charge level is sufficient for the rear window heating to be switched on. Otherwise the rear window heating operates when the engine is running, and switches off automatically after about 10 - 20 minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

To switch on the rear window heating permanently, press and hold the button for at least two seconds.

Seat heating

Applies to: vehicles with seat heating

The seat heating temperature can be adjusted in several levels. Press the button once to activate the highest level. Press the button repeatedly to lower the temperature by one level each time. When no LEDs are lit, the seat heating is switched off.

WARNING

- You should not leave the air recirculation switched on for too long. The windows can mist over as a result – risk of accident!
- If the air recirculation function is used for a long period, the concentration of CO_2 can build up inside the vehicle. This can cause personal discomfort and may even lead to an accident! Switch off the air recirculation immediately and ventilate the vehicle if you experience any discomfort.
- Applies to vehicles with seat heating: The vehicle is fitted with functions which activate the seat heating automatically. People with limited capacity to feel pain or sense temperature must make sure that the seat heating is switched off at the start of the journey to ensure that they do not burn themselves.
- Applies to vehicles with seat heating: An alternating magnetic filed is generated when the seat heating is switched on. Side effects such as irritation to sensory organs or functional issues with active implants (e.g. pacemakers, infusion pumps, neurostimulators) are very unlikely. If you have implants, please consult a doctor if you have any questions.
- Applies to vehicles with seat heating: Explain to your passengers how to use the seat heating safely.

CAUTION

Applies to: vehicles with seat heating

- To avoid damaging the heating elements of the seat heating, please do not kneel on the seat or apply sharp pressure at a single point.
- Only use the seat heating when the seat is dry.
- Only place dry objects on the seats.
- Do not spill any liquid on the seats.
- Covering the seats can impair the seat heating function. Do not use seat covers and do not place any objects (e.g. jackets, blankets or bags) on the seats when the seat heating is switched on.
- Explain to your passengers how to use the seat heating safely.

For the sake of the environment

- Switching off A/C cooling mode saves energy.
- Diesel engine: Switching off the automatic supplementary heater saves energy.
- On vehicles with efficiency program, you can see how your fuel consumption is being affected by auxiliary equipment and have tips for improved fuel economy displayed ⇨ *page 23*.

Note

Applies to: vehicles with seat heating

If the front passenger's seat heating was on when you last switched off the ignition, it will be switched on automatically only if the ignition is switched on again within ten minutes.

81B012720AJ

Deluxe automatic air conditioner (2-zone)

Applies to: vehicles with 2-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner



Fig. 65 2-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner: Controls

The functions can be switched on and off using the buttons and controlled using the rotary controls. The LED in the corresponding button or rotary control lights up when the function is switched on.

AUTO Automatic mode

The automatic mode maintains a constant temperature inside the vehicle. Air temperature, output and distribution are regulated automatically. The AUTO mode is switched off immediately when you operate any of the manual air controls.

Applies to vehicles with eco mode: The energy saving mode of the air conditioner is activated if you press the AUTO button briefly while automatic mode is active. **eco** will be shown on the display of the air conditioner console. You can end eco mode by pressing the AUTO button again.

A/C Cooling mode

The air cooling system only works when the blower is switched on. The air cooling mode is switched on/off when the A/C button is pressed. When the air cooling is switched off, the air is neither cooled nor dehumidified. The windows may mist up as a result. The air cooling is switched off automatically at low outside temperatures.

/ Temperature

The temperature for each front seat can be set separately using rotary controls ① and ②. The temperature can be adjusted between 16 °C (+60 °F) and 28 °C (+84 °F). Outside this range, **LO** or **HI** will appear on the console display. In the two extreme settings the air conditioner operates continuously with maximum cooling or heating output, and the temperature is not regulated automatically.

Synchronisation: By pressing the AUTO button for two seconds, the temperature of the passenger's side can be set to the temperature of the driver's side. The settings remain synchronised until the temperature is changed on the passenger's side.

Blower

You can adjust the blower speed manually using the rotary control . You should leave the blower on and make sure the setting is not too low to prevent the windows from misting up and to ensure that the vehicle interior is constantly ventilated. Press the AUTO button for automatic control of the blower speed. To demist the windows, press the MAX button. ▶

Air distribution and vents

The buttons can be used to adjust the air distribution. Press the AUTO button for automatic air distribution.

The round vents in the dashboard can be adjusted ⇨ *page 76*.

To prevent the front side windows from misting up, open the side vents and point them to the side.

Foot-level vents are provided underneath the front seats for air conditioning in the rear cabin.

Defrosting

The windscreen and side windows are defrosted or demisted as quickly as possible. Point the outer vents towards the side windows to speed up the process. The air output is increased to maximum and most of the air comes out of the outlets below the windscreen. The air recirculation mode is deactivated. The temperature should be set to 22 °C or higher. The temperature is regulated automatically. A/C cooling mode is automatically switched on depending on the ambient temperature.

The defroster is switched off when the AUTO button is pressed.

Air recirculation mode

In air recirculation mode, the air from the interior of the vehicle is filtered and recirculated. This setting prevents fumes etc. from entering the interior ⇨ ⚠.

– Press the button to switch air recirculation mode on/off manually.
– To switch **automatic air recirculation** on/off, the automatic air recirculation function (depending on the vehicle equipment) must be activated beforehand on the infotainment system. Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **A/C** > **Auto recirculation**. If air pollution is detected, air recirculation is regulated automatically when this function is activated.

The air recirculation mode is switched off when the or AUTO or button is pressed.

Rear window heating

If the rear window heating is activated with the ignition switched on, the battery management determines whether or not the vehicle battery charge level is sufficient for the rear window heating to be switched on. Otherwise the rear window heating operates when the engine is running, and switches off automatically after about 10 - 20 minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

To switch on the rear window heating permanently, press and hold the button for at least two seconds.

Seat heating

Applies to: vehicles with seat heating

The seat heating temperature can be adjusted in several levels. Press the button once to activate the highest level. Press the button repeatedly to lower the temperature by one level each time. When no LEDs are lit, the seat heating is switched off.

WARNING

– You should not leave the air recirculation switched on for too long. The windows can mist over as a result – risk of accident!
– If the air recirculation function or (if fitted) the automatic air recirculation function is used for a long period, the concentration of CO_2 can build up inside the vehicle. This can cause personal discomfort and may even lead to an accident! Switch off the air recirculation or automatic air recirculation immediately and ventilate the vehicle if you experience any discomfort.
– Applies to vehicles with seat heating: The vehicle is fitted with functions which activate the seat heating automatically. People with limited capacity to feel pain or sense temperature must make sure that the seat heating is switched off at the start of the journey to ensure that they do not burn themselves.
– Applies to vehicles with seat heating: An alternating magnetic filed is generated when the seat heating is switched on. Side effects ▶

such as irritation to sensory organs or functional issues with active implants (e.g. pacemakers, infusion pumps, neurostimulators) are very unlikely. If you have implants, please consult a doctor if you have any questions.
– Applies to vehicles with seat heating: Explain to your passengers how to use the seat heating safely.

CAUTION

Applies to: vehicles with seat heating

– To avoid damaging the heating elements of the seat heating, please do not kneel on the seat or apply sharp pressure at a single point.
– Only use the seat heating when the seat is dry.
– Only place dry objects on the seats.
– Do not spill any liquid on the seats.
– Covering the seats can impair the seat heating function. Do not use seat covers and do not place any objects (e.g. jackets, blankets or bags) on the seats when the seat heating is switched on.
– Explain to your passengers how to use the seat heating safely.

For the sake of the environment

– Switching off A/C cooling mode saves energy.
– Diesel engine: Switching off the automatic supplementary heater saves energy.
– On vehicles with efficiency program, you can see how your fuel consumption is being affected by auxiliary equipment and have tips for improved fuel economy displayed ⇨ *page 23*.

Note

Applies to: vehicles with seat heating

If the front passenger's seat heating was on when you last switched off the ignition, it will be switched on automatically only if the ignition is switched on again within ten minutes.

Adjusting the vents



Fig. 66 Dashboard: Adjusting vent

To adjust the **air flow intensity**, turn the ribbed outer adjustment ring ①. To shut off the air flow, turn the adjustment ring all the way to the right.

To adjust the **air flow direction**, move the inside grille ② in the vent.

Auxiliary heating/ ventilation

Description

Applies to: vehicles with auxiliary heating/ventilation

The auxiliary heating warms up the inside of the vehicle, while the auxiliary ventilation draws in fresh air and can lower the temperature inside the vehicle, depending on the ambient temperature. The function can be used either when the engine is off or when driving (for instance while the engine is warming up).

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, the settings for the auxiliary heating/ventilation can be controlled via:

– Infotainment
– Remote control
– Multi-function steering wheel plus (steering wheel button ✳ ⇨ *page 24*)

Conditions for operation

– There is enough fuel in the tank.
– The vehicle battery is sufficiently charged. ▶

WARNING

- The auxiliary heating must not be allowed to run when the vehicle is in a confined space – risk of poisoning!
- Never have the auxiliary heating switched on when refuelling the vehicle – risk of fire!
- Because of the high temperatures which occur when the auxiliary heating is running, make sure when parking the car that the exhaust outlet under the car is not obstructed in any way and that the exhaust gases do not come into contact with flammable materials (fire risk).

Note

- It is advisable to open the vents on the dashboard when using the auxiliary heating/ventilation.
- The auxiliary heating/ventilation system heats/cools the interior to the temperature last selected on the air conditioner control console ⇨ *page 74*.
- To switch off the auxiliary heating/ventilation immediately, you can also switch off the blower on the A/C control console ⇨ *page 74, Fig. 65*.
- The auxiliary heating/ventilation will not switch on or will switch itself off earlier than intended if the battery charge or fuel level is low.
- If the auxiliary heating/ventilation is on, it is not switched off automatically when the engine is started or stopped.
- At low outside temperatures, some visible water vapour may form in the engine compartment. This is a normal phenomenon, and no reason for concern.
- When parking on a hill or gradient, the function of the auxiliary heating may be restricted if the fuel gauge is just above the reserve zone.

Switching on/off immediately

Applies to: vehicles with auxiliary heating/ventilation

Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ *page 76*.

- To switch on the auxiliary heating/ventilation, select: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Auxiliary heating** > **Switch on auxiliary heating** and turn the rotary pushbutton to select the desired running time.
- To switch off the auxiliary heating/ventilation, select: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Auxiliary heating** > **Switch off auxiliary heating**.

The symbol flashes on the air conditioner console when the auxiliary heating is switched on. The air conditioner console is illuminated when the auxiliary ventilation is switched on.

Setting a timer

Applies to: vehicles with auxiliary heating/ventilation

Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ *page 76*.

Set the **Departure time** in the timer.

Setting the heating effect

- If you want the system to defrost the windscreen and the front side windows, select: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Auxiliary heating** > e.g. **Timer 1** > right control button > **Heating effect** > **defrost**.
- If you want the system to defrost the windscreen and the front side windows and heat up your vehicle, select: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Auxiliary heating** > e.g. **Timer 1** > right control button > **Heating effect** > **warm**.

Setting a timer

- Select: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Auxiliary heating** > e.g. **Timer 1** > right control button > **Program timer**.
- Set the time and date.
- Use the rotary pushbutton to confirm the settings and activate the timer. A ✓ will appear in the box on the right.

The departure time specifies when the vehicle interior is to reach the desired temperature. The auxiliary heating/ventilation switches off automatically about ten minutes later.

After the departure time expires, the next calendar date is automatically entered on the ▶

81B012720AJ

infotainment system. To activate the auxiliary heating/air conditioning for the following day, confirm the settings using the rotary pushbutton. A ✓ will appear in the box on the right.

Note

– To ensure that the timer operates correctly, check that the correct time and date are entered in the system settings ⇨ *page 256*.
– The auxiliary heating/ventilation can be switched on/off immediately even if a timer has been programmed. This has no effect on the programmed timer setting as long as the auxiliary heating/ventilation is not switched off manually during the programmed period.

Switching on/off using the remote control

Applies to: vehicles with auxiliary heating/ventilation and remote control



Fig. 67 Remote control: Auxiliary heating/ventilation

Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ *page 76*.

The range of the remote control is about 400 metres; however this can be greatly reduced by obstacles.

You can achieve the best range by holding the remote control with the aerial ① pointing vertically upwards. Do not cover the aerial.

Switching the auxiliary heating/ventilation on/off

► To switch on, press and hold the button ②.

The auxiliary heating/ventilation is switched on when the LED ③ lights up in green for approx. two seconds.

► To switch off, press and hold the OFF button ④.

The auxiliary heating/ventilation is switched off when the LED lights up in red for approx. two seconds.

LED in remote control

The LED ③ provides status information each time you press a button:

– If the LED flashes steadily in red or green for approx. four seconds, the signal was not received. Move closer to the vehicle.
– If the LED lights up in orange for approx. two seconds, and then lights up or flashes in red or green, the remote control battery charge is low.
– If the LED flashes irregularly in green for approx. five seconds, the auxiliary heating/ventilation is disabled. The fuel level or vehicle battery charge is too low or a system fault has occurred in the auxiliary heating/ventilation.
– If the remote control LED flashes rapidly in orange for approx. six seconds after you press a button, the remote control battery needs to be replaced. The same applies if the LED does not light up at all.

Replacing the remote control battery

Applies to: vehicles with auxiliary heating/ventilation and remote control



Fig. 68 Remote control: Changing battery

► Insert a screwdriver or similar in the slot on the side ①.
► Prise the battery cover off upwards.
► Slide the battery cover slightly in the direction of the arrow and detach it. ▶

- Insert a screwdriver or similar tool in the slot ②. Do not touch any other areas with the tool.
- Carefully pry out the battery.
- Insert a new battery of the same type ③.
- Put the battery cover back on and slide it in the opposite direction of the arrow until it clicks into place.

WARNING

If batteries or button cells are swallowed or enter the body in any other way, they can cause severe or lethal injuries within an extremely short period of time – risk of chemical burns!

– Keep the remote control out of the reach of children.
– Keep new and used batteries away from children.
– If the battery compartment does not close securely, stop using the remote control and keep it away from children.
– Seek a doctor's assistance immediately if you suspect that a battery has been swallowed or has entered the body in any other way.

For the sake of the environment

Batteries and electric/electronic equipment must be disposed of appropriately ⇨ *page 326, Information on waste disposal.*

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with auxiliary heating/ventilation

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Auxiliary heating/ventilation: fault. Not available

If this message appears, a system malfunction has occurred. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Fluids in the air conditioner

Refrigerant in the air conditioner

The sticker in the engine compartment provides information about the type and quantity of refrigerant used in the vehicle's air conditioning system. This sticker is located in the front section of the engine compartment or at the front or rear of the bonnet.

Symbol	Meaning
	Warning: Maintenance work on the air conditioning system must only be performed by qualified personnel.
	Type of refrigerant
	Type of lubricant
	Refer to workshop information (only available to Audi workshops and other qualified workshops)
	Maintenance work on the air conditioning system must only be performed by qualified personnel.
	Flammable refrigerant
	Ensure that all components are disposed of correctly and never install components in the vehicle which have been removed from old vehicles or recycled.

Lubricant in the air conditioner

The sticker in the engine compartment provides information about the type of lubricant used in the vehicle's air conditioning system. For information about the quantity of lubricant used, please contact a qualified workshop.

WARNING

Maintenance work on the air conditioning system must only be carried out by qualified and certified personnel who have been trained in accordance with the standards required in the ▶

specific country, e.g. SAE norms J2845 and J2911.

- Refrigerant is flammable. Keep the vehicle away from naked flames, sparks and other ignition sources – risk of fatal injury!
- The refrigerant is under pressure and could explode if it is heated – risk of fatal injury!
- The refrigerant may produce toxic vapours when it comes into contact with hot surfaces; such vapours must not be inhaled – risk of fatal injury!

Note

Components from old vehicles or recycled components must never be used when repairing the evaporator of the air conditioning system.

Driving

Starting the vehicle

Convenience key

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key



Fig. 69 Centre console: Starting the engine

Important: The key must be in the vehicle.

Starting the engine

- Automatic gearbox: Press and hold the brake pedal.
- Manual gearbox: Press and hold the clutch and brake pedals.
- Press the START ENGINE STOP button. The engine should start.

Electrical components with a high power consumption are switched off temporarily while you start the engine. If the engine fails to start immediately, the starter will be switched off automatically after a few seconds. In this case, you should try to start the engine again after about 30 seconds.

At low temperatures, the engine may only start in transmission position P.

Diesel engine: The engine may take a few seconds longer than usual to start on cold days. Please keep your foot on the brake pedal (automatic gearbox) or clutch pedal (manual gearbox) until the engine starts.

Diesel engine: If the indicator lamp lights up when the ignition is switched on, the glow plugs are preheating. If the indicator lamp flashes while the vehicle is moving, there is a fault in the engine management system. In this case, drive slowly to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Switching off the engine

- Stop the vehicle.
- Press the START ENGINE STOP button. The engine will switch off.

Applies to vehicles with steering lock: The steering will be locked if you switch off the engine and open the driver's door. The steering lock acts as a theft deterrent. On vehicles with automatic gearbox, transmission position P must be selected.

Switching off the engine in an emergency

If necessary, the engine can be switched off in an emergency* while the vehicle is still moving.

- Press the START ENGINE STOP button twice in quick succession or press and hold it.

Switching the ignition on/off

If you only wish to switch the ignition on or off and do not want to start the engine as well, proceed as follows:

- Automatic gearbox: Press the START ENGINE STOP button without pressing the brake pedal.
- Manual gearbox: Press the START ENGINE STOP button without pressing the clutch pedal.

Automatic ignition off

To prevent the vehicle battery from being discharged, the ignition and, in some cases, the exterior lighting may be switched off automatically.

Requirements:
– The start/stop system must have switched off the engine.
– You must have left the vehicle.
– The ignition must be switched on.

The methods used by the vehicle for detecting whether you have left include the following:

– Driver's door has been opened.
– Driver's seat belt has been unbuckled.
– Brake pedal is not pressed.

WARNING

– Never run the engine in confined spaces. The exhaust gases are toxic – risk of poisoning! ▶

– Never switch off the engine until the vehicle is stationary. Otherwise you may not have the full benefit of the brake servo and power steering. You may need more strength to steer and brake the vehicle than you normally would. This would mean a greater risk of accidents and serious injury, because you cannot steer and brake in the normal manner.
– Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇨ *page 84*.

CAUTION

– Avoid high engine speeds, full throttle and extreme load conditions until the engine has reached its normal operating temperature; otherwise this can damage the engine.
– If the engine has been working hard for a long time, there is a risk of heat building up in the engine compartment after the engine has been switched off; this could cause engine damage. For this reason, you should leave the engine idling for about 2 minutes before switching it off.

Note

– Any brief noises which may be heard when the vehicle is started and stopped are quite normal and no cause for concern.
– After the engine is stopped, the radiator fan may remain on or turn itself back on for up to 10 minutes, even if the ignition is switched off.
– The full performance is not available until the engine is warm.
– It may not be possible to start the vehicle at extremely low outside temperatures.

Ignition key

Applies to: vehicles with ignition lock



Fig. 70 Steering column: Ignition key

Starting the engine

▸ Automatic gearbox: Press the brake pedal.
▸ Manual gearbox: Press and hold the clutch and brake pedals.
▸ Insert the ignition key into the ignition lock.
▸ Turn the ignition key briefly to position ②. The ignition key automatically returns to position ①. Do not press the accelerator.
▸ The engine will start and the vehicle will be ready to drive.

Electrical components with a high power consumption are switched off temporarily while you start the engine. If the engine fails to start immediately, switch off the starter by turning the ignition key to position ⓪ and try again after about 30 seconds.

At low temperatures, the engine may only start in transmission position P.

If it is difficult to turn the ignition key to position ①, move the steering wheel (to take the load off the steering lock mechanism) until the key turns freely.

Diesel engine: The engine may take a few seconds longer than usual to start on cold days. Please keep your foot on the brake pedal (automatic gearbox) or clutch pedal (manual gearbox) until the engine starts.

Diesel engine: If the indicator lamp lights up when the ignition is switched on, the glow plugs are preheating. If the indicator lamp flashes while the vehicle is moving, there is a fault in the engine management system. In this case, drive ▸

slowly to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Switching off the engine

- Stop the vehicle.
- Turn the ignition key to position ⓪. The engine will switch off.

Automatic gearbox: It is only possible to remove the ignition key in transmission position P.

Engaging the steering lock

Applies to: vehicles with steering lock

The steering lock acts as a theft deterrent.

- Remove the ignition key.
- Turn the steering wheel until you hear the steering lock engage.

Switching the ignition on/off

If you only wish to switch the ignition on or off and do not want to start the engine as well, proceed as follows:

- Switching on: Turn the ignition key to position ①.
- Switching off: Turn the ignition key to position ⓪.

WARNING

- Never run the engine in confined spaces. The exhaust gases are toxic – risk of poisoning!
- Never switch off the engine until the vehicle is stationary. Otherwise you may not have the full benefit of the brake servo and power steering. You may need more strength to steer and brake the vehicle than you normally would. This would mean a greater risk of accidents and serious injury, because you cannot steer and brake in the normal manner.
- Never remove the key from the ignition while the vehicle is moving. The steering lock could engage, and you would not be able to steer the car – risk of accident!
- Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇨ *page 84*.

CAUTION

- Avoid high engine speeds, full throttle and extreme load conditions until the engine has reached its normal operating temperature; otherwise this can damage the engine.
- If the engine has been working hard for a long time, there is a risk of heat building up in the engine compartment after the engine has been switched off; this could cause engine damage. For this reason, you should leave the engine idling for about 2 minutes before switching it off.

Note

- Any brief noises which may be heard when the vehicle is started and stopped are quite normal and no cause for concern.
- After the engine is stopped, the radiator fan may remain on or turn itself back on for up to 10 minutes, even if the ignition is switched off.
- It may not be possible to start the vehicle at extremely low outside temperatures.

Driver messages

Power unit start system: fault. Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the engine start system. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Key not in vehicle?

Remote control key: key not recognised. Is key still in vehicle?

The vehicle key was removed from the vehicle with the engine running. If the vehicle key is not in the vehicle you will not be able to switch on the ignition or restart the engine after it has been switched off. You will also not be able to lock the vehicle from the outside.

Key not recognised. See owner's manual

Remote control key: hold back of key against marked area. See owner's manual ▶

The vehicle key battery is empty or there is radio interference. To start the vehicle, you must also hold the vehicle key against the symbol ⇨ *page 81, Fig. 69*.

If the malfunction remains permanently, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Driving

Driving away, stopping, parking

Driving away from a standstill

Applies to: vehicles with manual gearbox

- ▸ Press and hold the clutch and brake pedals.
- ▸ Start the engine.
- ▸ Select a gear.
- ▸ Release the parking brake.
- ▸ Take your foot off the brake pedal.
- ▸ Release the clutch pedal slowly and press the accelerator to pick up speed.

Driving away from a standstill

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

- ▸ Press and hold the brake pedal.
- ▸ Start the engine.
- ▸ Select a transmission position.
- ▸ Release the parking brake.
- ▸ Take your foot off the brake pedal. The vehicle may start to creep forwards.
- ▸ Press the accelerator to increase the speed.

Securing the vehicle to prevent it from rolling away

Before leaving the vehicle, always secure it so that it cannot roll away.

- ▸ Apply the parking brake.
- ▸ Automatic gearbox: Select transmission position P.
- ▸ Manual gearbox: Engage first gear.
- ▸ When parking on a slope, turn the steering wheel so that the vehicle would roll into the kerb if it did start to move unexpectedly.

If this is not possible (e.g. if the vehicle has no electrical power), you must take additional steps to secure the vehicle so that it cannot roll away.

- ▸ Only park the vehicle on a level surface.
- ▸ Block the wheels by placing suitable objects underneath both the front and rear of each wheel.

Automatic gearbox: Always apply the parking brake before selecting transmission position P. This reduces the load on the locking mechanism when the vehicle is on a slope.

WARNING

- – Always apply the parking brake before leaving your vehicle – even if you only intend to be gone for a short time. Otherwise the vehicle can roll away – risk of accident!
- – Never leave your vehicle unattended while the engine is running – risk of accident!
- – If the parking brake is engaged, it may be released automatically if the accelerator pedal is pressed. Take care when pressing the accelerator pedal and always select position P when you park the vehicle – risk of accident!
- – Always switch off the ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. This is particularly important if persons or animals are left in the vehicle. They might otherwise unintentionally start the vehicle, release the parking brake or use power-operated equipment – this could cause accidents.
- – Do not leave any persons or animals in the vehicle when it is locked. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.
- – If you do not drive away immediately after releasing the brake pedal, the vehicle may start to roll backwards. You should therefore immediately press the brake pedal or apply the parking brake.

CAUTION

To avoid rolling back on gradients always hold the vehicle with the brake pedal if you have to stop. Do not attempt to hold the vehicle by slipping the clutch or keeping your foot on the accelerator. This could cause the clutch and gearbox to overheat – risk of damage!

Hill hold assist

When you take your foot off the brake pedal when driving away on a slope, the braking force will be maintained for several seconds. During ▸

this period, the vehicle will not roll backwards when you set off.

Important: The driver's door must be closed, the engine must be running and the vehicle must be on a slope and facing uphill.

▸ To activate the hill hold assist, press and hold the brake pedal for several seconds while the vehicle is stationary.

Use the hold assist ⇨ *page 94* if you want to hold the vehicle with the brakes for more than a few seconds.

WARNING

– If you do not drive away immediately after releasing the brake pedal, the vehicle may start to roll backwards. You should therefore immediately press the brake pedal or apply the parking brake.
– The hill hold assist function cannot keep the vehicle stationary in all conditions on a gradient (e.g. if the road is slippery or icy).

Driver messages

Hill hold assist: unavailable

The hill hold assist is temporarily unavailable. Press the brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

Changing gear

Applies to: vehicles with manual gearbox

On vehicles which have a manual gearbox, gears are changed by hand using the gear lever. The positions of the gears are marked on the gear lever. Please note that reverse gear can only be selected when the gear lever is pressed down.

CAUTION

– Always press the clutch pedal all the way down.
– Take your foot off the clutch pedal after you have changed gear. Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal.
– Always be prepared to change up or down as the road speed and engine speed vary.
– Wait until the vehicle has stopped completely before selecting reverse gear.

Transmission positions and driving programs

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

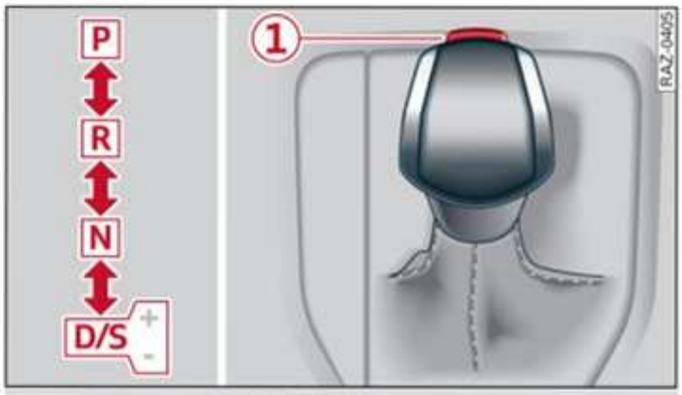


Fig. 71 Centre console: Selector lever

The automatic gearbox changes gear according to the transmission position selected and the way the vehicle is currently being driven. When you drive at moderate speeds, the gearbox will change up early and delay the downshifts to give better fuel economy. The gearbox allows higher engine speeds for performance driving.

The transmission positions are shown next to the selector lever.

– **P** (Park): Parking lock
– **R** (Reverse): Drive backwards
– **N** (Neutral)
– **D** (Drive): Drive forwards

Selecting a transmission position

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

– Stop the vehicle and press the brake pedal.
– Press and hold the release button ① on the selector lever.
– To select a transmission position, move the selector lever to the corresponding position.
– The selected transmission position will light up next to the selector lever.

Transmission position N (neutral)

No power is transmitted to the driven wheels in transmission position N. Use transmission position N, for example, in a tunnel car wash. ▶

If you accidentally select transmission position N while the vehicle is moving (at more than 2 km/h), you can switch back to D without pressing the brake.

For safety reasons, the vehicle cannot be locked when N is selected.

Transmission position P (parking lock)

In transmission position P, the vehicle is prevented from rolling away by the parking lock. The parking lock is a mechanical locking mechanism for the gearbox.

If you cannot move out of transmission position P (e.g. if the vehicle has no electrical power), you may need to release the parking lock manually ⇨ *page 95*.

Selecting a driving program

Various driving programs can be selected in transmission position D. These have an effect on when the gearbox changes gear and the reaction to accelerator pedal inputs, for example.

The selected driving program will be displayed in the instrument cluster.

– **D** (Drive): Normal driving
– **E** (Efficiency*): Economical driving
– **S** (Sport): Performance driving

If you select **dynamic** or **efficiency** mode in Audi drive select*, the driving program S or E respectively will be activated. The driving program may be switched back to D when the ignition is switched off.

Press the selector lever downwards to switch between the current driving program and S.

WARNING

– Before driving off, check that the desired transmission position is displayed next to the selector lever.
– Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇨ *page 84*.
– In all transmission positions except P and N the vehicle must always be held with the footbrake when the engine is running. This is because an automatic gearbox still transmits power even at idling speed, and the vehicle tends to "creep".
– Do not press the accelerator before selecting a transmission position with the vehicle stationary and the engine running, as this could cause an accident.
– Never select transmission position R or P when driving at normal speeds, as this could cause an accident.
– The car can roll away even if the ignition is switched off.

Note

– You do not have to press the brake pedal if you switch back and forth between D and R within one second. This allows you to rock the car backwards and forwards, e.g. to free it from snow or mud, etc.
– Audi recommends driving program D for everyday use.

Manual gear selection

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

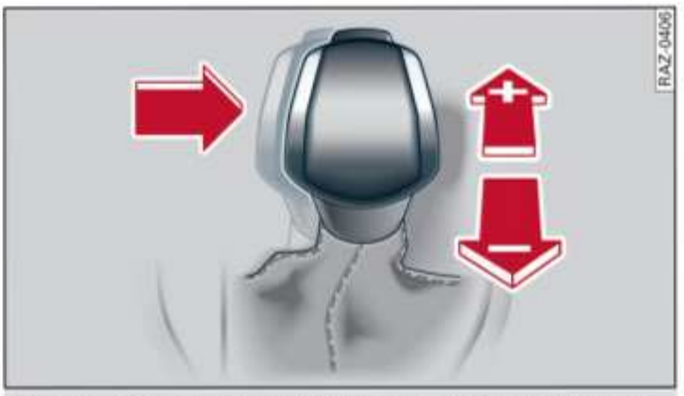


Fig. 72 Centre console: Manual gear selection using selector lever



Fig. 73 Steering wheel: Paddle levers*

You can change gear manually in transmission position D. The gearbox must be in tiptronic mode.

Gear selection with selector lever

You can switch to manual gear selection mode either with the vehicle stationary or on the move.

- To switch to manual gear selection mode, move the selector lever toward the passenger's side ⇨ *Fig. 72*. M will be displayed in the instrument cluster.
- To change up: Press the selector lever forwards ⊕.
- To change down: Pull the selector lever towards the rear ⊖.
- To switch back to automatic mode, move the selector lever toward the driver's side.

Gear selection with paddle levers

Applies to: vehicles with paddle levers

- To change up: Press the paddle lever ⊕ ⇨ *Fig. 73*.
- To change down: Press the paddle lever ⊖.
- To switch back to automatic mode, hold the paddle lever ⊕ for longer or pull the selector lever towards the rear.

The gearbox will revert to automatic mode if you do not operate one of the paddle levers again within a short period. To switch to manual gear selection mode permanently, move the selector lever toward the passenger's side.

Note

– The gearbox only allows manual gear changes if the engine speed would remain within the permissible range.
– The gearbox automatically shifts up or down into the next gear before a critical engine speed is reached.

Accelerator

You can use the accelerator pedal to increase the vehicle's speed.

Maximum acceleration

A kick-down function is available for maximum engine output and acceleration if you press the accelerator all the way down.

WARNING

The driven wheels may start to spin when you use the kick-down function, causing the vehicle to lose grip, on slippery or wet roads – risk of accident!

Launch control

Applies to: vehicles with launch control

The launch control gives you optimum acceleration when starting from a standstill.

Important

– The engine must be warm.
– The steering wheel must be pointing straight ahead.
– The start/stop system* must be deactivated ⇨ *page 90*.
– The hold assist* must be deactivated ⇨ *page 94*.
– Front-wheel drive: ESC must be restricted ⇨ *page 101*.
– Four-wheel drive: ESC must be switched off ⇨ *page 101*.
– Driving program S must be selected ⇨ *page 86* or Audi drive select* must be set to **dynamic** mode ⇨ *page 98*.

Using the launch control

– Press the brake pedal with your left foot and hold it down for at least one second.
– Keeping the brake pedal pressed, simultaneously press the accelerator all the way down with your right foot.
– When the engine revs are high and steady, take your foot off the brake.

When you are finished with the launch control, please remember to fully activate the ESC again.

WARNING

Only use the launch control when road and traffic conditions permit, and make sure your ▶

driving style and acceleration do not inconvenience or endanger other road users. The driven wheels may start to spin, causing the vehicle to lose grip, in particular on slippery or wet roads – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Accelerating with the launch control places a heavy load on all parts of the vehicle. This can result in increased wear and tear.

– Do not use the launch control when the vehicle is in towing mode as this could result in damage to the vehicle, trailer and load.

Note

Some vehicle components may be hot after accelerating with the launch control. In this case, the function may not be available for several minutes. This is to avoid damage. The launch control will be available again after a cool-down period.

Driver messages

Gearbox: fault. Safely stop vehicle

Do not drive on. Stop the vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible and secure it so that it cannot roll away ⇨ *page 84*. Seek professional assistance.

Gearbox overheating: please stop vehicle

Do not drive on. Select transmission position P and seek professional assistance.

Gearbox overheating: please adapt driving style

The gearbox temperature has risen significantly. Drive more passively or take a break until the temperature is back to normal and the indicator lamp has gone out.

Gearbox malfunction: you can continue driving. See owner's manual

A gearbox malfunction has occurred. You can continue driving. However, you should drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Gearbox malfunction: you can continue driving (functions limited). Please contact workshop

A gearbox malfunction has occurred. The gearbox will switch to the back-up programme. The programme will only move into certain gears or may not be able to shift gears at all. The engine may stall. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Gearbox malfunction: no reverse gear. You can continue driving

A gearbox malfunction has occurred. The gearbox will switch to the back-up programme. The programme will only move into certain gears or may not be able to shift gears at all. The engine may stall. You can no longer engage reverse gear. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Gearbox malfunction: you can continue driving in D until power unit off

A gearbox malfunction has occurred. The gearbox will switch to the back-up programme. If you switch off the engine, you will not be able to engage any other transmission positions after the engine is started again. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Vehicle may roll! Cannot shift to P. Please apply parking brake

– The parking lock has been released manually ⇨ *page 95*. Or:
– It is no longer possible to engage the parking lock. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇨ *page 84*.

Clutch: fault. Please contact workshop

There is a permanent malfunction in the clutch. The transmissible torque is reduced. You can continue driving, but avoid placing an excessive load on the clutch and do not slip the clutch for longer than necessary. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Clutch: overheating. Please adapt driving style ▶

There is a malfunction in the clutch. The transmissible torque is reduced. You can continue driving, but avoid placing an excessive load on the clutch and do not slip the clutch for longer than necessary. The indicator lamp will go out when the transmission capability of the clutch has been restored completely.

Clutch: check pedal. You can continue driving

The clutch is not transmitting the full engine torque. If your foot is on the clutch pedal, please remove it.

Engine

Running in

A new vehicle should be run in over the first 1,500 km so that all moving parts can settle in together gently and the service life of the engine and other powertrain components can be increased.

For the first 1,000 km, do not exceed two thirds of the engine's maximum rpm speed and do not accelerate at full throttle. You can increase the engine speed gradually over the next 500 km.

Conventional drive systems

Vehicles with conventional drive systems are powered by a combustion engine which burns fuel to generate energy.

Coasting

Applies to: vehicles with coasting function

Coasting can be used to save fuel. When the vehicle is coasting, the combustion engine is disengaged and the vehicle rolls without the engine braking effect. Coasting mode may be activated between 16 km/h and 130 km/h when you take your foot off the accelerator.

WARNING

When coasting is activated, there is no longer an engine braking effect and the vehicle does not slow down as quickly as usual or may even pick up speed if you are driving down a slope – risk of accident!

Note

- You can cancel coasting by applying the accelerator or brakes. Slight corrective brake applications are also possible without cancelling coasting.
- Coasting is not possible in all driving programs.

Driving in an efficient and environmentally conscious way

Fuel and energy economy, environmental impact and wear on the engine, brakes and tyres depend largely on the way you drive the vehicle. You can drive in an efficient and environmentally conscious way by considering the following tips:

- Select **efficiency** mode in Audi drive select*.
- Switch off any electric equipment you do not need (e.g. seat heating*).
- Anticipate the traffic conditions to avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
- Avoid driving at high speeds.
- Remove ballast, such as roof racks or rear carriers, when not needed.
- Make sure the tyres are inflated to the correct pressure.
- Have the vehicle serviced regularly.
- Do not leave the engine running while the car is stopped.
- Do not use winter tyres in summer.
- Make use of the start/stop system.
- Make use of the engine braking effect.
- Avoid short trips.

Note

Sporty driving can lead to significantly higher noise emissions. Please therefore be aware of your social responsibilities and consider the environment and those around you, particularly at night.

Energy management

Your vehicle is equipped with an intelligent energy management system to control the distribution of electrical energy. This significantly improves reliability when starting the engine, and also prolongs the life of the vehicle battery.

Note

- If the vehicle is driven frequently on short trips, the battery may not be sufficiently charged while driving. In this case, certain convenience functions for electrical equipment may be temporarily unavailable.
- If the vehicle is left standing for long periods, or if electrical equipment is used without running the engine, the battery will gradually lose its charge. To ensure that the vehicle can be started, the electrical equipment is powered back or switched off.

Driver messages

Engine stopped: brake servo and power steering not possible

There is a fault in the engine or fuel supply. Greater strength is required to steer and brake the vehicle if the engine stops while the vehicle is coasting. Carefully try to bring the coasting vehicle safely to a standstill out of the way of moving traffic. Seek professional assistance.

If the indicator lamp / EPC lights up, there may be a fault in the engine management system. Drive slowly to a qualified workshop without delay and have the engine checked.

WARNING

Greater strength is required to brake the vehicle if the engine stops while the vehicle is moving - risk of accident! Greater strength will be required to steer the vehicle unless the power steering is still providing assistance. The power steering may still be available if the vehicle is still coasting with the ignition switched on (and the vehicle battery charge is sufficient).

Start/stop system

Description

Applies to: vehicles with start/stop system

The start/stop system can help to save fuel and reduce CO_2 emissions. In start/stop mode, the engine is switched off automatically when the vehicle stops, e.g. at traffic lights.

If certain conditions are met, the engine may be switched off before the vehicle has come to a standstill. If the accelerator pedal is pressed in this case, the engine starts and delivers power again.

The ignition and important supporting systems, e.g. the brake servo, remain available during the stop phase. The engine is automatically started on demand.

The start/stop system is automatically activated each time you switch on the ignition.

Switching the start/stop system off and on

The Ⓐ OFF button is located in the centre console above the selector lever. The button lights up when the function is switched off.

▸ Press Ⓐ OFF to switch the function on/off.

If you switch off the system during a stop phase, the engine will start again automatically.

Basic conditions

- The driver's door and bonnet must be closed.
- The driver's seat belt must be buckled.
- Automatic gearbox: Transmission position P, N or D must be selected.
- Manual gearbox: The gearbox must be neutral.
- The steering wheel must be relatively straight.
- The vehicle must have been moving at over 3 km/h since the last stop.

CAUTION

Always switch off the start/stop system ⇨ *page 90* before driving through water.

Note

- In certain situations, the engine may stop earlier while the vehicle is still **coasting**. ▸

– Automatic gearbox: If you select transmission position D after selecting reverse gear, the car must have been moving at over 10 km/h before the system can switch off the engine again. This allows you to manoeuvre the vehicle without the engine being switched off.

Switching off/starting the engine

Applies to: vehicles with start/stop system

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

- Apply the brakes and keep your foot on the brake pedal until the vehicle is stationary. The indicator lamp Ⓐ / Ⓐ will appear in the instrument cluster as soon as the engine has been switched off automatically.
- The engine will start again automatically when you take your foot off the brake pedal. The indicator lamp will go out.

If the parking brake is applied or the hold assist* is switched on, the engine will only restart when you press the accelerator pedal.

Applies to: vehicles with manual gearbox

- Stop the vehicle and select neutral.
- Take your foot off the clutch pedal. The indicator lamp Ⓐ / Ⓐ will appear in the instrument cluster as soon as the engine has been switched off automatically.
- The engine will start again automatically when you press the clutch pedal. The indicator lamp will go out.

Note

– Keep your foot on the brake pedal during a stop phase to prevent the vehicle from moving.
– If you press the START ENGINE STOP button during a stop phase, the ignition will be switched off.
– If you briefly leave the vehicle during a stop phase and then get back in, you will need to close the driver's door and fasten your seat belt for the engine to start again.
– Automatic gearbox: You can control whether or not the engine is switched off by varying the amount of pressure on the brake pedal. For instance, if you brake gently in stop-and-go traffic or before turning off at a junction, the engine will remain on while the vehicle is at a standstill. As soon as you press the brake pedal harder, the engine will be switched off.

Automatic engine start/stop

Applies to: vehicles with start/stop system

Before and during each stop phase, the system checks that certain conditions have been met and decides whether to switch off the engine and for how long. For instance, the engine is not switched off if the power consumption is high. Whether or not the engine is started/stopped automatically depends on factors such as the following:

– Ambient conditions (downhill/uphill gradient, altitude and temperature)
– Battery (charge level, temperature and power consumption)
– Engine temperature
– Driver assist systems
– Driving style

Depending on the engine, the indicator lamp may be displayed when the engine is not being switched off.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with start/stop system

Drive system: please start vehicle manually

This message appears if certain conditions have not been met during the stop phase and the start/stop system cannot start the engine again automatically. The START ENGINE STOP button must be used to start the engine.

Vehicle start system: fault. Please contact workshop

A malfunction has occurred in the start/stop system. Drive to a workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Brakes

General information

You can use the brake pedal to slow the vehicle down.

Noises

Brake noise may develop in certain situations, depending on the speed, braking force and ambient conditions (such as temperature and relative humidity).

Braking effect

The response of the brakes depends on the weather and ambient conditions. If the brake system is wet, e.g. after driving in heavy rain, the braking effect may be delayed. Further causes of a temporary increase in brake response time include:

- Wet conditions
- Low temperatures, ice and snow
- Salted roads
- Dirty brake pads

To ensure an optimum braking effect, the brake system cleans itself at regular intervals. To do so, the brake pads are applied to the brake discs briefly at high speeds when the windscreen wipers are on.

Corrosion

Corrosion can form on the brake discs if the car is used infrequently, or if you only drive low mileages. This may cause brake noise when braking and an uneven braking effect. In this case, you can clean the brake discs by braking firmly a few times from a moderately high speed ⇨ ⚠.

Brake pads

New brake pads do not give full braking effect for the first 400 km, they must first be "bedded in". However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking effect by applying more pressure on the brake pedal. Avoid placing a heavy load on the brakes during the running-in period.

The rate of wear on the brake pads depends a great deal on how you drive and the conditions in which the vehicle is operated. For example, the rate of wear will increase if the vehicle is used frequently in city traffic, for short distances, or for hard driving with abrupt starts and stops.

Multicollision brake assist system

The multicollision brake assist system can help to reduce the risk of skidding and further collisions during an accident. If the airbag control unit detects that a collision has taken place, the ESC system applies the brakes.

The vehicle will not be braked automatically if:

- you apply the accelerator, or
- the brake pressure applied by pressing the brake pedal is higher than the brake pressure initiated by the system, or
- the ESC, the brake system or the vehicle's electrical system are not fully functional.

⚠ WARNING

- When applying the brakes to clean off deposits on the pads and discs, select a clear, dry road. Be sure not to endanger other road users; do not risk an accident.
- All brake repairs must be carried out by a qualified workshop working to the specifications of the Audi factory – risk of injury! Improper repairs can also impair the function of the system.
- Never let the car coast with the engine switched off (this can cause accidents).

! CAUTION

- Never let the brakes "drag" by leaving your foot on the pedal when you do not really intend to brake. This can cause the brakes to overheat, resulting in longer stopping distances and greater wear.
- Please observe the important safety warnings on driving on gradients ⇨ *page 96*. This is especially important when towing a trailer or caravan.

i Note

- On vehicles with an electro-mechanical brake servo, the resistance of the brake pedal can vary depending on the driving situation (e.g. if driver assist systems are active). ▶

– If you wish to equip the car with accessories such as a front spoiler or wheel covers, it is important that the flow of air to the brakes is not obstructed; otherwise the brakes can overheat.
– Please also observe the information on brake fluid ⇨ *page 280*.

Driver messages

Brakes: fault. Safely stop vehicle

A malfunction has occurred in the brake system. If and also light up, this means that the ABS, ESC and brake force distribution systems have failed. You need to apply much more force to operate the brakes if the brake servo fails.

Do not drive on. Seek professional assistance. Please refer to the additional safety notes ⇨ ⚠.

Warning! Brake servo inoperative

You need to apply much more force to operate the brakes if the brake servo fails. Seek professional assistance.

Brake pads: wear limit reached. You can continue driving. Please contact workshop

The brake pads are worn. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the brake pads checked.

Brake servo: restricted. You can continue driving. Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the brake servo. The brake servo remains available with reduced capacity. The brakes may perform differently than usual. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

⚠ WARNING

If the ABS, ESC and brake force distribution systems fail, input from the functions that stabilise the vehicle is no longer available. This could cause the vehicle to skid sideways. Do not drive on. Seek professional assistance.

Electromechanical parking brake

Operating the parking brake

The electromechanical parking brake is intended to prevent the vehicle from rolling away accidentally.

The Ⓟ button is located in the centre console below the selector lever. It lights up when the parking brake is engaged. You can release the parking brake manually or automatically when you drive off.

Applying and releasing the parking brake

- Applying: Pull the Ⓟ button.
- When Ⓟ appears, the parking brake is keeping the vehicle stationary. You can now take your foot off the brake pedal.
- Releasing: With the ignition switched on, press and hold the brake pedal and press the Ⓟ button.

Automatic gearbox: If the red warning lamp flashes, insufficient braking force has been applied or released. When you park the vehicle, you should select transmission position P or press the brake pedal in addition to stop it from moving. Make sure that the warning lamp has gone out before you drive off.

Manual gearbox: If the red warning lamp flashes, insufficient braking force has been applied or released. When you park the vehicle, you should engage first gear or press the brake pedal in addition to stop it from moving. Make sure that the warning lamp has gone out before you drive off.

Releasing the parking brake automatically when driving off

Important: The driver's door must be closed and the driver's seat belt must be buckled.

- Press the accelerator to drive off.

⚠ WARNING

– Always ensure that the vehicle is stopped properly and safely – risk of accident!
– If the parking brake is engaged, it may be released automatically if the accelerator pedal ▶

81B012720AJ

is pressed. Take care when pressing the accelerator pedal and always select position P when you park the vehicle – risk of accident!
– If the electrical power supply fails, it is not possible to apply the parking brake (if it was released) or to release the parking brake (if it was applied). Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇨ *page 84*. Seek professional assistance.

Note

– The vehicle may roll backwards on steep inclines when moving off, especially when towing a trailer or caravan. To prevent this from happening, pull the Ⓟ button and hold it while you press the accelerator. Once enough power has been built up at the wheels to ensure that the vehicle will not roll back, release the button to drive off.
– Automatic gearbox: The parking brake will be applied automatically if you leave your vehicle while transmission position D or R is selected.
– Any noises heard when the parking brake is applied or released are quite normal and no cause for concern.
– The parking brake runs an automatic test cycle at regular intervals when the vehicle is parked. This may cause a slight noise, which is normal.

Hold assist

Applies to: vehicles with hold assist

If the vehicle is regularly stationary, for example, at traffic lights, on inclines or in stop-and-go traffic, this system can help you to move off easily.

Switching the hold assist on/off

The Ⓐ button is located in the centre console below the selector lever. It lights up when the system is switched on.

▸ To switch the hold assist on/off, press the Ⓐ button.

Driving off with the hold assist

Important: The driver's door must be closed, the engine must be running or capable of starting automatically and transmission position D, first gear or reverse gear must be selected.

▸ With the vehicle stationary, press and hold the brake pedal for a few seconds.
▸ When Ⓟ appears, the hold assist is keeping the vehicle stationary. You can now take your foot off the brake pedal.
▸ Press the accelerator pedal to drive off.

In certain situations, the hold assist may transfer the job of holding the vehicle to the parking brake.

WARNING

– The hold assist function cannot keep the vehicle stationary in all conditions on a gradient (e.g. if the road is slippery or icy). Always be ready to apply the brakes when using the hold assist function.
– Always ensure that the vehicle is stopped properly and safely – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Switch off the hold assist function before driving the vehicle into a tunnel car wash to prevent the parking brake from being applied automatically.

Note

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

When the hold assist function is switched on, the system stops the vehicle from creeping forwards when you take your foot off the brake pedal.

Emergency braking function

You should only use the emergency braking function in a real emergency, for example if the brake system were to fail or if the brake pedal were to be obstructed. If you use the emergency braking function, this has the same effect as heavy braking.

▸ Pull and hold the Ⓟ button while the vehicle is moving.
▸ A warning buzzer will sound and the emergency braking procedure will be triggered. ▶

▸ If you press the accelerator pedal, the emergency braking procedure will be cancelled.

WARNING

Heavy braking in corners or in bad road or weather conditions can cause the vehicle to skid or lose steering control – risk of accident!

Driver messages

Parking brake: fault. Safely stop vehicle. See owner's manual

Parking brake: fault. Please release parking brake

If one of these two messages appears, there is a parking brake fault. If this message appears while the vehicle is stationary, check whether the parking brake can be released and reapplied. If so, switch the ignition off and on again.

If the driver message still appears, if the parking brake cannot be released or if the driver message appears while the vehicle is moving, do not continue driving. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇨ *page 84*. Seek professional assistance.

Parking brake: fault. Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the parking brake. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay to have the fault rectified. Do not park the vehicle on a slope and secure the vehicle before leaving it so it cannot roll away ⇨ *page 84*.

Parking brake: caution! Vehicle parked too steep

The braking force may not be sufficient to prevent the vehicle from rolling away. Park the vehicle at a location with a gradient that is less steep.

Parking brake is applied

The parking brake is applied. Press and hold the brake pedal and release the parking brake.

Please take over.

The vehicle can no longer be held stationary. Press the brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling away or press the accelerator to drive off.

Releasing the parking lock manually

Description

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox



Fig. 74 Selector lever: Removing the boot

The manual release mechanism is located underneath the selector gate. Only perform the release procedure yourself if you have the skills required. Seek assistance if necessary.

To release the selector lever, you will need the screwdriver from the vehicle's tool kit ⇨ *page 300*. Use the flat-blade side of the reversible screwdriver insert. A very long screwdriver may also be required.

Removing the selector lever boot

▸ Secure the vehicle so that it cannot roll away ⇨ *page 84*.
▸ Switch off the ignition.
▸ To loosen the selector lever boot, carefully insert the flat-blade side of the screwdriver into the opening at the side of the boot ⇨ *Fig. 74*.
▸ Carefully lever off the boot with the screwdriver and, at the same time, pull the boot upwards at the crease with your hand until it is released at all four corners.
▸ Fold the boot over the selector lever knob.
▸ RHD vehicles: Take out the panel for the selector lever position indicator and let it hang down to one side, suspended by the cable. ▶

Releasing the parking lock manually

▸ Operate the manual release mechanism ⇨ *page 96*.

Fitting the boot back on

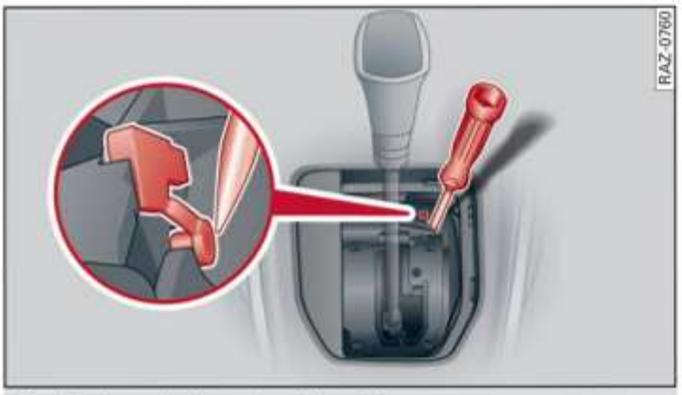
▸ RHD vehicles: Fit the panel for the selector lever position indicator back in the selector gate.
▸ Clip the boot back into the selector gate.

WARNING

– The parking lock must only be released manually when the vehicle is secured so that it cannot roll away ⇨ *page 84*. If you do not apply the brake, the vehicle may roll away and cause an accident.
– Only use the manual release mechanism when the vehicle is on level ground or a slight gradient.
– You must not drive the vehicle if the parking brake has been released manually – risk of accident!

Operating the manual release mechanism

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox



Applies to: selector gate with white cover
Fig. 75 Selector lever: Release mechanism



Applies to: selector gate with black cover
Fig. 76 Selector lever: Release lever

Different approaches are required depending on the colour of the cover for the selector gate:

Selector gate with white cover

▸ Press the yellow release mechanism sideways with a very long screwdriver and hold it in place.
▸ Now press the release button on the selector lever and move the selector lever to transmission position N.

Selector gate with black cover

▸ Insert the screwdriver in the opening on the yellow release lever.
▸ Using the screwdriver, carefully pull the release lever towards the rear as far as it will go and hold it in this position.
▸ Now press the release button on the selector lever and move the selector lever to transmission position N.

Special driving situations

Driving on hills and gradients

Please follow the tips below when driving on hills and gradients or at high altitudes:

– Drive slowly and be ready for possible hazards.
– Do not try to turn round if you can't make it up a hill or gradient. Instead, drive back down in reverse gear.
– When driving down steep gradients, the downhill speed control function may be activated if you press the brake pedal while in transmission position D. The automatic gearbox will then select a suitable gear for the gradient and will attempt to maintain the speed at which the vehicle was travelling when the brakes were applied. You should still continue to use the brakes as necessary. Downhill speed control is deactivated as soon as the road levels out again or you accelerate.
– Automatic gearbox: When driving down steep gradients, use the engine braking effect by selecting driving program S ⇨ *page 86*. This is especially important when towing a trailer or caravan. This will reduce the load on the brakes. ▶

– Manual gearbox: When driving down a steep gradient, select a lower gear to use the engine braking effect. This will reduce the load on the brakes.
– Try not to stay on the brakes; apply them periodically.
– If necessary, use the hold assist ⇨ *page 94*.

WARNING

– Drive only on gradients for which your vehicle is designed. Do not exceed the vehicle's available climbing power. Your vehicle could tip over or slide away.
– Keep the vehicle straight when driving on steep hills and gradients. If your vehicle is in danger of tipping over, you must steer in the direction of the gradient immediately – risk of accident!
– Always be ready to apply the brakes when using the downhill speed control.

Driving off-road

Your car is not an off-road vehicle. Please therefore note the following if you drive the vehicle on unsurfaced tracks or off-road:

– Drive slowly and be ready for possible hazards.
– Take the ground clearance of your vehicle into account and do not drive the bottom of your vehicle directly over raised obstacles. Instead, drive the wheels on one side of the car up and across the top of the obstacle to prevent damage to the underbody.
– When driving over sand or soft mud, maintain a moderate speed. The vehicle will be less likely to get stuck if you avoid stopping.
– You can restrict the ESC function if necessary ⇨ *page 101*.

WARNING

When driving off-road you are advised to avoid tracks or terrain which are not suited to the design of the car and your own driving skills and experience.

For the sake of the environment

Take care not to damage the environment and respect natural surroundings. Keep to the marked tracks and routes.

Note

Wash your vehicle after driving it off-road. Dirt and stones falling from the car can be a hazard to other road users.

Driving through water

If you cannot avoid driving on a flooded road, you should follow the advice below:

– Check the type of road surface under the water, the strength of the current and the depth of the water. The water **must not be higher than the vehicle's underbody**, even allowing for landslides, strong currents and waves.
– Deactivate the start/stop system*.
– Drive carefully and not faster than walking pace so that any waves created by the movement of the car do not splash over the underbody. Bear in mind that waves can also be created by oncoming traffic.
– Do not stop the car in water.
– Do not drive in reverse.
– Do not switch off the engine.

WARNING

After driving through water, carefully apply the brakes to dry them and restore the full braking power.

CAUTION

Parts of the vehicle (e.g. engine, gearbox, running gear or electrical components) can be badly damaged when driving through water.

Note

Avoid driving through salt water to prevent corrosion. If any vehicle parts come into contact with salt water, rinse them with fresh water.

Handling dynamics

Audi drive select

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

Drive select allows you to use different set-ups on your vehicle. You can switch between different driving modes, e.g. from a dynamic set-up to a comfortable one. In addition, you can adapt the vehicle set-up to suit your personal driving style. For example, you might choose to combine a more dynamic drive set-up with more comfortable steering settings.

Selecting an Audi drive select mode

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

The drive select button is located in the centre console above the selector lever.

- ▸ Press the drive select button repeatedly until the desired mode appears on the instrument cluster or infotainment display, or:
- ▸ Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Audi drive select**.

You can change the mode while the vehicle is stationary or moving. If traffic conditions permit, take your foot off the accelerator briefly after you change the mode so that the new mode is also activated for the engine.

The following options are available, depending on the equipment in your vehicle:

efficiency – trims the vehicle to a fuel-saving set-up and helps you to adopt an economical driving style. The start/stop system is activated.

comfort – alters the vehicle set-up for a more comfortable ride and is suitable for long motorway trips, for instance.

auto – gives an overall impression of a comfortable but dynamic ride.

dynamic – gives the vehicle a tighter set-up and is ideal for performance driving.

individual – allows the vehicle set-up to be adjusted to your personal preferences ⇨ *page 98*.

Note

- When the ignition is switched on, certain systems (such as the drive system) are reset to a balanced setting. Select the current mode again to use its settings in full.
- Audi recommends **auto** mode for everyday use.

Configuring "individual" mode

- ▸ Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > **Audi drive select** > **individual** > right control button.

The equipment installed on your vehicle determines which systems you can select:

Engine/gearbox

The response of the engine to accelerator pedal movements is more spontaneous or balanced. On vehicles with automatic gearbox, the gear changes take place at higher or lower engine speeds.

Steering

The degree of power assistance can be varied. A lighter steering response is suitable on long motorway trips or for relaxed driving on winding roads, for example.

Engine sound

The sound of the engine is matched to the selected setting and ranges from subdued to dynamic. If you use the automatic settings, the engine sound depends on which driving program is selected.

Ad. cruise assist

The acceleration response of the adaptive cruise assist and how sensitively it reacts to vehicles ahead is adjusted.

Susp. control

The suspension is set for a firmer or more comfortable ride depending on the road surface.

Suspension

Suspension control

Applies to: vehicles with suspension control

The suspension control is an electronically controlled shock absorber system. The firmness of the shock absorbers is adapted to the road conditions and the driving situation. The settings depend on the Audi drive select* mode selected.

Ground clearance

The height and ground clearance of the vehicle can be affected by the following factors:

– Changes in temperature
– Changes in vehicle loading

WARNING

Take special care that no-one can be injured if the vehicle level is changed, e.g. while the underbody or wheel arches are being washed.

CAUTION

Always ensure that there is sufficient clearance above and below the vehicle. This applies especially when driving into areas with low headroom, e.g. car parks. You should also be aware that the underside of the vehicle can make heavy contact with the ground if you drive onto the kerb or up a steep ramp – risk of damage!

Driver messages

Suspension: fault. You can continue driving

A malfunction has occurred. Drive to a qualified workshop soon.

Steering

Description

The electromechanical power steering assists you when steering the vehicle by adapting the degree of power assistance electronically, depending on the speed. The settings depend on the Audi drive select* mode selected.

Progressive steering

Applies to: vehicles with progressive steering

For increased dynamic performance and vehicle handling, the steering ratio is varied depending on the steering input. The more the steering wheel is turned, the more direct the steering response. This facilitates manoeuvring and provides precise steering feedback at high speeds.

Driver messages

Steering: fault. Please stop vehicle

The power assistance may have failed. Adapt your driving style immediately to allow for the possibility of heavy steering and stop the vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇨ *page 84*. Do not drive on. Seek professional assistance.

Steering: fault. Please stop vehicle

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock. The ignition can no longer be switched on. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇨ *page 84*. Do not have the vehicle towed away, because you won't be able to steer it. Seek professional assistance.

Steering: fault. You can continue driving

There is a fault in the steering system. The steering may be heavier or its response may be more sensitive than usual. Adjust your driving style accordingly. Have the steering checked by a qualified workshop without delay. Please note that the red warning lamp may appear if you restart the engine, and in this case you must not continue driving.

Steering lock: fault. Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

Your vehicle must not be towed if there is a fault in the electronic steering lock – risk of accident!

Note

You can drive on if the warning/indicator lamp or lights up only briefly.

Four-wheel drive (quattro)

Description

Applies to: vehicles with four-wheel drive

The four-wheel drive system varies the distribution of power to the front and rear axles and thus improves the vehicle's handling characteristics. It interacts with a selective wheel torque control, which may intervene when cornering ⇨ *page 100*.

The four-wheel drive is specially designed to complement the superior engine power of your Audi. This combination gives the car exceptional handling and performance capabilities – both on normal roads and in more difficult conditions, such as snow and ice. Even so (or perhaps especially for this reason), it is important to observe certain safety points ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

- Even with four-wheel drive, you should always adjust your speed to suit the conditions – risk of accident!
- The braking ability of your car is limited by the grip of the tyres. In this respect, your car is no different from a car without four-wheel drive. So do not be tempted to drive too fast – risk of accident!
- On wet roads bear in mind that the front wheels may start to "aquaplane" and lose contact with the road if the car is driven too fast. If this should happen, there will be no sudden increase in engine speed, as with a front-wheel drive car. So do not drive too fast in the wet: adjust your speed to suit the conditions (accident risk).

Electronic stabilisation control

Description

The electronic stabilisation control (ESC) increases the car's stability. It reduces the tendency to skid and improves the stability and roadholding of the vehicle. The ESC detects critical handling situations, such as understeer, oversteer and wheelspin on the driven wheels.

It stabilises the vehicle by braking individual wheels or by reducing the engine torque.

The stabilisation functions integrated in the ESC system include the following:

Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

ABS prevents the wheels from locking up under braking until the vehicle has reached a virtual standstill. You can continue to steer the vehicle even when the brakes are on full. Keep your foot on the brake pedal and do not pump the brakes.

You will feel the brake pedal pulsate while the anti-lock brake system is working.

Traction control system (ASR)

In the event of wheelspin, the traction control system reduces the torque to match the amount of grip available, increasing the vehicle's stability.

Electronic differential lock (EDL)

When the EDL detects wheelspin, it brakes the spinning wheels and directs the power to the other wheels. This function is not available at high speeds.

To prevent the disc brake of the braked wheel from overheating, the EDL cuts out automatically if subjected to excessive loads. The vehicle can still be driven. The EDL will switch on again automatically when the brake has cooled down.

Selective wheel torque control

The selective wheel torque control function intervenes when cornering by braking the wheels on the inside of the bend individually as required. This enables precision cornering. ▶

Steering assistance

The ESC can also intervene via the steering in order to stabilise the vehicle.

WARNING

- The grip provided by the ESC and the integrated systems is still subject to the physical limits of adhesion. Always bear this in mind, especially on wet or slippery roads. If you notice the systems cutting in, you should reduce your speed immediately to suit the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the extra safety provided tempt you into taking any risks when driving – this can cause accidents.
- Remember that the accident risk always increases if you drive fast, especially in corners or on a wet or slippery road, or if you follow too close behind the vehicle in front of you. Please bear in mind that even the ESC and the integrated systems cannot compensate for the increased accident risk.
- When accelerating on a uniformly slippery surface (for instance all four wheels on ice or snow), press the accelerator gradually and carefully. The driven wheels may otherwise start to spin (in spite of the integrated control systems), which would impair the car's stability and could lead to an accident.

Note

The ABS and ASR systems can only work properly if all four tyres have a similar degree of wear. Any differences in the rolling circumference of the tyres can cause the system to reduce engine power when this is not desired.

Operation

The OFF button (on some vehicles) for operating the ESC is located in the centre console above the selector lever. The ESC is switched on automatically when the ignition is switched on.

Restricting the ESC

In certain situations it may be appropriate to restrict the stabilisation functions of the ESC so that the wheels can spin – for example, when rocking the car backwards and forwards to free it, or when driving with snow chains fitted. The ESC can also be restricted if reduced stabilisation input is desired during performance driving.

- To restrict the ESC, press the OFF button briefly. The indicator lamp will light up.
- To reactivate the full range of ESC stabilisation functions, press the button again. The indicator lamp will go out.

Switching off the ESC

For more active control of the vehicle with no input from the ESC stabilisation functions, the ESC system can be switched off completely.

- To switch off the ESC, press and hold the OFF button for more than 3 seconds. The indicator lamps and ESC OFF will light up.
- To reactivate the full range of ESC stabilisation functions, press the button again. The indicator lamps will go out.

WARNING

- If the ESC has been switched off or if its functions have been restricted, the vehicle will not be stabilised at all or will only be stabilised to a limited degree. The driven wheels may start to spin, causing the vehicle to lose grip, in particular on slippery or wet roads – risk of accident!
- Only drive the vehicle with the ESC switched off or with restricted functions if this is necessary. You should switch the ESC on again as soon as possible.

Note

- Systems which can apply the brakes automatically may be partially or completely unavailable if the ESC is restricted, switched off or malfunctioning.
- If there are faults in other systems or if specific driver assist systems are active, the ESC must be switched on for system-related reasons. The ESC is switched on automatically if necessary and cannot be operated via the button in this case.

Driver messages

Stabilisation control (ESC/ABS): fault! See owner's manual

There is a fault in the ABS or EDL. This will also cause an ESC malfunction. The vehicle can still be braked in the normal way (however the ABS control function will be out of action).

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Further indicator lamps

If flashes while the vehicle is in motion, the ESC is intervening. Noises may be heard while this is happening. If the indicator lamp lights up permanently, the ESC system has been switched off for system reasons. If the indicator lamp goes out, this means the system is fully functional.

Towing a trailer

Driving the vehicle with a trailer or caravan

General information

If the car is supplied with a factory-fitted towing bracket it will already have the necessary technical modifications and meet the statutory requirements. When towing a trailer or caravan, always observe the statutory requirements and follow the manufacturer's instructions for operation and driving.

Towing a trailer or caravan affects the energy consumption, performance and wear of the vehicle. It also requires greater concentration.

If a towing bracket is to be fitted after the car is purchased, this must be done according to the instructions of the towing bracket manufacturer ⇨ *page 110*.

WARNING

- Never carry passengers in a trailer – danger to life!
- Use only ball joints of the correct type approved for your vehicle. The use of unapproved ball joints can cause the trailer to be unstable or to become detached during a journey – risk of accident! Please contact a qualified workshop if you have any questions.

Note

If a non-detachable towing bracket is retrofitted to the vehicle, it must not mask the number plate or the rear lights. Observe the locally applicable regulations for the use of a towing bracket.

Points to check before towing

Trailer weights

Never exceed the maximum permitted trailer weights ⇨ *page 324*.

If you do not load the trailer up to the maximum permitted trailer weight, you can then climb correspondingly steeper gradients.

The maximum trailer weights listed are only applicable for altitudes up to 1000 m above sea level. With increasing altitude the engine power and therefore the car's climbing ability are impaired because of the reduced air density, so the maximum trailer weight has to be reduced accordingly. The weight of the car and trailer must be reduced by about 10 % for every further 1000 m (or part thereof). The actual trailer weight is the combined weight of the (loaded) vehicle and (loaded) trailer.

Draw bar weight

The vertical load exerted by the trailer draw bar on the ball joint of the towing bracket must not exceed the maximum weight specification.

In the interests of road safety, Audi recommends that you always use the maximum draw bar weight without exceeding it. If the draw bar weight is too low, the trailer's handling will be affected.

You can determine the draw bar weight e.g. using a weighing machine, bathroom scales or a public weighing station. Audi recommends checking the draw bar weight, particularly when using twin-axle trailers. If the draw bar weight does not meet the specification, you can adjust it by distributing the load in the trailer correctly. If the draw bar weight meets the specifications, you should not change the load in the trailer.

If the maximum permitted draw bar weight cannot be obtained, the trailer should be loaded so that the draw bar weight is at least 4 % of the actual trailer weight. However, the draw bar weight must not be less than 25 kg. This applies to single-axle and twin-axle trailers with a wheelbase of less than 1.0 m. You can find the maximum draw bar weight for your vehicle in the registration documents or on ⇨ *page 324*.

Distributing the load

The vehicle's handling can be impaired if the load is poorly distributed. Load the trailer according to the following criteria as far as possible: ▶

– Objects should preferably be stowed in the luggage compartment. The vehicle load should be as heavy as possible and the trailer load as light as possible.
– Distribute loads in the trailer so that heavy objects are as near to the axle as possible.
– Objects must be secured to prevent them from sliding about.
– Where possible, operate the trailer with the maximum permitted draw bar weight.

Speed

Do not drive faster than 80 km/h. If the trailer has a stabiliser, you can drive up to 100 km/h. Please observe any other regulations applicable in the country in which you are travelling.

The stability of the car and trailer is reduced with increasing speed. For this reason it is advisable not to drive at the maximum permissible top speed in unfavourable road, weather or wind conditions. This applies especially on a downhill gradient.

Gradient

When driving down the start of a gradient, the trailer may begin to sway sooner than it would on a level road. If the trailer starts to sway even slightly, you can stabilise it by immediately applying the brakes firmly. Never try to stop the swaying by accelerating further.

Shift to a lower gear before the gradient in order to take advantage of the engine braking effect ⇨ ⚠.

Exterior lights

Observe all locally applicable laws and regulations on the lighting systems for your trailer/caravan. If necessary, please seek advice from a qualified workshop.

Before starting a journey, check all the trailer lights with the trailer hitched up.

The headlight range control automatically adjusts the range of the headlight beam.

If the indicator lamp flashes, the turn signals are on in towing mode. If a turn signal bulb on the trailer or vehicle fails in towing mode, the indicator lamp does **not** flash twice as fast to indicate the bulb failure.

Exterior mirrors

Make sure that you are able to monitor the road behind the trailer with the exterior mirrors. Use additional mirrors if necessary. Adjust the additional mirrors to give sufficient vision to the rear. Please observe the relevant local regulations for attaching additional exterior mirrors.

Engine cooling system

Towing a trailer or caravan places a heavier load on the engine and cooling system. Please make sure that there is enough coolant in the cooling system.

Coolant temperature

Keep an eye on the coolant temperature gauge ⇨ *page 19*, especially in hot weather and when climbing long hills. Remember to shift to a higher gear in good time.

Tyres

Check the tyre pressures on your car, and adjust for "full load" conditions (refer to the sticker listing the tyre pressures) ⇨ *page 288*. It may also be necessary to adjust the tyre pressures on the trailer according to the recommendations of the trailer manufacturer.

At low outside temperatures, both the towing vehicle and the trailer should be fitted with winter tyres.

Overrun brake

If your trailer has an overrun brake, it must be correctly adjusted and function correctly. When using a trailer with an overrun brake, apply the brakes gently at first and then firmly. This will prevent the jerking that can be caused by the trailer wheels locking.

⚠ WARNING

Constant braking will cause the brakes to overheat and will considerably reduce the effectiveness of the brakes. It will increase the braking distance and could cause the brake system to fail. ▶

CAUTION

Retrofitted parts, in particular attachments fitted to the ball joint of the towing bracket, can cause damage. If any damage occurs, you should have the equipment checked by a qualified workshop.

Note

- Use wheel chocks when parking on a gradient if the trailer is carrying a load.
- Audi recommends having the car serviced between the normal inspection intervals if it is used frequently for towing a trailer.
- Avoid towing a trailer or caravan while running the vehicle in.

Removable towing bracket

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with removable towing bracket



Fig. 77 Luggage compartment: Stowing the towing bracket

Special care is required when fitting and removing the towing bracket.

The removable ball joint attachment for the towing bracket is stored under the floor panel in the luggage compartment.

The ball joint can be fitted and removed by hand.

WARNING

Never use tools of any kind when fitting and removing the ball joint. This could damage the mechanism which locks the ball joint in place and impair its safety – risk of accident!

Note

Retract the towing bracket or detach it when there are no trailers, bicycles or similar loads attached to it. This applies especially if the number plate or rear vehicle lighting is masked by the unused towing bracket. Observe the locally applicable regulations for the use of a towing bracket.

Note

- Do not attempt to modify or repair the ball joint or other towing bracket components.
- Should you have any difficulties when using the towing bracket, or suspect that it is not fitted properly, contact a qualified workshop.
- Before setting off, always check that the ball joint is secured properly.
- Never disengage the ball joint with the caravan / trailer still hitched or with a bicycle rack or similar accessory still attached.
- The ball joint must be removed if you intend to clean the car with a steam cleaning attachment. Check whether the plug is properly inserted in the mounting fixture and that the bumper cover is fitted.

81B012720AJ

Fitting the ball joint (step 1)

Applies to: vehicles with removable towing bracket



Fig. 78 Area below rear bumper: Pulling out plug



Fig. 79 Removable towing bracket: Ball joint

Mounting fixture

The mounting fixture for the ball joint is located on the underside of the bumper.

- ▸ Remove the plug from the mounting fixture ⇨ *Fig. 78*.
- ▸ Check that the mounting fixture is free of dirt; clean if necessary ⇨ ⚠.

Checking the ball joint is in the "ready" position

The ball joint can only be installed if the internal spring mechanism is in the "ready" position.

- ▸ Check that the red marking ② on the knob is inside the green zone on the ball joint.
- ▸ Check that the locking ball ① is inside the hole in the shaft section of the ball joint.
- ▸ Check that the knob protrudes visibly from the ball joint, so that there is a clear gap ③ between the knob and the ball joint.

⚠ WARNING

It is important to keep the mounting fixture clean. Otherwise the ball joint may fail to engage securely (accident risk).

Fitting the ball joint (step 2)

Applies to: vehicles with removable towing bracket

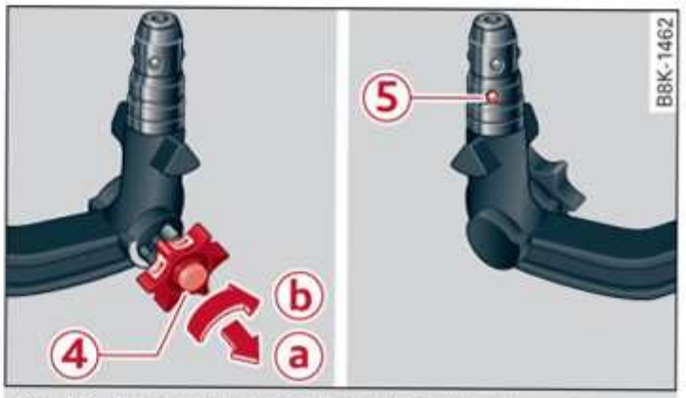


Fig. 80 Removable towing bracket: Setting the spring mechanism to the "ready" position



Fig. 81 Removable towing bracket: Inserting the ball joint

Setting the spring mechanism to the "ready" position (if required)

- ▸ Insert the key ④ for locking the ball joint into the lock on the knob and turn it clockwise.
- ▸ Pull out the knob in direction ⓐ, hold and turn in direction ⓑ until the locking ball ⑤ engages ⇨ ⚠.

Inserting the ball joint

- ▸ With the spring mechanism in the ready position, insert the ball joint into the mounting ⇨ *Fig. 81* and push it upwards in the direction indicated (arrow) ⇨ ⚠. The spring mechanism should then engage automatically with an audible click.
- ▸ Lock the ball joint by turning the key anti-clockwise. ▶

- Take out the key and press the cover cap onto the lock.

WARNING

- If it is not possible to set the spring mechanism to the "ready" position as described above, please contact a qualified workshop and, for safety reasons, do not use the ball joint.
- To avoid injury, keep your hands away from the knob when inserting the ball joint in the mounting fixture.

Note

Make sure that the knob can turn freely when the ball joint is inserted.

Fitting the ball joint (step 3)

Applies to: vehicles with removable towing bracket

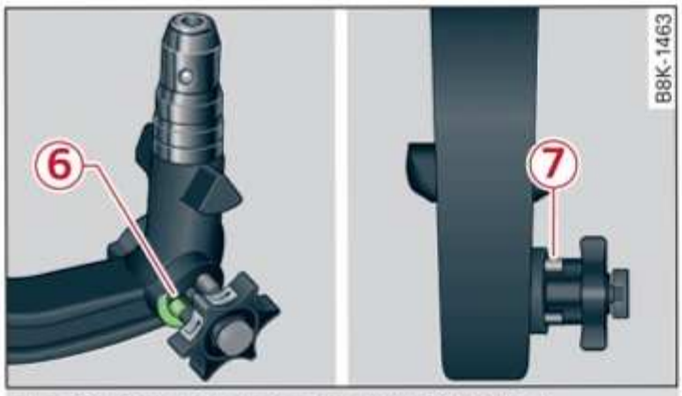


Fig. 82 Removable towing bracket: Safety check

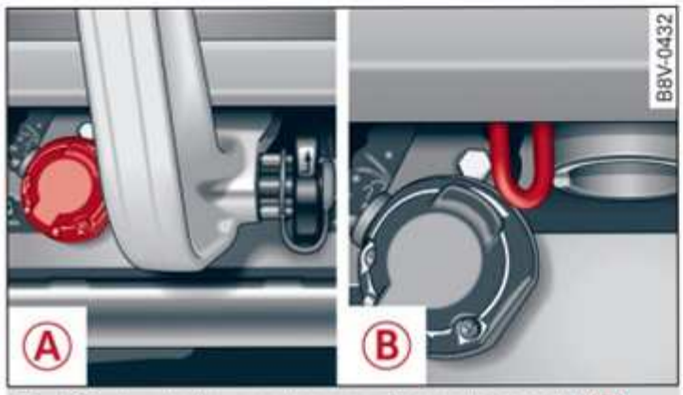


Fig. 83 Area below rear bumper: Connecting socket Ⓐ, eye for safety cable Ⓑ

- Check that the green marking ⑥ on the knob is inside the green zone on the ball joint.
- Check that the knob is directly against the ball joint, so that there is no gap ⑦ between the knob and the ball joint.
- Check that the ball joint is locked and the key is removed (so that the knob cannot be pulled out).
- Check that the ball joint fits tightly in the mounting fixture (try moving it about to check) ⇨ ⚠.
- Hitch up the trailer or the rear carrier system to the towing bracket.
- To plug in the electrical connection for the trailer or rear carrier system, swivel the connecting socket Ⓐ down from underneath the bumper.
- When you hitch a trailer up to your vehicle, hook the safety cable into the eye Ⓑ on the towing bracket.

WARNING

To avoid accidents, the towing bracket must not be used if any one of the requirements listed above is not met. If this is the case, the ball joint must be fitted again properly ⇨ *page 106*. Please contact a qualified workshop in the event of a technical fault.

Note

The eye Ⓑ on the towing bracket is intended only for securing the safety cable of the trailer.

Removing the ball joint

Applies to: vehicles with removable towing bracket

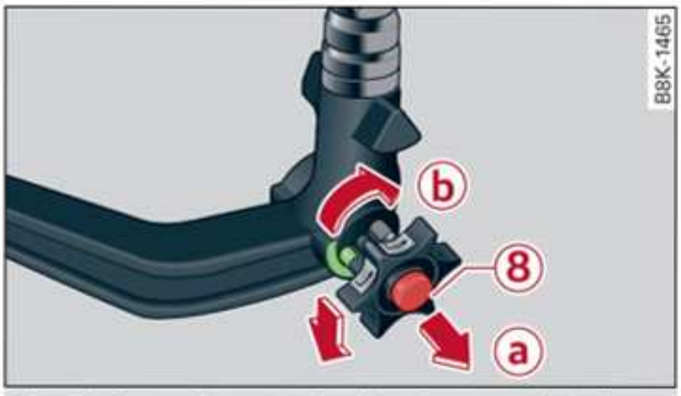


Fig. 84 Removable towing bracket: Removing the ball joint



Fig. 85 Area below rear bumper: Fitting the plug

- ▸ Take off the cover cap and insert the key (8) in the lock on the knob.
- ▸ Unlock the ball joint by turning the key clockwise.
- ▸ Take hold of the ball joint and pull out the knob in direction (a).
- ▸ Keep hold of the knob and turn it as far as it will go in direction (b).
- ▸ Release the knob. The spring mechanism will remain in the "ready" position ⇨ ⚠ *in Fitting the ball joint (step 2) on page 107*.
- ▸ Pull the ball joint down and out of the mounting fixture.
- ▸ Insert the plug into the mounting fixture ⇨ *Fig. 85*, ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Swivel the electrical socket upwards as far as the stop.
- ▸ Stow and secure the ball joint attachment in clean condition under the floor panel in the luggage compartment of your vehicle ⇨ *page 105, Fig. 77*.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure that the plug is properly fitted in the mounting fixture for the towing bracket. Otherwise the ball joint may fail to engage securely the next time it is attached if dirt has accumulated in the mounting fixture.

Driving with a trailer or caravan

Applies to: vehicles with removable towing bracket

Towing bracket

Check that the coupling meets the relevant country-specific regulations and is not worn.

Electronic stabilisation control (ESC)

The ESC – in particular in conjunction with the trailer stabilisation system ⇨ *page 108* – makes it easier to stabilise a trailer if it starts to skid or sway. You should therefore keep the ESC switched on at all times.

Stabiliser

Swaying and pitching can be reduced by attaching an extra stabiliser to the trailer. It should have friction linings at the sides to prevent excessive wear. Degrease and clean the ball joint before using a stabiliser. The stabiliser can be purchased and installed at a qualified workshop.

Clean and grease the ball joint before using a trailer without a stabiliser.

Power supply

When you switch off the ignition, the power supply to the trailer is not interrupted as long as the energy management system does not intervene.

Trailer stabilisation system[1)]

Applies to: vehicles with removable towing bracket and trailer stabilisation system

Important: The trailer connector must be plugged into the vehicle socket.

The trailer stabilisation system, which is integrated in the electronic stabilisation control (ESC), helps to reduce the risk of the trailer skidding at ▸

1) Not available on vehicles for some markets.

speeds over approx. 65 km/h. Please refer to the description of the ESC ⇨ *page 100* for information on how the system works. Please also refer to the notes on ⇨ *page 103* and ⇨ *page 108* to ensure that the trailer stabilisation system is functional.

WARNING

- The ESC and trailer stabilisation system cannot defy the laws of physics. Always bear this in mind, especially when the trailer is light.
- It is essential that you adjust your speed to suit the weather, road and traffic conditions. Do not let the trailer stabilisation system tempt you into taking any risks when driving – this can cause accidents.
- The trailer stabilisation system is not always able to detect if the trailer is swaying and may therefore not intervene. In this case apply the vehicle's brakes and avoid unnecessary steering input.
- A trailer can still "jack-knife" on slippery roads with little grip, even if the towing vehicle is equipped with the trailer stabilisation system.
- Trailers with a high centre of gravity may even tip over before they start to sway sideways.
- Try to avoid towing a loaded trailer with an unladen vehicle. If this cannot be avoided, drive extra slowly to allow for the unbalanced weight distribution.
- If you are not towing a trailer, but the trailer socket is being used (e.g. for an illuminated bicycle rack), the trailer stabilisation system may be activated automatically in extreme driving conditions.
- If the vehicle is driven with two trailers at once, the trailers may begin to sway in certain situations – risk of accident! The vehicle must not be driven with more than one trailer.
- If the vehicle is driven with a trailer attached off-centre, the trailer may begin to sway in certain situations – risk of accident! Accessories which are designed to attach the trailer off-centre must not be used.

Note

The functions may not be available if the ESC is restricted or deactivated or if a fault has occurred.

Rear carrier systems

Applies to: vehicles with removable towing bracket

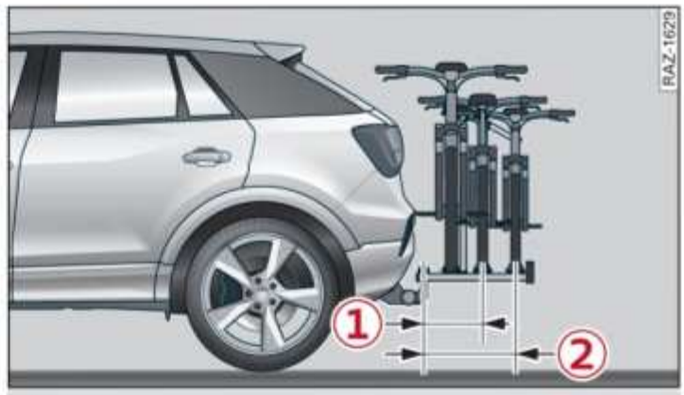


Fig. 86 Rear carrier: Maximum overhang

Rear carrier systems are systems such as bicycle racks which are mounted on the towing bracket.

Please make sure that the rear carrier system is approved for use on your vehicle.

Degrease and clean the ball joint before using a rear carrier system.

Note the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the rear carrier system.

Rear carrier system load

The carrying load consists of the rear carrier system and the load transported on it. The maximum recommended carrying load may differ from the vehicle's maximum draw bar weight. The maximum draw bar weight must not be exceeded.

The greater the distance from the towing bracket, the smaller the carrying load. For this reason, you should secure heavy objects as near as possible to the towing bracket.

Determining the maximum carrying load

Look up the draw bar weight for your vehicle in the technical data. You can then find the carrying ▶

load in the table below. In accordance with Regulation UN-R 55, Audi recommends that you adhere to the maximum number of bicycles on the rear carrier system as follows:

Maximum draw bar weight (kg)	Maximum carrying load (kg)	Number of bicycles
50 – 74	50	2
75 upwards	75	3

Maximum overhang of the rear carrier system

The maximum overhang depends on the maximum carrying load and is as follows:

Maximum carrying load (kg)	Maximum overhang (mm)
50 – 74	500
75	700

For bicycle carrier systems with two bicycles, the maximum overhang measured from the centre of the ball coupling to the centre of the rail of the last bicycle carrier is 500 mm ①. For bicycle carrier systems with three bicycles, the maximum is 700 mm ②.

WARNING

The use of an unsuitable rear carrier system could cause severe damage to the towing bracket. The towing bracket could then break and cause an accident.

Installation dimensions and retrofitting

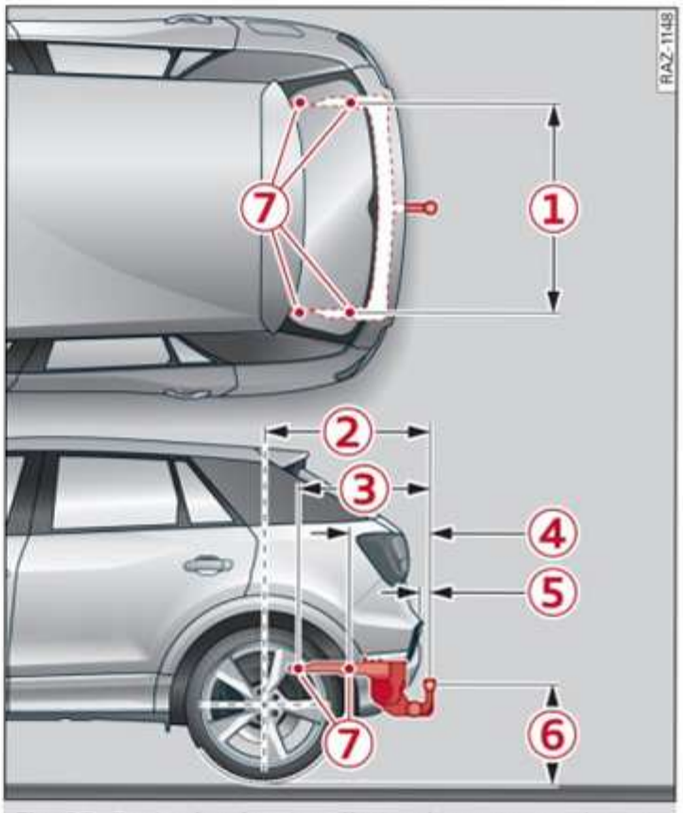


Fig. 87 Towing bracket: Installation dimensions and points

The towing bracket is bolted to the body at the securing points ⑦.

Installation dimensions (mm)	
① 1043	④ 311
② 858 – 861	⑤ 65 (min.)
③ 531	⑥ 350 – 420

The values given for the distance between the centre of the wheel on the rear axle and the centre of the ball on the towing bracket ② are nominal values of the base vehicle. The dimensions may vary depending on the type of suspension in conjunction with the vehicle's equipment and the load the vehicle is carrying.

The distance between the road surface and the centre of the ball on the towing bracket ⑥ applies to the loading condition in the type approval according to UN-R55 (ECE). This dimension must not be smaller or larger than the value specified. The dimension may vary on vehicles categorised as M1G in the type approval.

Please contact a qualified workshop to find out whether your vehicle can be retrofitted with a towing bracket. ▶

Qualified workshops are familiar with the method of installation and any modifications which may be required for the cooling system.

WARNING

- If a towing bracket is retrofitted, the installation should be carried out by a qualified workshop.
- A towing bracket that is not fitted properly constitutes an accident risk.
- For your own safety, please observe the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the towing bracket.

CAUTION

- If the connector socket is not fitted correctly, this could cause damage to the vehicle's electrical system.
- Particularly in high outside temperatures, it is not possible to drive up long steep gradients without a suitable cooling system. there is a risk of damaging the engine.

Driver assist systems

General information

Safety precautions

Please note the safety precautions for the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

- The driver always has full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle. The assistance systems cannot replace the full concentration of the driver. Always devote your full attention to the road and the traffic situation, and be prepared to intervene at any time.
- Only use the assistance systems in situations where it is safe to do so. Always adjust your driving style to suit the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of accident! Stow objects away safely while the vehicle is moving.
- The assistance systems are only able to react as intended when the sensors and cameras function without restrictions. Please observe the notes on the sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.

Note

- Always adhere to the locally applicable laws and regulations, particularly with regard to the driver's responsibilities, as well as the permitted driving speeds, parking positions, position of the wheels, distance between vehicles, forming a lane for emergency vehicles, etc. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
- You can cancel the steering/braking input from the system by firmly applying the brakes yourself, pressing the accelerator firmly, turning the steering wheel or deactivating the assistance system in question.
- Always check the current settings of the assistance systems before setting off. The settings might have been changed by switching off the ignition or altered by someone else.

System limitations

Please note the system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

- The assistance systems cannot overcome the laws of physics; in some situations it may not be possible to prevent a collision.
- It is possible that the warnings, notifications or warning lamps may not be displayed or activated in time/at the appropriate time, e.g. if a vehicle is approaching very quickly.
- The corrective steering/braking input from the assistance systems may not be sufficient in some cases, or there may be no input from the systems at all. Be prepared to assume control at all times.

Note

- The technology which enables the systems to detect the vehicle's surroundings is subject to certain limitations; as a result, the systems may not warn the driver or intervene in time/at the appropriate time. In addition, it is possible that the assistance systems may misinterpret driving manoeuvres and give a warning or intervene unexpectedly.
- Non-standard road conditions, such off-road terrain, unsealed or gravelly roads, or roads with heavy cambers or deep ruts, may prevent the system from functioning as expected.
- The systems may not function as expected in unpredictable traffic situations such as in turning lanes, at blind exits, in roadwork areas, in case of restricted vision at steep hill crests or valleys, at intersections, at toll gates or in city traffic.
- The ability of the systems to detect the vehicle's surroundings can be affected, for example, by vehicles travelling in front, rain, snow, heavy road spray or adverse light. ▶

– In towing mode, some assistance systems may be restricted, unavailable or not react as usual. Please refer to the notes on towing a trailer ⇨ *page 103*.
– The function that detects the driver's hands on the steering wheel may be limited if you are wearing gloves. The steering assistance systems may prompt you to take over the steering more frequently as a result.
– Equipment or accessories fitted on the steering wheel may restrict the function of the steering assistance systems. In addition, the frequency with which the steering assist systems prompt you to take over the steering may differ.

Sensors for detecting the vehicle's surroundings

Areas covered by sensors and cameras

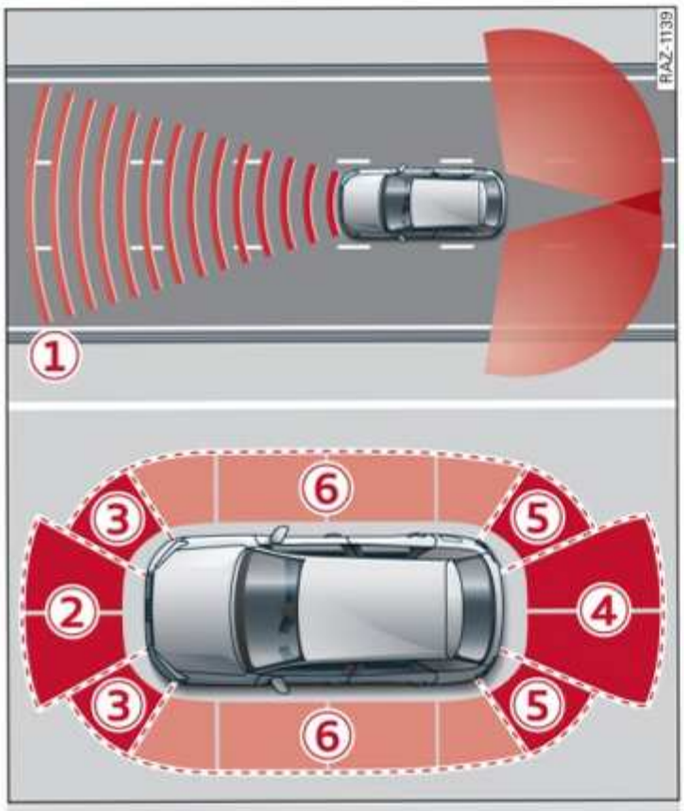


Fig. 88 Areas covered by sensors



Fig. 89 Areas covered by reversing camera

The assistance systems evaluate the data from different sensors and cameras installed in the vehicle. Do not use the assistance systems if the area around the sensors and cameras or the underbody has been damaged. This can impair the function of the sensors and cameras or cause malfunctions. Have the systems checked by a qualified workshop.

Radar sensors

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the area in front of and behind the vehicle can be detected ⇨ *Fig. 88* ①.

The radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle are designed for normal lane widths and monitor the lanes immediately to the left and right of your vehicle.

Ultrasonic sensors

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, ultrasonic sensors may be used to depict various areas on the MMI ⇨ *Fig. 88*.

The range of the areas displayed depends on the position of the ultrasonic sensors:

② Approx. 1.20 metres
③ Approx. 0.90 metres
④ Approx. 1.60 metres
⑤ Approx. 0.90 metres
⑥ Approx. 0.90 metres

The side area ⑥ is detected and analysed as the vehicle is moving past. When you switch the ignition off and on again or open the door, or after the vehicle has been stationary for a while, the ambient surroundings may have changed. In this ▶

case, that area will be displayed in black until the area has been scanned and evaluated.

Cameras

Only use the camera image on the display to assist you if the picture is clear and discernible. Please also note that the view on the display is enlarged and distorted. Under certain circumstances, objects may appear different on the display, or may be depicted inaccurately.

The reversing camera is only able to detect the area shown in red ⇨ *Fig. 89*. Only this area is shown on the centre display ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

- The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.
- Sensors may be subject to physical system limitations. External sources of interference, such as from other vehicles, may impair the function of the sensors. As a result, the supporting systems may be restricted or may not function as expected.

CAUTION

- Some objects may disappear from the sensors' field of vision as the vehicle approaches, even if they were originally detected by the system.
- In some cases, the sensors and cameras may only have a limited capacity to detect or display certain objects:
  - Objects positioned above the area covered by the sensors and cameras, such as the bumpers of parked cars, partially opened garage doors or suspended objects
  - Low obstacles
  - Narrow objects, such as chains, trees, posts or fences
  - Protruding objects, such as trailer draw bars
  - Objects with certain surfaces and structures, such as fabrics

Note

- The sensors and cameras and their surrounding area must never be covered or painted as this can impair the function of the systems that depend on them. Please ensure that the sensors and cameras are clean and kept free of snow, ice and any other deposits. Accessories, stickers, decals, paint etc. must not be applied to the sensors and must be kept completely outside the sensors' and cameras' range of vision.
- When replacing a factory-fitted front number plate holder, the new holder must be of the same size and material as the original one. On vehicles without a factory-fitted front number plate holder, a holder must not be fitted in the front area, as this can impair the function of the vehicle's systems.
- Poor light or visibility (for instance when entering a tunnel), or glare from reflecting objects, etc. may restrict the function of the sensors and cameras.
- External ultrasonic sources, such as from other vehicles, may interfere with the sensors.
- The areas covered by the sensors ⇨ *Fig. 88* and cameras ⇨ *Fig. 89* are examples and do not represent the range to scale.

Positions of sensors and cameras

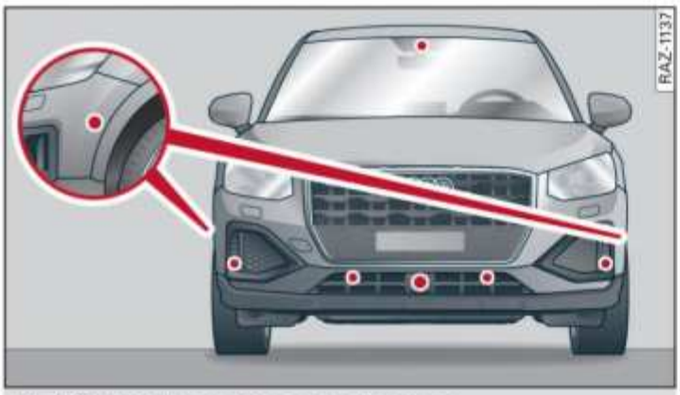


Fig. 90 Front area: Sensors and cameras

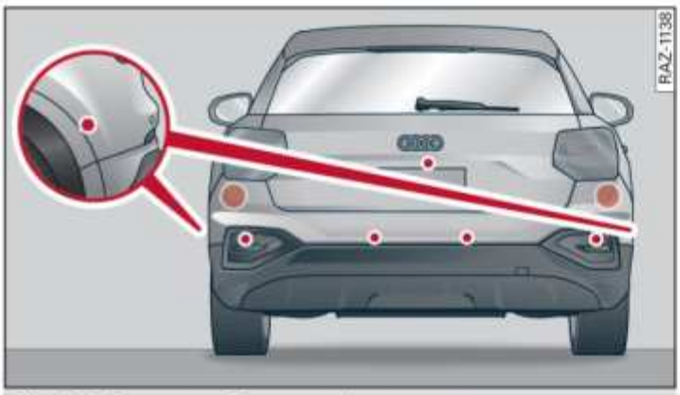


Fig. 91 Rear area: Sensors and cameras

Front area

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the following sensors and cameras may be fitted:

– Camera behind the windscreen
– Ultrasonic sensors at the front and sides of the vehicle
– Radar sensor at the front in the centre of the radiator grille

Rear area

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the following sensors and cameras may be fitted:

– Reversing camera in the boot lid
– Radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle
– Ultrasonic sensors at the rear and sides of the vehicle

Note

– The positions of some sensors may differ slightly depending on the vehicle's equipment.
– Some of the sensors are installed underneath parts of the vehicle and cannot be seen from outside.

81B012720AJ

Driver information

Speed warning function

Description

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning function

The speed warning function helps you to keep the vehicle below a pre-set maximum speed. To do this, a warning threshold can be set in the infotainment system.

As soon as the speed goes slightly above the set value, the speed warning system indicates this with a message in the instrument cluster and a warning tone. The message disappears as soon as the speed drops back below the stored highest speed.

You are recommended to store this speed limit warning if you wish to be reminded of a particular speed limit. This could be when driving in countries with general speed limits, or if you need to keep below a particular speed when winter tyres are fitted, etc.

Note

- Whether or not you use the speed warning function, it is vital to check the road speed with the speedometer and to stay within the maximum speed limit.
- On vehicles for some markets, the speed warning function warns you when you reach a factory-set speed.

Setting speed limit warning

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning function

▸ Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Driver assist** > **Speed warning** > **manual**.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning function

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Manually set speed limit (XX) exceeded

The set speed has been exceeded.

Camera-based traffic sign recognition

Description

Applies to: vehicles with camera-based traffic sign recognition



Fig. 92 Instrument cluster: Traffic sign recognition

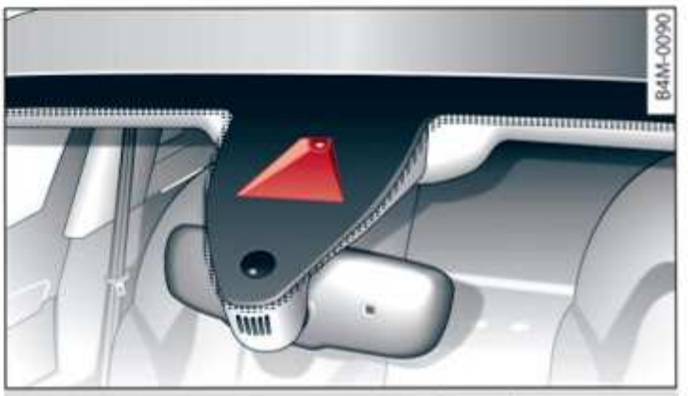


Fig. 93 Windscreen: Camera window for traffic sign recognition

Traffic signs detected by the system appear in the instrument cluster display to keep you informed of current speed restrictions and no-overtaking zones ⇨ *Fig. 92*. Within certain system limits, it will display these additional traffic restrictions:

	Speed limits in wet weather
	Speed limits in foggy conditions (only displayed when the all-weather lights or rear fog light are switched on)
	Speed limits at certain times of day
	Speed limits when towing a trailer

General information

The traffic sign recognition system can detect standardised speed limit signs within the camera's range of vision. It makes use of the navigation data to evaluate the detected speed limits and show them on the display. Under certain ▸

conditions, the system will also display the legal speed limits on roads without speed limit signs. The traffic sign for the currently detected speed limit will flash on the display if a speed warning threshold, which has been set on the infotainment system, is exceeded ⇨ *page 118*.

The traffic sign recognition system is not available in all countries. The system is also subject to certain inherent restrictions and may be partially or completely unavailable in the following situations:

- If visibility is impaired by snow, rain, fog or heavy road spray.
- In dazzling light, e.g. from the sun or oncoming traffic.
- At high speeds.
- If the camera's range of vision ⇨ *Fig. 93* is impaired, e.g. by dirt or stickers. Notes on cleaning ⇨ *page 293*
- If the traffic signs are partially or completely obscured, e.g. by trees, snow, mud or other vehicles.
- If speed-related traffic signs deviate from the standard appearance (round with red border).
- If traffic signs are damaged or bent.
- If matrix traffic signs are mounted on overhead gantries.
- If traffic signs or routes have changed (navigation data out of date).
- If the system detects a speed sticker on a slow-moving vehicle (such as a heavy goods vehicle).

WARNING

Always direct your full attention to the road and surroundings, even when you are using traffic sign recognition. The actual traffic signs on your route always take precedence over the information on the display. It is always the driver's responsibility to assess the traffic situation and take appropriate care.

- Under adverse conditions, the traffic sign recognition system may misinterpret or fail to detect traffic signs. It is therefore possible that the speed limit display may occasionally be unavailable or even incorrect.
- The traffic sign recognition system does not adjust the speed of your vehicle to the speed limits.

Note

- The traffic sign recognition system only informs and warns you of speed limits. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, additional driver assist systems may adjust the vehicle's speed.
- The speed limit displayed in the instrument cluster is given in the units applicable in a particular country.

Operation

Applies to: vehicles with camera-based traffic sign recognition



Fig. 94 Instrument cluster: Secondary display

Calling up the traffic sign recognition

- ▸ Call up the first tab (on-board computer) using the ◁▷ button on the multi-function steering wheel.
- ▸ Applies to vehicles with analogue instrument cluster: Select the following on the multi-function steering wheel: left control button > **Traffic signs**.
- ▸ Applies to vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit: Select the display for **Traffic signs**.

Displaying signs for trailers

You can also display speed limits which apply specifically to vehicles towing a trailer[1)].

- ▸ Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button ▶

[1)] Applies to factory-fitted towing brackets only

Driver assist > **Traffic signs** > **Automatic trailer recognition**.

Setting the maximum speed for a trailer

You can set the maximum speed permitted for your type of trailer[1]. If you do not enter a value, the system will show the maximum national speed limit for vehicles towing a trailer.

- Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button **Car** > left control button **Driver assist** > **Traffic signs** > **Trailer: highest speed**.

Setting speed warning

You can set a warning threshold up to 15 km/h. The traffic sign for the currently detected speed limit will flash on the display if the selected warning threshold is exceeded.

- Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Driver assist** > **Speed warning** > **Traffic sign based**.

Secondary display

If the instrument cluster is currently showing a function other than traffic sign recognition, the speed limit will be displayed in the top right-hand corner ⇨ *Fig. 94*. If the system is able to detect a temporary speed restriction in a given situation, it will update the display accordingly.

Temporary speed restrictions are displayed in the following situations:

- A temporary speed restriction for wet weather is detected while the windscreen wipers are operating.
- A speed restriction for fog is detected while the vehicle's rear fog light or all-weather lights are switched on.
- A speed restriction applying at certain times of day has been detected and corresponds to the time displayed in the instrument cluster.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer and the **Automatic trailer recognition** option is activated on the infotainment system. In this case, restrictions applying to trailers are displayed[1].

Note

- Your speed warning settings and the maximum trailer speed will be automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key in use. If you change to a different type of trailer, you may need to change the maximum trailer speed setting.
- Vehicles with navigation system (SD card)*: Please note that the traffic sign recognition is no longer available if the SD card is removed from the SD card reader.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with camera-based traffic sign recognition

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Traffic sign recognition: currently unavailable. No camera view

This message will appear if the camera view is obstructed ⇨ *page 116*. The system will switch itself off.

Traffic sign recognition: currently restricted

This message appears, for instance, in the event of a navigation system fault. The limited functionality may cause fewer speed limits to be displayed (which increases the possibility of an error).

Traffic sign based speed warning: currently unavailable. See owner's manual

No warning will be given if the selected warning threshold is exceeded.

Traffic sign recognition: system fault

The function of the system is impaired; the system will be deactivated. Drive to a qualified workshop soon.

No traffic sign recognised ▶

[1] Applies to factory-fitted towing brackets only

No relevant navigation data are available, and no speed limit has been detected.

Traffic sign recognition: outside operational area

Function unavailable in this country

The vehicle is being driven in a country outside the system's operational area.

Rest recommendation

General information

Applies to: vehicles with rest recommendation

Within the system limitations, the rest recommendation function can detect that the driver needs to take a break.

At the beginning of a trip, the system monitors the driver's general steering style. Using this as a reference, the system continuously compares the current steering input at speeds of between 60 km/h and 200 km/h. If the evaluation of the steering input implies a lapse in the driver's concentration, the system will then recommend a break ⇨ *page 119, Driver messages*.

The rest recommendation function is designed for journeys on motorways and major roads.

System limitations

The rest recommendation function may misinterpret the steering input in certain driving situations, such as the following:

- On twisty roads
- On poor road surfaces
- In poor weather
- During performance driving
- When your attention is distracted
- When lane guidance* is activated

Resetting the system

The system is automatically reset if you...

- switch off the ignition.
- release the driver's seat belt and open the driver's door.
- drive slower than 60 km/h for a while. If you subsequently increase your speed again, the system will re-evaluate the driving style.

WARNING

- Never drive when you are tired. As the driver, you are always responsible for ensuring that you are fit to drive.
- On long journeys, make sure to take adequate breaks at regular intervals.
- The system cannot always tell if you need a break.
- In certain situations, the system may misinterpret driving manoeuvres and inappropriately recommend a break.
- No acute warning is given if the driver falls into a microsleep.

Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with rest recommendation

▸ Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Driver assist** > **Rest recommendation**.

Note

If you switch off the system, it will remain switched off the next time you switch on the ignition.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with rest recommendation

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Rest recommended

If the indicator lamp lights up and the message appears, the evaluation of the steering input has resulted in a rest recommendation. This is also indicated by a warning tone. Take a break as soon as possible.

The message may be displayed again once if necessary.

Lap timer

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with lap timer

You can use the lap timer to record and evaluate lap times. The lap timer can be operated using the multi-function steering wheel ⇨ *page 17*.

Calling up the lap timer

- Call up the first tab (Vehicle functions) using the ◁ / ▷ button on the multi-function steering wheel.
- Applies to vehicles with multi-function steering wheel plus and analogue instrument cluster: Select the following on the multi-function steering wheel: left control button > **Lap timer**.
- Applies to: vehicles with multi-function steering wheel plus and Audi virtual cockpit: Select the following on the multi-function steering wheel: left control button > **Lap times**.

Operating the lap timer

- Scroll the left thumbwheel (7) ⇨ *page 17* on the multi-function steering wheel until the desired menu item is displayed in the instrument cluster.
- Press the left thumbwheel to confirm your selection.

WARNING

Please direct your full attention to the road at all times. As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. For this reason, you should only use the lap timer functions in a manner that allows you to maintain control of the vehicle in all situations – risk of accident!

Note

You can call up information from the on-board computer while the stopwatch of the lap timer is running.

Lap times

Applies to: vehicles with lap timer

Important: Call up the lap timer first ⇨ *page 120*.

Recording lap times

- To start the lap timer manually, select **Lap 1 - select OK** or **Start lap 1** from the menu.
- Applies to vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit: To start the lap timer automatically when you drive off, select **Start lap 1 by driving off** or **Start by driving off** from the menu.
- To finish measuring the current lap time, select **New lap - select OK** or **New lap** from the menu. The next lap time starts running immediately.

When you finish a lap, the lap time is compared with the best lap and the difference is indicated by a –/ or +/.

Interrupting the lap timer (pause) and displaying split times

- To pause the lap timer **II**, select **Pause** from the menu.
- To start the lap timer again, select **Resume - select OK** or **Resume** from the menu.
- To display a split time, select **Split time** from the menu. The split time appears in the instrument cluster for approximately ten seconds. The current lap time continues running in the meantime.

Resetting the lap timer

- Select **Reset** or **Reset lap times** from the menu.

Note

– Up to 30 lap times (analogue instrument cluster) or 99 lap times (Audi virtual cockpit*) can be recorded.
– If you interrupt the lap timer to take a break, you can resume recording later on, even if you switched off the ignition in the meantime.
– Recorded lap times cannot be deleted individually from the overall results.
– The data recorded in the lap timer remain stored after the ignition is switched off.

Lap statistics

Applies to: vehicles with lap timer

Displaying the lap statistics

The number of laps so far, the fastest lap +, the slowest lap – and the average time ∅ can be displayed in the instrument cluster.

- Applies to vehicles with multi-function steering wheel plus and analogue instrument cluster: Select the following on the multi-function steering wheel: left control button > **Statistics**.
- Applies to: vehicles with multi-function steering wheel plus and Audi virtual cockpit: Select the following on the multi-function steering wheel: left control button > **Lap statistics** or **Statistics**.
- To show the individual lap times, scroll the left thumbwheel up/down.
- To return to the lap time already started, press the left thumbwheel.

Resetting the lap statistics

Applies to: vehicles with multi-function steering wheel plus and Audi virtual cockpit

- On the multi-function steering wheel, select right control button > **Reset statistics**.

Note

– The lap times for the last 30 laps are shown in the lap statistics.
– Applies to vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit: The fastest and slowest lap times from up to 99 timed laps are also shown.

Driver assistance

Speed regulation systems

Description

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

The speed regulation systems consist of the cruise control system and the speed limiter.

The **cruise control system** helps you to maintain a speed of approx. 20 km/h and above. The system regulates to the desired speed by braking and accelerating.

The **speed limiter** helps you to avoid exceeding a speed of approx. 30 km/h and above. The system limits the speed even if the accelerator is pressed.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 112* to ⇨ *page 115*.
- The speed regulation systems are designed to assist the driver; however the driver still maintains full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle. This applies in particular to braking and controlling the vehicle's speed and distance to other vehicles.
- When you take a turn-off, drive along a motorway exit lane or pass through roadwork sections, please temporarily switch off the speed regulation systems. This is to ensure that the vehicle does not accelerate to the cruising speed in such situations.

CAUTION

Before driving down a long, steep gradient, it is advisable to reduce speed and select a lower gear. In this way you will make use of the engine braking effect and relieve the load on the brakes.

Display overview

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

Warning/indicator lamps on the speedometer and driver messages indicate the driving situation and settings. The displays depend on the country and the vehicle's equipment.

Indicator lamps

– The cruise control system is switched on and is actively controlling the set speed.

LIM – The speed limiter is switched on and is actively limiting the road speed to the threshold set.

LIM (flashing) – The set cruising speed has been exceeded; the driver is temporarily overriding the limit.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 112* to ⇨ *page 115*.

Switching the system on

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

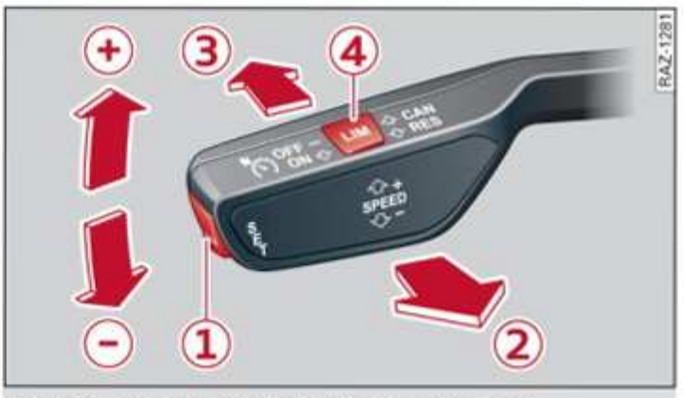


Fig. 95 Control lever: Switching the system on

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

- ▸ Pull the control lever towards you to position ② to switch the system on.
- ▸ To switch between the cruise control system/ adaptive cruise assist* and the speed limiter, press button ④ on the control lever. ▶

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 112* to ⇨ *page 115*.
- The speed regulation systems may be switched off automatically if a fault occurs in the brake system (e.g. if the brakes overheat) while they are activated.

Note

The preset cruising speed remains stored when you switch between the systems.

Activating the preset speed/selecting it in advance

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

You can select the preset speed in advance while the vehicle is stationary or activate it when the vehicle is moving.

Important: The system must be switched on.

- To select the preset speed in advance when the vehicle is stationary, press the control lever towards ⊕/⊖ ⇨ *page 122, Fig. 95*.
- To activate the preset speed, pull the control lever towards you to position ② while the vehicle is moving.
- To use the speed at which the vehicle is currently travelling as the preset speed, press button ① on the control lever.

Changing the preset speed

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

Important: The system must be switched on.

- Briefly push the lever towards ⊕/⊖ ⇨ *page 122, Fig. 95* to increase or reduce the preset speed in small steps.
- Hold the lever at ⊕/⊖ to increase or reduce the preset speed continuously.

Overriding/deactivating the preset speed

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

You can override or deactivate the preset speed. If you deactivate the system, the preset speed remains stored and you can use it again later.

Important: The system must be switched on and the stored preset speed must be activated.

Overriding

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

- To override the preset speed temporarily, press the accelerator.
- To revert to the preset speed, take your foot off the accelerator.

The cruise control system will be deactivated if you exceed the preset speed for a long time.

Overriding

Applies to: vehicles with speed limiter

- To override the preset speed temporarily, press the accelerator past the point of resistance (kick-down feature).

The stored preset speed is reactivated as soon as your speed drops below the preset speed.

Deactivating

- To deactivate the preset speed, push the control lever to position ③ (click stop not engaged) ⇨ *page 122, Fig. 95*, or:
- Applies to vehicles with cruise control system: Press the brake pedal.

WARNING

- Applies to vehicles with cruise control system: Make sure you do not unintentionally rest your foot on the accelerator, as this could override the regulating function. The system might not apply the brakes and therefore not regulate the vehicle's speed.
- Only accelerate quickly or use the kick-down feature when the visibility and weather conditions are suitable, and when the road and traffic conditions allow you do so safely.

Switching the system off

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

You can switch off the cruise control systems if you will not be using them for a longer period of time.

- Press the control lever to position (3) (click stop engaged) to switch the system off ⇨ *page 122, Fig. 95*.

The indicator lamp will disappear and the set speed will be deleted.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

If or LIM is displayed in the event of a fault, the corresponding cruise control systems are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 115* and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Adaptive cruise assist

How it works

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the adaptive cruise assist may perform the following functions:

The **adaptive cruise assist** function assists you when driving by controlling the road speed and maintaining a set distance to the vehicle in front within certain limits imposed by the system. When it detects a vehicle in front, the adaptive cruise assist can accelerate and brake within certain system limitations. When there is no traffic in front, the adaptive cruise assist works just like a normal cruise control system by maintaining a constant speed. When you draw closer to a vehicle in front, the adaptive cruise assist matches your speed to that vehicle by automatically applying the brakes, and then maintains a constant distance (which you can adjust in the settings). As soon as it detects no more vehicles in front, the adaptive cruise assist accelerates back up to the cruising speed.

Within certain system limits, the additional **lane guidance** function helps you to keep the vehicle largely in the centre of the lane. You can select whether the adaptive cruise assist provides assistance in lane guidance ⇨ *page 128, Switching lane guidance on/off*.

In **congested traffic and traffic jams**, the system can brake down to a standstill and move off again automatically under certain conditions.

Applies to vehicles with predictive control: The **predictive control** system can adjust the speed in response to events ⇨ *page 130*.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 112* to ⇨ *page 115*.

Restrictions

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

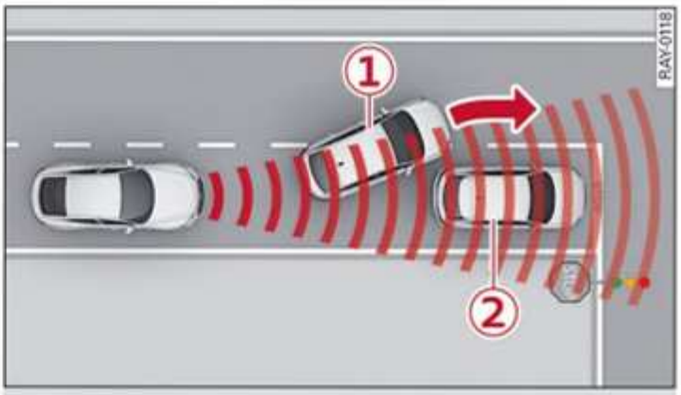


Fig. 96 Example: Vehicle changing lane and vehicle stationary

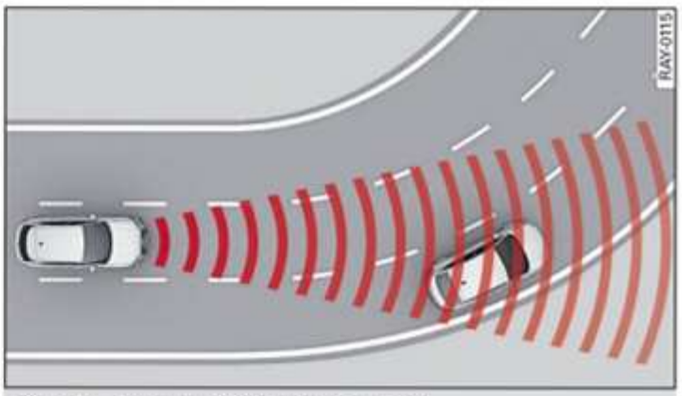


Fig. 97 Example: Driving into a bend

In some driving situations, the adaptive cruise assist functions are restricted and you may need to intervene by, for example, braking the vehicle yourself:

- If a vehicle ①, which has already been detected by the adaptive cruise assist, turns off or changes lane and another stationary vehicle ② is located in front of that vehicle, the system cannot always react to the stationary vehicle.
- When driving into a bend ⇨ *Fig. 97* and driving out of a bend, the system may react to a vehicle travelling in the next lane and therefore brake the vehicle. You can override this by accelerating briefly.
- The system operates on the basis of information gathered from various sensors and cameras. Vehicles cannot be detected until they are within range and inside the sensors' field of vision ⇨ *page 113*.
- In tight bends, a vehicle driving ahead which has already been detected by the adaptive cruise assist may no longer be recognised, and the system may accelerate unexpectedly as a result.
- The adaptive cruise assist will not react to stationary vehicles in the same lane if the system assumes that you can easily steer to avoid the stationary vehicle.
- The adaptive cruise assist cannot react to stationary obstacles, such as the end of a traffic jam, particularly at high speeds.
- The ability of the system to detect vehicles in front is limited when they are too close, travelling out of line, or moving into your lane.
- Vehicles that are not clearly discernible, e.g. a motorcycle or cyclist travelling in front of you and vehicles with high ground clearance or a protruding load, are often identified late or are not detected at all.
- The system does not react to pedestrians, animals or crossing or oncoming traffic.

⚠ WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 112* to ⇨ *page 115*.

Display overview

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist



Fig. 98 Instrument cluster: Display on speedometer

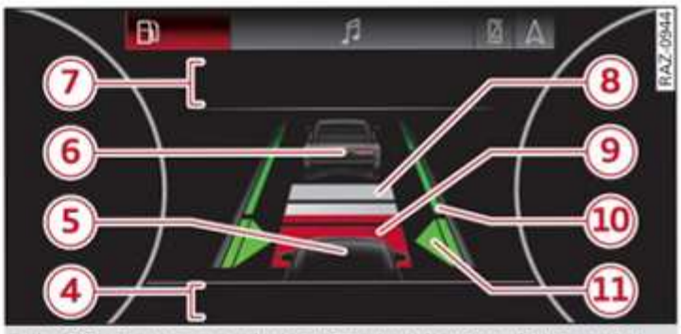


Fig. 99 Instrument cluster: Display showing driver assist system

The driving situation and the settings are displayed on the instrument cluster ⇨ *Fig. 98*. More detailed system information is shown on the **Driver assist** ⇨ *Fig. 99* display. The displays depend on the country and the vehicle's equipment.

Display on speedometer

① Marker for set speed
② Current speed
③ Available speed range of the adaptive cruise assist (example)

Driver assist display

The display in the **Driver assist** screen appears only if it was called up on the on-board computer ⇨ *page 21* / ⇨ *page 22*.

④ Driver messages and settings
⑤ Own vehicle
⑥ Vehicle detected in front
⑦ Driver messages and settings
⑧ Specified distance set
⑨ The distance bars are coloured in red from the bottom up as soon as the actual distance is shorter than the set distance.
⑩ Availability of lane departure warning ▶

⑪ Availability of lane guidance of adaptive cruise assist

Warning and indicator lamps

– The speed/distance regulating function is active. No vehicle has been detected in front. The set cruising speed is being maintained.

– The speed/distance regulating function is active. A vehicle in front has been detected. The adaptive cruise assist is regulating the speed to maintain a constant distance to the vehicle in front, and will accelerate and brake the vehicle automatically.

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

– The speed/distance regulating function is active but the vehicle is not **ready to drive off**. A vehicle in front has been detected. Your vehicle is stationary and will not be set in motion again automatically.

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

– The speed/distance regulating function is active but the vehicle is not **ready to drive off**. No vehicle has been detected in front. Your vehicle is stationary and will not be set in motion again automatically.

– You must intervene. The system alone is not able to brake the vehicle sufficiently ⇨ *page 129, Take over braking prompt* or the safe start monitor is issuing a warning ⇨ *page 133*.

– Lane guidance is active.

– Take over the steering. The system limits have been reached ⇨ *page 129, Take over steering prompt*.

– Lane guidance is switched on but not active ⇨ *page 128, Lane guidance limitations*.

/ – Take over the steering. No steering activity has been detected or the system has reached its limits ⇨ *page 129, Take over steering prompt*.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 112* to ⇨ *page 115*.

Operating the adaptive cruise assist

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist



Fig. 100 Control lever: Operating adaptive cruise assist



Fig. 101 Control lever: Setting a new speed

Switching on

▸ To switch the adaptive cruise assist on, pull the lever towards you to position ① until it engages.

Setting the speed and activating the regulating function

When you switch on the system, you can set your current speed as the cruising speed and activate the cruise control:

▸ Press the SET button ②. The set speed will be indicated by a marking on the speedometer ① ⇨ *page 125, Fig. 98* and displayed in the instrument cluster ⇨ ⚠.

▸ Automatic gearbox: You should also hold the brake pedal to store the speed if the vehicle is stationary. ▶

You can set any speed between 20 km/h[1] and the maximum of the available speed range (3)[2] ⇨ *page 125, Fig. 98*.

Interrupting the regulating function temporarily

The regulating function can be interrupted at any time.

- While driving or when stationary: Push the lever away from you in the direction of the arrow, or
- While driving: Press the brake pedal.

The indicator lamp will go out.

Resuming the regulating function

Once a speed has been set, it can be called up again after the regulating function has been paused.

- To resume the regulating function while you are driving, pull the lever towards you in the direction of the arrow.
- Automatic gearbox: To reactivate the regulating function when the vehicle is stationary, press the brake pedal and pull the lever towards you in the direction of the arrow.

Setting a new speed

- Briefly push the lever towards (+)/(-) to increase or reduce the set speed in small steps.
- To increase or reduce the set speed continuously, hold the lever towards (+)/(-) until the marking on the speedometer (1) ⇨ *page 125, Fig. 98* reaches the desired cruising speed.

Applies to vehicles with predictive control: The predictive control system can adjust the set speed automatically in response to events ⇨ *page 130*.

Pre-selecting a speed

You can pre-select the speed, even when the adaptive cruise assist is inactive, by moving the lever in the appropriate direction (+)/(-). To activate the pre-selected speed, pull the lever towards you in the direction of the arrow.

Switching off

You can switch off the adaptive cruise assist if you will not be using it for a longer period of time.

- To switch the adaptive cruise assist off, press the lever away from you to position (0) until it engages.

The indicator lamp and the set speed will disappear.

Vehicles with manual gearbox

The regulating function is available in second gear or higher (when driven in the normal engine speed range).

- You have to change gears in the normal way while driving. The regulating function will remain activated when you change gear or press the clutch pedal. You do **not** need to press the accelerator after selecting a gear and releasing the clutch. The system accelerates the vehicle automatically as appropriate.

The regulating function may be switched off automatically if you keep the clutch pedal depressed for too long or if you change gears incorrectly or use the clutch pedal improperly.

⚠ WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 112* to ⇨ *page 115*.
- The adaptive cruise assist serves as a driver assist system. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle. This applies in particular to braking, steering, driving off and controlling the vehicle's speed and distance to other vehicles.
- Only switch on the adaptive cruise assist in situations where it is safe to do so. Always adjust your driving style to suit the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. ▶

1) Analogue instrument cluster: 30 km/h
2) Depends on country and engine type

– When you take a turn-off or drive along a motorway exit lane, please temporarily switch off the adaptive cruise assist. This is to ensure that the vehicle does not accelerate to the cruising speed in such situations.
– If you press the SET button ② at a speed of less than 20 km/h[1], the vehicle will automatically apply the minimum speed setting. If no vehicles have been detected in front, the vehicle will automatically accelerate up to this speed.

Note

– Always leave your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
– If the speed limiter* is selected after the ignition is switched on, the adaptive cruise assist must have been selected beforehand. Press the LIM* button ③ to select the adaptive cruise assist.
– The speed setting is cleared for safety reasons when you switch off the ignition or the adaptive cruise assist.
– The ESC and traction control system (ASR) are automatically activated when the adaptive cruise assist is switched on.
– The system is switched off/cannot be switched on when the maximum possible road gradient for safe operation has been exceeded.
– If a vehicle is detected in the outside lane, the adaptive cruise assist adjusts the speed[2] to prevent you from overtaking on the right/left[2]. You can override the speed adjustment by changing the set speed or overriding the regulating function briefly.

Switching lane guidance on/off

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist and lane guidance

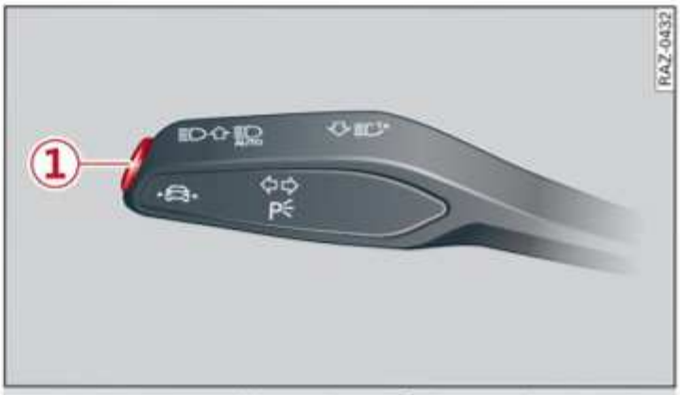


Fig. 102 Turn signal lever: Button for lane guidance and lane departure warning

The lane guidance function can be switched on and off. Within certain system limits, it helps you to keep the vehicle largely in the centre of the lane.

Activating/deactivating lane guidance availability

Important: The lane guidance function must have been selected beforehand on the MMI ⇨ *page 133*.

▸ To activate/deactivate the lane guidance availability, press the button ① on the turn signal lever.

The arrows ⑪ in the **driver assist** display ⇨ *page 125, Fig. 99* and indicator lamps ⇨ *page 126* indicate whether the lane guidance is available.

The lane guidance assists you by making steering inputs only if the adaptive cruise assist is controlling the vehicle's speed/distance and the availability is switched on.

Lane guidance limitations

If lights up in white, lane guidance is switched on but not active. This may happen if the following system limits or events occur:

– The system cannot detect the necessary lane markings (e.g. in road works or due to snow, dirt, rain or glare). ▶

[1] Analogue instrument cluster: 30 km/h
[2] Depending on country

– The lane is too narrow or too wide.
– The bend is too tight.
– The vision at a hill crest/valley is insufficient.
– You have taken your hands off the steering wheel.
– The turn signal was activated.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 112* to ⇨ *page 115*.

Note

– Always leave your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
– Audi recommends that you use the lane guidance on major roads only.
– The button ⇨ *Fig. 102* switches the availability of the lane guidance and lane departure warning on/off together if the lane guidance function has been selected beforehand in the MMI settings for the adaptive cruise assist.

Prompts to take control

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist



Fig. 103 Instrument cluster: Take over braking prompt

Take over braking prompt

If the warning lamp lights up and the driver message **Distance!** appears, apply the brake pedal to slow down your vehicle ⇨ ⚠.

In such cases, the adaptive cruise assist alone is not able to brake the vehicle sufficiently to maintain a safe distance to the vehicle in front.

The illustration ① is also shown when the **Driver assist** display is called up on the on-board computer ⇨ *page 21* or ⇨ *page 22*.

Take over steering prompt

If the warning lamp lights up, take over the steering. The system limits have been reached, for example because the system's steering power is insufficient in tight bends. The system may no longer be active after a short time and may only be available again later.

If the warning/indicator lamp or lights up and a corresponding message appears, take over the steering. Insufficient steering activity has been detected or the system has reached its limits. Keep your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. If you do not take over the steering, the adaptive cruise assist will be stopped and the emergency assist will be activated on vehicles which have this function ⇨ *page 143*.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 112* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– The adaptive cruise assist serves as a driver assist system. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle. This applies in particular to braking and steering and maintaining the distance to other vehicles.

Note

– Always leave your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
– The prompts to take control may be accompanied by further acoustic and visual signals, depending on the situation.

Predictive control

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist and predictive control

How it works

When the predictive control is active, the efficiency assist function adapts the cruising speed setting ① ⇨ *page 125, Fig. 98* for the adaptive cruise assist to recognised speed limits and the road layout ahead. When there are no longer any events ahead detected by the system, the adaptive cruise assist accelerates back up to the cruising speed which you set most recently. When the adaptive cruise assist is switched on initially after the ignition has been switched on, the availability of the predictive control is indicated by a driver message.

Symbols indicate which events the predictive control is reacting to.

Requirements

- The predictive control function must be switched on in the MMI ⇨ *page 133*.
- The regulating function of the adaptive cruise assist must be on ⇨ *page 126*.
- The system can only react to speed limits of 20 km/h[1] and higher.
- The map material on the navigation system* must be updated regularly to ensure the system can function without limitations ⇨ *page 224*.

Overriding the regulating function

You can override the predictive control at any time by pressing the accelerator. In addition, the control lever ⇨ *page 126, Fig. 101* can be used to change the speed limit control response.

The predictive control is deactivated if you make a significant change to the speed limit control response. The adaptive cruise control system regulates the speed to match the manually set value.

Event symbols

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, the predictive control uses the symbols below to indicate which event it is currently reacting to.

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, some of the symbols may only appear in the **Driver assist** display to specify which event the system is reacting to.

Symbol	Description
	**Adaptation to route ahead**
	**Speed limit** ahead (example)
km/h	**Speed limit** ahead
	**Speed limit no longer applies**
	**Corner** or **Exit** ahead
	**Intersection** ahead
	**Roundabout** ahead

Driver messages

If  and a driver message with **Predictive control** are displayed in the event of a fault, some or all of the efficiency assist functions are unavailable.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 115* and attempt to switch the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 112* to ⇨ *page 115*.
- Always direct your full attention to the road and surroundings, even when you are using ▶

[1] Analogue instrument cluster: 30 km/h

the predictive control. It is always the driver's responsibility to assess the traffic situation and take appropriate care.
- The system does not give way to priority traffic and does not stop at traffic lights – risk of accident!
- The speed at which the system drives the vehicle through a corner may not correspond to your own driving style or ambient conditions. To avoid a risk of accident, apply the brakes manually as necessary, and reduce the speed setting in **Adaptation to route ahead**.

Note

- When using the predictive control, the actual road speed may be above or below the maximum speed limit. It is always the driver's responsibility to keep within the speed limit.
- The actual traffic signs on your route always take precedence over the information on the display. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
- The system only responds to traffic signs specifying a speed limit.
- The speed limit displayed in the instrument cluster is given in the units applicable in a particular country. For example, if 50 is displayed on the instrument cluster, this may signify mph or km/h, depending on the country.
- The marking ① ⇨ *page 125* is adjusted to the set speed when a speed limit is detected even when the adaptive cruise assist is not regulating the speed.
- When the vehicle is coasting, the actual road speed may occasionally exceed or fall below the set speed.
- The system's control response depends on the driving program set for the adaptive cruise assist/the Audi drive select* mode selected.
- When you switch on the ignition and subsequently drive onto a motorway with no speed limit, the system initially regulates the speed to 130 km/h[1)]. After this, the last speed set by the driver is applied.
- The system will only regulate the speed at motorway junctions or on slip roads if these are part of the route set in the route guidance.
- If incorrect values are supplied by the camera-based traffic sign recognition* or if the map material on the navigation system* is out of date, this can cause failures or implausibilities in the control response.
- Certain functions are not available when you leave the road area mapped on the navigation system.
- While route guidance is active on the navigation system, the control uses the navigation route as a reference. Implausibilities in the control response can occur when route guidance is inactive or if you leave the route.

Setting the distance

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

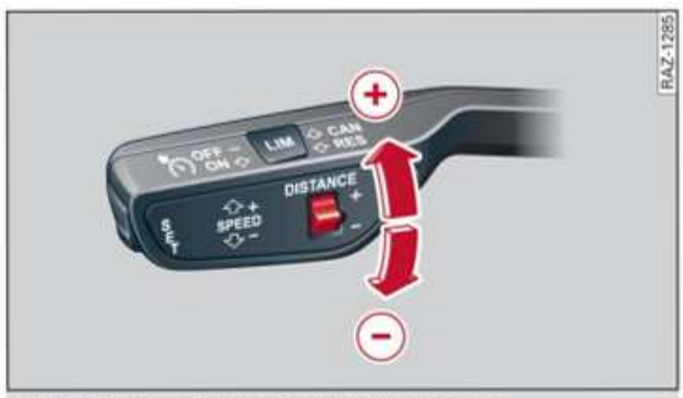


Fig. 104 Control lever: Setting the distance

When you draw closer to a vehicle in front, the adaptive cruise assist matches your speed to that vehicle by applying the brakes, and then maintains a constant distance (which you can adjust in the settings). If the vehicle in front accelerates, the adaptive cruise assist will also accelerate up to the target speed you have specified.

▸ To display the current distance setting, briefly press the rocker switch. ▶

1) Depending on country

▸ To increase or reduce the distance by one level, briefly press the rocker switch again towards ⊕/⊖.

The newly set distance will be displayed briefly, e.g. indicator lamp D.

Setting the distance changes the gap between your vehicle and the one ahead. The higher the speed, the higher the distance. The following distances can be set:

Symbol	Time-based distance	Distance at 100 km/h
D	approx. 1 second	28 m
D	approx. 1.3 seconds	36 m
D	approx. 1.8 seconds (generally recommended)	50 m
D	approx. 2.4 seconds	67 m
D	approx. 3.6 seconds	100 m

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 112* to ⇨ *page 115*.

Note

– When setting the distance, the driver is responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
– In the **Driver assist** display, a graphic ⑧ ⇨ *page 125, Fig. 99* will be shown instead of the warning/indicator lamps. The display provides the same information as the warning/indicator lamps.
– The acceleration style ranges from moderate to dynamic, depending on the selected driving program and the distance setting ⇨ *page 133, Adjusting adaptive cruise assist settings*.
– The actual distance maintained by the adaptive cruise control may be longer or shorter, depending on the traffic situation and the driving style of the driver in front.

Additional functions

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

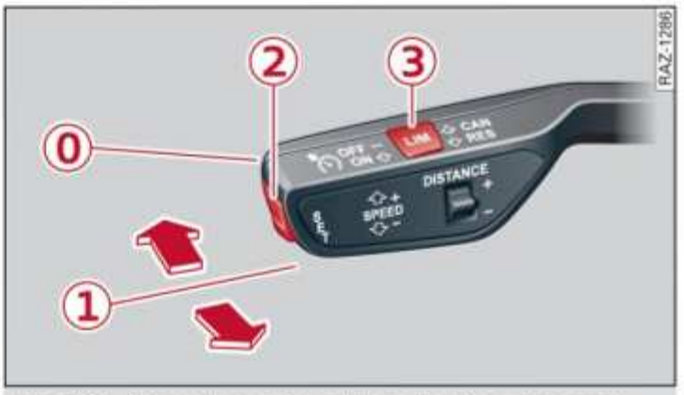


Fig. 105 Control lever: Operating adaptive cruise assist

Important: The regulating function of the adaptive cruise assist must be activated for all additional functions.

Overriding the regulating function

You can override the regulating function completely, e.g. to overtake another vehicle or accelerate faster.

▸ Press the accelerator pedal to accelerate manually.
▸ Take your foot off the accelerator pedal to continue using the function.

If you are in the **Driver assist** display, the driver message **Overridden** will appear.

Response when turn signals are on (to overtake)

If you operate the turn signal and the adaptive cruise assist concludes that you are intending to perform an overtaking manoeuvre, the system can accelerate before you change lane and reduce the distance to the vehicle ahead. This happens automatically if you are driving behind another vehicle and activate the turn signal to overtake.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 112* to ⇨ *page 115*.

– Make sure you do not unintentionally rest your foot on the accelerator, as this could override the regulating function. The system might not apply the brakes and therefore not regulate the vehicle's speed.
– The functions are designed to assist the driver; however the driver still maintains full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle. This applies in particular to changing lane, braking, controlling the vehicle's speed and maintaining the distance to other vehicles.

Driving in congested traffic

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist



Applies to: vehicles with safe start monitor
Fig. 106 Instrument cluster: Safe start monitor

Stopping with the adaptive cruise assist

The adaptive cruise assist also helps you when driving in congested traffic. If a vehicle in front stops, the adaptive cruise control applies the brakes (within the system limits) and holds the vehicle at a standstill.

Driving off with the adaptive cruise assist

If the message **Ready to drive off** and  are on the display and the vehicle in front drives off, your vehicle will automatically start moving ⇨ ⚠.

If the vehicle has been stopped for too long, the message will disappear and the vehicle will no longer move off automatically for safety reasons.

- ▸ You can extend the period in which the vehicle is **Ready to drive off** automatically by pulling the lever towards you briefly in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *page 132, Fig. 105*.
- ▸ To set the vehicle in motion again manually, tap the accelerator with your foot.

Safe start monitor

Applies to: vehicles with safe start monitor

The vehicle may start moving even if it detects certain obstacles while doing so ⇨ ⚠. If, for example, the ultrasonic sensors of the parking system detect an obstacle, the warning lamp  will light up to draw your attention to the danger.

If you are in the **Driver assist** display, this is also illustrated ① ⇨ *Fig. 106* along with the driver message **WARNING!**. In addition, a tone will sound. Your vehicle will then set off more slowly. This can happen in certain situations, even if there appears to be no obstacle.

- ▸ If necessary, press the brake pedal to slow down.

⚠ WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 112* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– If the **autom. go** message appears, your vehicle will start moving even if there is an obstacle between your car and the vehicle in front. Always make sure that there are no obstacles between your vehicle and the vehicle in front – risk of accident!

Note

For safety reasons, the adaptive cruise assist is activated only if
– all the doors and the bonnet are closed,
– the vehicle has not been stopped for too long.

Adjusting adaptive cruise assist settings

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

You can make personal adjustments to the adaptive cruise assist settings. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- ▸ Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Driver assist** > **Adaptive cruise assist**.

Available settings: ▸

Lane guidance[1] – You can select whether the lane guidance is activated together with the adaptive cruise assist.

Applies to: vehicles without Audi drive select

Driving program – Depending on the selected driving program and the distance setting, the handling characteristics will range from **Dynamic** to **Moderate**, and the haptic feedback of the lane guidance* will be adjusted accordingly.

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

The handling characteristics and haptic feedback of the lane guidance* will be adjusted according to the Audi drive select mode currently selected ⇨ *page 98*.

Store last distance – The last distance is stored after the ignition is switched off. If the distance is not stored, distance (time-based distance of approx. 1.8 seconds) is automatically selected as the default setting.

Predictive control > **Use speed limit** – The regulation of the cruising speed according to speed limits ahead can be switched **On** or **Off**. The optional control setting **With tolerance** can also be applied. In this case, the actual speed can be above or below the set speed briefly for increased efficiency. This may result in a delay in observing the speed limit.

Predictive control > **Adaptation to route ahead** – The function for adapting to the route ahead can be switched **Off** or adjusted individually from **Slow** to **Fast**. This setting affects the handling characteristics of the predictive control, e.g. how fast the vehicle will drive through corners.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

If is displayed in the event of a fault, the adaptive cruise assist functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays.

The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 115* and attempt to switch the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Please take control!

This message appears, for instance, if the vehicle rolls backwards when driving away on a slight gradient, even though the systems are active. Press the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from rolling back or colliding with an object behind.

Distance warning

Description

Applies to: vehicles with distance warning



Fig. 107 Instrument cluster: Distance indicator/warning

How it works

This function measures the distance to the vehicle in front in time units at speeds above approx. 65 km/h. The warning lamp draws your attention to the danger if the vehicle goes continuously below the warning threshold.

Driver assist display

The display ⇨ *Fig. 107* is only shown when the **Driver assist** display is called up in the on-board ▶

[1] The settings are only available when the lane departure warning is switched on.

computer ⇨ *page 21* / ⇨ *page 22* and the adaptive cruise assist is not controlling the vehicle's speed/distance.

You can estimate the distance to an obstacle by referring to the markings. Each marking is equivalent to approx. 0.2 s. The red marking indicates which warning threshold has been set. The display is coloured from the bottom up, depending on the setting.

Adjusting distance warning settings

The system can be switched on/off on the MMI and you can set an individual threshold for the distance warning. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

– Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Driver assist** > **Distance warning**.

Driver messages

If a driver message with **Distance warning** is displayed in the event of a fault, some or all of the distance warning functions are unavailable.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 115* and attempt to switch the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 112* to ⇨ *page 115*.

Note

– As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
– The distance may be below the warning threshold for a short time when overtaking or approaching another vehicle quickly from behind. In this case, no warning will be given. A warning is only given if the distance is below the threshold for an extended period of time.

Lane departure warning

How it works

Applies to: vehicles with lane departure warning

The lane departure warning detects lane markings within certain limits imposed by the system. If you approach one of the detected lane markings, the system can warn you that the vehicle might be about to cross one of the markings by correcting the steering. The steering wheel may vibrate as well.

The system operates at speeds between approx. 65 km/h and 250 km/h[1)].

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 112* to ⇨ *page 115*.

1) 55 km/h – 250 km/h in certain countries

Description

Applies to: vehicles with lane departure warning

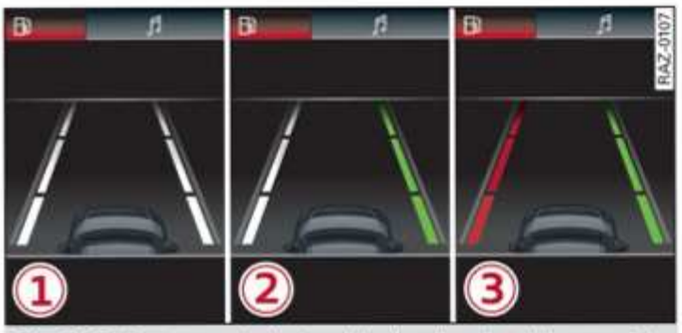


Fig. 108 Instrument cluster: Display showing driver assist system

Display and warning

Indicator lamps indicate whether the system is available and/or ready to give warnings. The lane departure warning system is ready to give warnings when it detects a demarcation on at least one side of the lane in which you are driving.

Driver assist display		Indicator lamps		Meaning
Multi-coloured display	Monochrome display	Audi virtual cockpit	Instrument cluster (analogue)	
① White line(s)	Dark grey lines	/ on corresponding side		The lane departure warning system is switched on but not ready to give warnings.
② Green line(s)	Light grey lines	/ on corresponding side		The lane departure warning system is switched and ready to give warnings.
③ Red line	Flashing line	/ on corresponding side	Flashing	The lane departure warning system warns you by correcting the steering before you cross the lane demarcation.
-	-	/ on both sides	-	The emergency assist's* lane guidance is active ⇨ *page 143*.

If the lane departure warning system has to intervene for a long time, a message will appear asking you to drive in the middle of the lane. The steering wheel may also vibrate to warn you if you cross a lane marking.

The system has certain limitations and, in situations such as the following, may be switched on but not ready to warn:

- The system cannot detect the necessary lane markings (e.g. in road works or due to snow, dirt, rain or glare).
- The current speed is below the threshold necessary to activate the system.
- The lane is too narrow or too wide.
- The bend is too tight.
- The vision at a hill crest/valley is insufficient.
- You have taken your hands off the steering wheel.
- The turn signal was activated.

Take over steering prompt

If the lane departure warning is triggered repeatedly and no steering activity is detected, you will be warned by acoustic and visual signals, e.g. or , to take over the steering. Take over the steering and keep your hands on the steering wheel so that you are ready to steer at all times. The system may no longer be ready to warn after a short time and may only be available again later.

If you do not take over the steering, the lane departure warning will no longer be ready to give warnings and the emergency assist will be activated on vehicles which have this function ⇨ *page 143*.

Response when turn signals are on

Applies to vehicles without Audi side assist: The system does not warn you if you operate the turn ▶

signal before crossing a lane demarcation. In this case, it assumes that you intend to change lanes.

Applies to vehicles with Audi side assist: If you operate the turn signal while the Audi side assist is active, the steering will be corrected noticeably just before you cross the lane demarcation if the Audi side assist detects vehicles approaching quickly or travelling at about the same speed as your own vehicle and judges the situation to be critical. This intervention is intended to keep the vehicle in the lane.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 112* to ⇨ *page 115*.
- The system initiates a corrective steering input to warn you that the vehicle is about to leave the lane. It is always the driver's responsibility to keep in the lane.
- In certain situations, e.g. during heavy braking, the system may not correct the steering. Be prepared to assume control at all times.

Note

- Always leave your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
- The steering will not be corrected and the steering wheel will not vibrate if the system detects a situation where it is clear that an overtaking manoeuvre is intended.
- The display in the **Driver assist** screen appears only if it was called up on the onboard computer ⇨ *page 21* / ⇨ *page 22*.

Switching off/on

Applies to: vehicles with lane departure warning

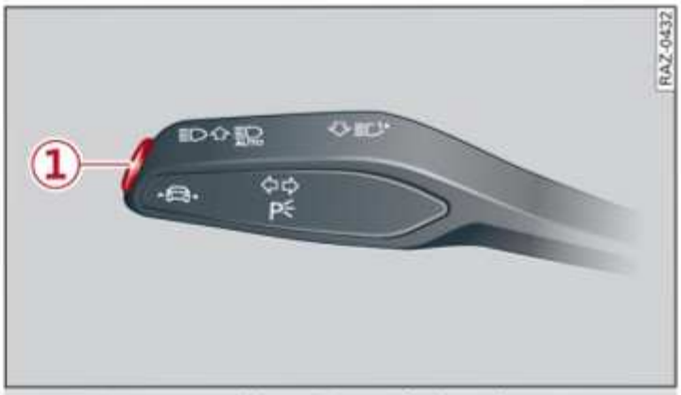


Fig. 109 Turn signal lever: Button for lane departure warning and lane guidance function of adaptive cruise assist*

▸ Press the button ① on the turn signal lever to switch the system on/off. The indicator lamp / in the instrument cluster will go out or light up.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 112* to ⇨ *page 115*.

Note

If the lane departure warning is switched off, it will be automatically activated again the next time you switch on the ignition[1)].

Adjusting lane departure warning settings

Applies to: vehicles with lane departure warning

You can switch the additional steering wheel vibration warning from the lane departure warning system on/off. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

– Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Driver assist** > **Lane departure warning** > **Vibration warning**.

1) Varies depending on country and model

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with lane departure warning

If  or  is displayed in the event of a fault, the lane departure warning function and the lane guidance function of the adaptive cruise assist are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or the camera may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the camera ⇨ *page 115, Fig. 90* and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Audi pre sense

Overview

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

The Audi pre sense functions can take action to protect the vehicle occupants and other road users in certain situations within the system limits. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, various Audi pre sense systems may be fitted:

- The **Audi pre sense basic** system can react in unstable driving situations (e.g. if the vehicle oversteers/understeers), or in the event of emergency/preventative braking.
- The **Audi pre sense front** system can detect an impending frontal collision and can react by giving warnings, applying the brakes and activating protective functions for the safety of the occupants.
- The **Audi pre sense rear** system monitors the traffic travelling behind the vehicle and can react to an impending rear-end collision.

Audi pre sense protective functions

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

Depending on the vehicle's speed and equipment, the following functions may be activated in certain situations:

- Visual and acoustic warnings.
- Activation of hazard warning lights.
- Activation of reversible front seat belt tensioners.
- Automatic closing of windows and panorama sun roof.
- Additional protective functions provided by the individual systems.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 112* to ⇨ *page 115*.

Note

- Only some of the protective functions may be activated depending on the hazard situation and the Audi drive select* mode selected. Some functions may be modified or skipped.
- Audi pre sense may also be restricted or unavailable in situations such as the following:
  - If the occupants are not wearing seat belts.
  - After the ignition is switched on while the indicator lamp  /  is lit.
  - If the vehicle is reversing.
  - If the front passenger's airbag is deactivated.
  - If there is a fault in the airbag control unit.
  - If the ESC is restricted or switched off.

Audi pre sense basic

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense basic

Audi pre sense basic is activated automatically at speeds above approx. 30 km/h. In unstable driving situations (e.g. if the vehicle oversteers/understeers) or in the event of emergency/preventative braking, Audi pre sense basic can activate the protective functions of Audi pre sense.

The driver message **Audi pre sense**  /  draws your attention to danger.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 112* to ⇨ *page 115*.

Audi pre sense front

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense front

In certain situations, Audi pre sense front can give a warning if there is a danger of a frontal collision, and can apply the brakes firmly if necessary. The system uses the data from the front radar sensor and is active at speeds above approx. 5 km/h.

Driving situations

The system can react to certain events, depending on how quickly the vehicle is travelling.

The system can react to the following events up to a speed of approx 85 km/h:

- You approach a stationary vehicle.
- A pedestrian[1] or cyclist[1] crosses the vehicle's path while moving into your lane[2].
- A pedestrian[1] or cyclist[1] is moving forwards in your lane in the same direction as you.[2]

The system can react to the following events up to a speed of approx 250 km/h:

- A vehicle ahead brakes significantly.
- You approach a much slower vehicle from behind.
- You approach a stopped vehicle (the system is only capable of reacting if it previously detected that this vehicle was moving in the same direction as you).

Advance warning

The system can warn the driver of hazards it detects at road speeds of approx. 30 km/h and above. **Audi pre sense** / will appear in the instrument cluster and a warning tone will sound.

Brake jolt

In the event of an impending collision with another vehicle, an acute warning may also be given in the form of a brake jolt. In addition, your attention is drawn to the danger in the instrument cluster display. You may need to take evasive action or brake hard to avoid a collision.

Automatic brake pressure increase

If you do not brake hard enough in the event of an impending collision, the brake pressure may be increased automatically in certain situations.

Automatic braking

If you do not respond to the acute warning, the system can, subject to general system limitations, apply the brakes with increasing force in order to take the impact out of a potential collision.

If the vehicle has been braked to a standstill, / **Please take control!** will appear in the instrument cluster and you must take control of the vehicle.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 112* to ⇨ *page 115*.
- The protection provided by Audi pre sense front is still subject to the prevailing physical limits. It is a driver assist function and cannot prevent a collision in every situation. The driver must always intervene personally. It is always the driver's responsibility to brake in good time. Do not let the extra safety provided tempt you into taking any risks when driving – this can cause accidents.
- Among other things, Audi pre sense front does not react to stationary/stopped, oncoming or diagonally crossing persons/cyclists, groups of people, animals, crossing and oncoming traffic or objects such as poles, fences and railbound vehicles.
- Audi pre sense may be restricted or unavailable in corners or after dark.
- Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of accident! Stow objects away safely while the vehicle is moving.

1) Not available on vehicles for some markets.

2) The speed range may vary from country to country

– Ensure that all occupants have their seat belts fastened correctly and are seated properly as described in this manual ⇨ *page 49*.
– If the brakes are applied automatically when towing a trailer, the behaviour of the trailer under braking may be different than usual.

Note

Certain functions of the system may not be available when the ESC is restricted or switched off ⇨ *page 101* or when a fault has occurred.

Audi pre sense rear

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense rear

Audi pre sense rear uses the data from the radar sensors fitted at the rear corners of the vehicle to calculate the probability of a collision with the vehicle behind, within certain system limits.

The protective functions of the Audi pre sense system may be activated if it detects a collision risk from the vehicle behind.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 112* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– Audi pre sense rear does not react to people, animals, intersecting traffic or objects that are not recognised as vehicles.

Note

– The functions of the Audi pre sense rear system are deactivated if towing mode is detected. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be switched off automatically.
– The functions of the Audi pre sense rear system may be deactivated if a fault develops in the Audi side assist.

Adjusting Audi pre sense settings

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

You can switch Audi pre sense and the associated systems on/off and change the settings. The available settings depend on the vehicle equipment and can only be adjusted when the vehicle is stationary.

▸ Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Driver assist** > **Audi pre sense**.

Setting the advance warning

You can set the warning time for the advance warning[1] (**early/medium/late**) or switch the advance warning off.

Start by setting the advance warning to **early**. If you then find that the system warns you earlier than desired, you can set the advance warning to **medium**. The advance warning should only be set to **late** in exceptional cases.

Note

– If the Audi pre sense system is switched off, it will be automatically activated again the next time you switch on the ignition.
– Switch off Audi pre sense on private roads and if the vehicle is being towed away or loaded onto a car transporter, train or ferry, etc. This prevents the Audi pre sense system from taking action in an inappropriate situation.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

/ Audi pre sense: fault. Please contact workshop

This message appears if the functions of the Audi pre sense system are impaired. An impairment can occur, for example, if a sensor fails. If the message remains displayed permanently, drive ▶

[1] Depending on country

to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

/ Audi pre sense: currently restricted. Sensor view restricted due to surroundings.

This message appears if the radar sensor vision is impaired, e.g. by leaves, snow, heavy road spray or dirt. If necessary, clean the sensor ⇨ *page 115*.

/ Audi pre sense: currently restricted

This message appears in certain situations, e.g. when the ESC is partially or fully deactivated.

/ Audi pre sense: currently restricted. See owner's manual

This driver message appears if one or more subsystems, such as the ESC, fails temporarily. If the message is displayed several times, drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

/ Audi pre sense: emergency braking system off

This message appears if the functions of the Audi pre sense system are deactivated via the infotainment system or if the system is not available.

Audi side assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

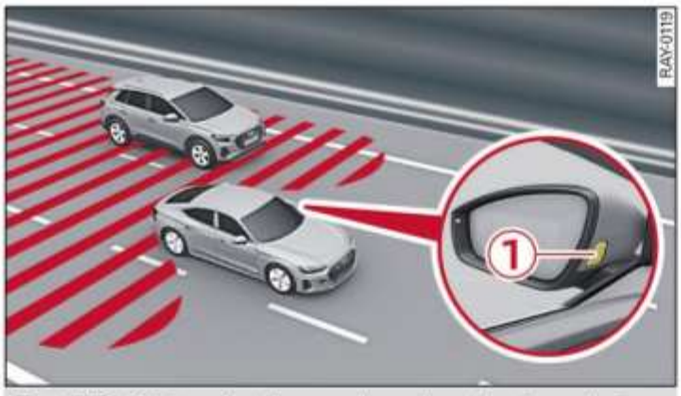


Fig. 110 Driving situations and warning signal on exterior mirror

How it works

The Audi side assist function monitors the blind spot and the traffic behind your vehicle and helps you when changing lane. If the system detects an approaching object which it judges to be critical, the warning signal ① lights up on the exterior mirror on the corresponding side of the vehicle.

Driving situations

The Audi side assist function is active at speeds above approx. 15 km/h and can detect situations such as the following:

- Your vehicle is being overtaken by another vehicle. The faster this vehicle approaches from behind, the earlier the warning signal will appear on the exterior mirror.
- There are vehicles travelling at a similar speed in the next lane. The warning signal will appear on the exterior mirror by the time the detected object is in your blind spot.
- You are overtaking another vehicle slowly. If the speed differential between the two vehicles is not greater than 15 km/h, the warning signal will appear on the exterior mirror.

Information mode

As long as you have not activated a turn signal, the system informs you of objects which it judges to be critical by activating the warning signal on the corresponding exterior mirror ①.

The intensity of the warning signal in this information mode is kept relatively low, so that it does not distract you while you are looking at the road in front.

Warning mode

As soon as you activate a turn signal, the system warns you of objects which it judges to be critical by flashing the warning signal on the corresponding exterior mirror.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, if other driver assist systems detect that you are in danger of leaving your lane, the warning signal may flash to warn you of objects which the system judges to be critical, even if you have not activated a turn signal. The system may initiate a corrective steering input as an additional warning ⇨ *page 135, Lane departure warning*.

System limitations

The system uses the data from the radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle ⇨ *page 115,* ▶

Fig. 91. The sensors are designed for normal lane widths and monitor the lanes immediately to the left and right of your vehicle. In certain situations it is possible that the system may react to vehicles in your own lane or two lanes away, or to objects at the edge of the lane. The warning signal then lights up even though there are no vehicles in the critical area. Such situations may include:

– When driving at the edge of your own lane
– When driving in narrow lanes
– When driving through a corner
– If there are high barriers next to the lane
– When driving through roadworks

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 112* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– The warning signal may not light up in time if other vehicles are approaching very quickly, or if you are overtaking other vehicles quickly.

Note

– The warning signals on the exterior mirrors may not be properly visible if tinted foil is affixed to the side windows on the driver's or passenger's side.
– The system is not available in towing mode. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the system may not be switched off automatically. This function must not be used when towing a trailer.
– The area covered by the sensors ⇨ *Fig. 110* is an example and does not represent the range of the sensors to scale.

Adjusting the Audi side assist

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

You can switch the Audi side assist on/off or adjust the individual settings. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

▸ Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Driver assist** > **Audi side assist**.

Available settings:

The **brightness** of the warning lamp can be adjusted. When you change the brightness, the warning signal on the exterior mirror will light up briefly with the intensity set for the information mode. Adjust the brightness of the warning signal so that it does not distract you while you are looking at the road in front. Because the display brightness is automatically adjusted in accordance with the ambient light level, it is possible that the display may already have been automatically adjusted to the lowest or highest setting. The intensity of the lamp in the warning mode is linked to the intensity in the information mode and is adjusted automatically.

Note

– If the system is switched on, the warning signals on the exterior mirrors light up briefly every time the ignition is switched on.
– The rear cross-traffic assist is activated/deactivated when you switch the side assist on/off ⇨ *page 149*.
– The side assist is not active while the settings are being adjusted.
– Your personal settings are stored automatically and assigned to the remote control key which is being used.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

If  or  is displayed in the event of a fault, the functions of the Audi side assist are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the sensors on the rear corners of the vehicle ⇨ *page 115* and attempt to switch the system on again later. ▶

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Emergency assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with emergency assist

How it works

The emergency assist can detect if the driver is inactive within certain system limits. The system issues a warning in such cases and, if necessary, takes over operation of the vehicle to bring it automatically to a standstill in the same lane.

Availability of the emergency assist

- The emergency assist is available automatically, irrespective of speed, when the adaptive cruise assist with lane guidance* is active.
- If the adaptive cruise assist has been switched on but is not activated, the system is only active if the vehicle is travelling at more than approx. 65 km/h and the lane departure warning is switched on and ready to give warnings.
- The emergency assist is not available when the adaptive cruise assist is switched off.
- If any of the requirements for the adaptive cruise assist or lane departure warning are no longer met, the functionality of the system may be restricted or it may be deactivated automatically.

Functions of the emergency assist

Phased measures can be taken. The vehicle can intervene within the limits of the system. The measures which can be taken depend on the hazard situation and the equipment fitted in your vehicle:

- Visual and acoustic warnings
- Vehicle guidance
- Gradual reduction in vehicle speed
- Seat belt jolt
- Brake jolt
- The hazard warning lights will be activated[1].
- The brakes are applied and the vehicle is brought to a standstill
- As soon as the vehicle is stationary, the parking brake will be applied.

Display

If is displayed, for instance, the emergency assist's lane guidance is active.

Overriding the emergency assist

You can override the emergency assist as follows ⇨ ⚠:

- Move the steering wheel, or
- Press the brake pedal, or
- Press the accelerator firmly, or
- Switch off the adaptive cruise assist and the lane departure warning.

Driver messages

If , , or is displayed in the event of a fault, the emergency assist functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 115* and attempt to switch the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 112* to ⇨ *page 115*.
- The emergency assist is a system which is designed to help (in an emergency only) by taking control of the vehicle and bringing it to a stop.

Note

Only some of the measures may be activated depending on the hazard situation detected. Some functions may be modified or skipped.

[1] This function is not available on all models or export versions.

Parking and manoeuvring

Introduction

Depending on the equipment fitted on your vehicle, you may be provided with assistance by various parking aids when you are parking and manoeuvring the vehicle.

Parking aids

The **rear parking aid** gives you an acoustic warning if there are any obstacles behind the car ⇨ *page 144*.

When you are parking, the **parking system plus** warns you acoustically and visually about obstacles detected in front of, behind and beside* the vehicle ⇨ *page 145*.

The **reversing camera** uses the centre display to show a picture of the area behind the vehicle captured by the camera. Orientation lines in the image from the reversing camera assist you when parking and manoeuvring ⇨ *page 148*.

The **rear cross-traffic assist** can warn you about traffic approaching from either side while you are reversing or leaving a parking space ⇨ *page 149*.

Assisted parking

The **park assist** helps you to find suitable parking spaces and to manoeuvre the vehicle into and out of them. The park assist takes over the steering when parking in empty parking spaces. The driver must still accelerate, brake and change gears as necessary. The driver must always keep an eye on the area around the vehicle and monitor the parking/unparking manoeuvre ⇨ *page 150*.

Available settings

The parking aid functions can be adjusted individually. The settings available depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

– **Rear volume** ⇨ *page 144*
– **Automatic activation** ⇨ *page 145*
– **Front/rear volume** ⇨ *page 146*
– **Entertainment fader** ⇨ *page 146*
– **Trailer view** ⇨ *page 149*
– **Rear cross-traffic assist** ⇨ *page 149*

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 112* to ⇨ *page 115*.

Note

To familiarise yourself with the systems, Audi recommends that you practise parking in a quiet location or a car park. The weather and light conditions should be good.

Rear parking aid

Applies to: vehicles with rear parking aid

How it works

The rear parking aid is an acoustic parking system. When the rear sensors (in the rear bumper) ⇨ *page 113* detect an obstacle, you are alerted by acoustic signals (beeps). The system is activated automatically when the engine is running and reverse gear is selected. When the system is activated, you will hear a brief acknowledgement tone.

Acoustic warnings

The acoustic signals sound with increasing frequency as you approach an obstacle which has been detected in the vehicle's path. A warning tone will sound continuously when the vehicle is less than approx. 0.30 m away from the obstacle. Stop reversing immediately ⇨ (!).

Adjusting the volume

You can adjust the volume as desired. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

▸ Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Driver assist** > **Parking aid**.

Available settings:

Rear volume – Volume for the rear zone.

Entertainment fader – The volume of the current audio or video source is reduced when the parking aid is activated. ▶

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 112* to ⇨ *page 115*.
- Sensors have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

CAUTION

Remember to maintain sufficient clearance from the kerb to avoid damaging the wheel rims.

Note

- The volume of the warning beeps will be reduced after a few seconds until it is muted if the vehicle remains at a constant distance from a detected obstacle (but not if the obstacle is closer than 0.30 m). If the tone is muted and the obstacle is closer than before, the tone will sound again. If the tone is muted and the obstacle is further away than before, no tone will sound. Please watch the area surrounding the vehicle when driving off.
- A distance warning will NOT be given if the system detects that a trailer is being towed. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be deactivated automatically.

Parking system plus

Activating/deactivating

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus



Fig. 111 Centre console: Button for parking aid

How it works

The parking system plus will help you when parking and manoeuvring the vehicle by providing warnings about any obstacles detected. If an obstacle is detected by the ultrasonic sensors on the vehicle ⇨ *page 113*, you are informed of this by acoustic and visual warnings.

Activating/deactivating

Important: The vehicle must be travelling at under 10 km/h.

- Press the P button in the centre console. When you activate the system, you will hear a brief acknowledgement tone and the LED in the button will light up.

Automatic activation

- The system is activated automatically when the engine is running and reverse gear is selected. You will hear a brief acknowledgement tone.
- The parking aid is activated automatically if the vehicle approaches an obstacle when driving forwards at under 10 km/h if **Automatic activation** is selected on the MMI. The acoustic signals are not emitted until the obstacle is well within range of the sensors.
- To switch **automatic activation** on/off, select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Driver assist** > **Parking aid** > **Activate automatically**, or: ▶

▸ Select the right control button* > **Activate automatically** on the infotainment system when the parking aid is activated.

Automatic deactivation

The distance indicator for the parking system plus is deactivated automatically when you drive forwards at over approx. 10 km/h.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 112* to ⇨ *page 115*.

CAUTION

Remember to maintain sufficient clearance from the kerb to avoid damaging the wheel rims.

Note

If the parking aid is deactivated, it is only reactivated automatically if one of the following conditions has been met:

– The vehicle is driven faster than 10 km/h.
– The ignition is switched off and on again.
– The parking brake is applied and released again.
– Automatic gearbox: Transmission position P has been selected and then another position has been selected.

Warnings

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus



Fig. 112 Centre display: Proximity graphic

When the sensors detect an obstacle, you will be alerted by acoustic signals (beeps) and a visual display.

Visual warnings

The visual warnings on the centre display help you to see the critical area around the vehicle and to estimate the distance to an obstacle.

Red segments ① represent objects detected within the path of travel. The red lines ② indicate the anticipated path of travel, depending on the steering wheel angle. A white segment ③ indicates an obstacle that has been detected outside the path of travel. The closer the vehicle gets to the obstacle, the closer the segments move towards the vehicle in the graphic. At the latest when the penultimate segment is highlighted the vehicle has reached the danger (collision) zone. Obstacles within the danger (collision) zone are shown in red, even if they are beyond the path of travel. Stop moving immediately.

Acoustic warnings

The acoustic signals sound with increasing frequency as you approach an obstacle which has been detected in the vehicle's path. A warning tone will sound continuously when the vehicle is less than approx. 0.30 m away from the obstacle. A continuous warning tone will also sound if there is an obstacle less than approx. 0.20 m from the side* of the vehicle; in this case, you should not drive forward or reverse any further ⇨ ⓘ.

Adjusting the volume

You can adjust the volume as desired. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

▸ Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Driver assist** > **Parking aid**, or:
▸ Select the right control button* on the infotainment system when the parking aid is activated.

Available settings:

Front volume – Volume for the front and side* zones.

Rear volume – Volume for the rear zone. ▶

Entertainment fader – The volume of the current audio or video source is reduced when the parking aid is activated.

Fault warnings

If P appears, a sensor in the corresponding area or the loudspeaker is faulty. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified. The LED in the P button may flash in addition when the system is activated.

If P or P is displayed in the event of a fault, the parking system functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 115* and attempt to switch the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 112* to ⇨ *page 115*.
- The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

CAUTION

- Remember to maintain sufficient clearance from the kerb to avoid damaging the wheel rims.
- Applies to vehicles with park assist: In short parking spaces, the parking aid warning tone will sound continuously when the vehicle is less than approx. 0.20 m away from the obstacle. Stop moving immediately!

Note

- The segments in the side zone* are detected and evaluated as the vehicle moves past. When you switch the ignition off and on again or open the door, or after the vehicle has been stationary for a while, the ambient surroundings may have changed. In this case, the side zone* will be displayed in black until it has been scanned and evaluated.
- The volume of the warning beeps will be reduced after a few seconds until it is muted if the vehicle remains at a constant distance from a detected obstacle (but not if the obstacle is closer than 0.30 m). If the tone is muted and the obstacle is closer than before, the tone will sound again. If the tone is muted and the obstacle is further away than before, no tone will sound. Please watch the area surrounding the vehicle when driving off.
- There is no rear or side* distance warning if the system detects that a trailer is being towed. However, the system will still give a warning when obstacles are detected while driving forwards. The proximity graphic will switch over to towing mode. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be deactivated automatically.

Reversing camera

Activating/deactivating

Applies to: vehicles with reversing camera

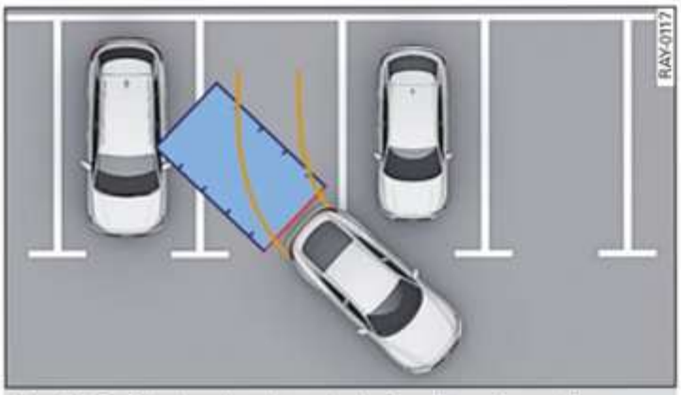


Fig. 113 Display showing orientation lines for parking



Fig. 114 Centre console: Button for parking aid

The **reversing camera** assists you by displaying orientation lines when you are parking or manoeuvring the vehicle.

Activating/deactivating

▸ Press the P button in the centre console. When you activate the system, you will hear a brief acknowledgement tone and the LED in the button will light up.

The system can be activated at low speeds, for example when manoeuvring.

Automatic activation

The system is activated automatically when the engine is running and reverse gear is selected. You will hear a brief acknowledgement tone.

Automatic deactivation

▸ The system is deactivated automatically as soon as the vehicle exceeds a certain speed when driving forwards.

WARNING

Please observe the safety warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in Activating/deactivating on page 146.*

Warnings

Applies to: vehicles with reversing camera

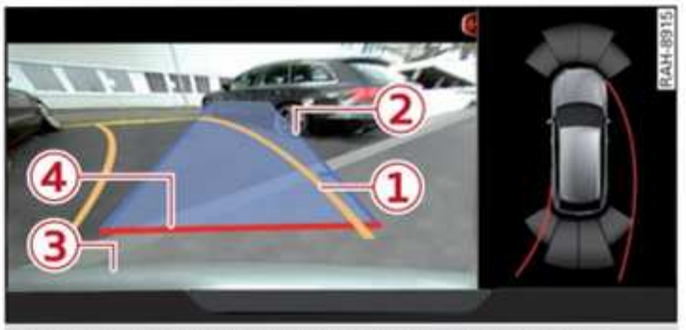
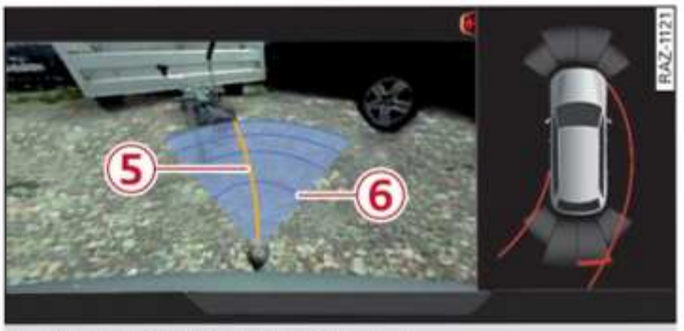


Fig. 115 Centre display: Approaching a parking space



Applies to: vehicles with trailer view

Fig. 116 Centre display: Trailer view

When using the reversing camera to help you park, the acoustic and visual warnings from the parking system plus will provide you with further guidance ⇨ *page 146*.

Visual orientation lines

① The orange orientation lines represent the path of the vehicle ⇨ ⓘ. Turn the steering wheel until the orange orientation lines are pointing towards the parking space.

② You can estimate the distance to an obstacle by referring to the blue markings. Each marking is equivalent to approx. 1 metre. The blue area is an extension of the vehicle outline to the rear of the vehicle.

③ You can see the rear bumper at the bottom of the display.

④ You should stop reversing, at the latest, when the red orientation line is bordering on an obstacle. ▶

Trailer view

Applies to: vehicles with trailer view

The trailer view ⇨ *Fig. 116* helps you to position the vehicle in front of a trailer.

– Select the right control button* > **Trailer view** on the infotainment system when the parking aid is activated.

You can now position your vehicle in front of the trailer. The orange orientation line ⑤ ⇨ *Fig. 116* indicates the anticipated path of the tow-bar. You can use the blue markings ⑥ to estimate the distance to the trailer hitch. Each marking is equivalent to approx. 0.3 m. The width of the blue area represents the maximum angle to which the steering wheel can be turned.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 112* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

CAUTION

– The orange orientation lines ① show the path of the rear end of the vehicle if you were to reverse using the current steering angle. Please note that the front end of the vehicle swings out further than the rear. Please make sure you keep a sufficient distance between the vehicle and any obstacles to make sure that the exterior mirror or edge of the vehicle do not collide with the obstacles.
– Remember to maintain sufficient clearance from the kerb to avoid damaging the wheel rims.
– Only use the reversing camera when the boot lid is completely closed. Please make sure that there are no objects mounted to the rear end of the vehicle which could block the view of the reversing camera.

Note

There is no rear or side* distance warning if the system detects that a trailer is being towed. However, the system will still give a warning when obstacles are detected while driving forwards. The proximity graphic will switch over to towing mode. The image of the reversing camera will then be shown without orientation lines and blue area markings. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be deactivated automatically.

Rear cross-traffic assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with rear cross-traffic assist

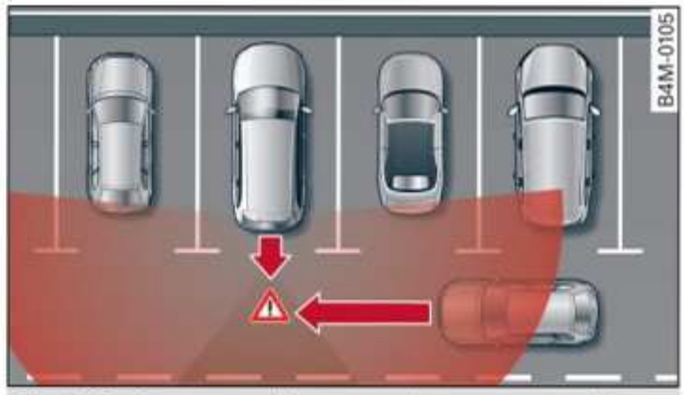


Fig. 117 Areas covered by sensors for rear cross-traffic assist



Fig. 118 Centre display: Rear cross-traffic assist display

How it works

The rear cross-traffic assist uses the radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle to monitor the area behind and to the side of the vehicle. The system can detect moving objects, such as cars, as they approach the vehicle ⇨ *Fig. 117*. When driving out of a parking space, you are assisted by the centre display and various warnings. ▶

Requirements for the use of the rear cross-traffic assist:

– The parking aid must be activated ⇨ *page 145*.
– The vehicle must not be reversing faster than approx. 12 km/h.

Displays, warnings and braking

– **Display**: The arrows ⇨ *Fig. 118* only appear when the parking aid is activated. The arrows indicate the direction from which the intersecting traffic is approaching.
– **Acoustic warnings**: A tone may sound continuously as an additional signal when you are reversing.
– **Automatic brake jolt**: If the driver does not react to a warning, a short sharp application of the brakes may also warn against a potential collision with an approaching object.

The warning tone and the automatic brake jolt only occur while you are reversing.

Switching the rear cross-traffic assist on/off

The rear cross-traffic assist is switched on/off via the Audi side assist ⇨ *page 142*.

Driver messages

If , or is displayed in the event of a fault, the rear cross-traffic assist functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the sensors on the rear corners of the vehicle ⇨ *page 115, Fig. 91* and attempt to switch the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 112* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– The rear cross-traffic assist does not react to people and cannot warn you of all approaching objects, such as bicycles. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone.
– The system cannot react if objects are approaching very quickly.
– The rear cross-traffic assist does not react if the vehicle is parked at an angle or parallel to the roadside or is so far into a parking space that it is hidden by the surrounding vehicles.

Note

– After an automatic brake jolt, no further automatic brake jolt will occur for the next few seconds.
– The functions may not be available if the ESC is restricted or deactivated or if a fault has occurred.
– If the rear cross-traffic assist gives an acoustic warning signal, the parking aid may no longer be able to warn you against obstacles it has detected.
– The system is not available if towing mode is detected. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be deactivated automatically. This function must not be used when towing a trailer.
– The area covered by the sensors ⇨ *Fig. 117* is an example and does not represent the range of the sensors to scale.

Assisted parking

How it works

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

If your vehicle is equipped with the park assist, the system will help you to find suitable parking spaces. To do this, parking spaces are measured using ultrasonic sensors fitted on the sides of the vehicle.

Once a parking space has been found, the system provides assistance with parking while you monitor the area around the vehicle with the help of the parking aids and cameras*. ▶

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 112* to ⇨ *page 115*.

Parking options

Applies to: vehicles with park assist



Fig. 119 Overview of parking options

The following parking options may be available to you depending on when the system is activated:

– After using the parking space search function ① – ③ ⇨ *page 151, Finding a parking space*.
– After attempting to park the vehicle when you have started driving into the parking space yourself ④. The front of the vehicle should already be far enough inside the parking space so that the sensors can determine the size of the space.

Options for driving into a parking space

① Reversing into parallel parking spaces.
② Reversing into perpendicular parking spaces.
③ Driving forwards into perpendicular parking spaces if you have already driven past them.
④ Driving forwards into perpendicular parking spaces

Options for driving out of a parking space

① Driving out of parallel parking spaces.

Finding a parking space

Applies to: vehicles with park assist



Fig. 120 Centre console: Button for park assist



Fig. 121 Centre display: Parking space search activated

① Display showing options for parking
② Arrows and symbols indicate the driver response required while searching for a parking space (e.g. continue driving forwards or apply brakes)
③ Parking spaces detected and selected by the system

Activating the parking space search function

▸ To activate the parking space search function, press the P button in the centre console ⇨ *Fig. 120*.

The centre display will show the vehicle looking for a parking space ⇨ *Fig. 121*.

Looking for a parking space

▸ Drive slowly forwards past the line of parked cars. For the best parking result, you should maintain a distance of approx. 1 metre to the row of parked cars.
▸ The vehicle first looks for a parking space on the same side of the road. To look for a space ▶

on the other side of the road, activate the corresponding turn signal.

Selecting a parking space

When the system finds a parking space which might be long/wide enough for your vehicle, this space is displayed. The system automatically suggests an option for driving into the space ①.

If there are different options for driving into the space, you can choose one of them manually. Turn the rotary pushbutton until the desired mode ① is selected.

Starting the parking manoeuvre

Follow the visual instructions on the centre display ② to reach the correct starting position. A **P** will appear in the intended parking space ③ as soon as the vehicle reaches the correct position.

- ▸ Position the vehicle as parallel as possible to the line of parked cars or to the kerb.
- ▸ Check that the parking space is suitable for your vehicle ⇨ (!).
- ▸ Start the assisted parking manoeuvre ⇨ *page 153*.

Manoeuvring area

The vehicle may swing out during the parking manoeuvre ⇨ ⚠. A driver message may appear if there are obstacles within the manoeuvring area which may impede the parking procedure or constitute a risk (e.g. on the other side of the road). Try driving further forwards and closer to the row of parked cars, as appropriate.

⚠ WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 112* to ⇨ *page 115*.
- The driver is always responsible for safety during parking and all other manoeuvres.
- The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

(!) CAUTION

- Even parking spaces which the system has identified as being suitable may not have been detected correctly. It is the driver's responsibility to decide whether a parking space shown in the display is suitable for the vehicle.
- Certain conditions in and around the parking space (e.g. objects such as trees, posts or road surfaces such as loose gravel, snow or ice) can cause unexpected results when parking.

(i) Note

- You can activate the park assist after you have already driven past a parking space (as long as you were driving slowly enough). To do so, press the P button and operate the turn signal.
- The electronic stabilisation control (ESC) must not be switched off during the parking manoeuvre. If the ESC intervenes, the parking manoeuvre is interrupted.
- You can approach a perpendicular parking space forwards and then activate the system. However, for this purpose the front of the vehicle must already be in the space ④ ⇨ *page 151, Fig. 119* so that the sensors can measure the space.
- The park assist systems cannot be used to park the vehicle if a trailer is attached or an electrical connector is plugged into the trailer socket.
- The system is not available when certain other assist systems are switched on.
- If there are suitable parking spaces on both sides of the road (for instance on a one-way street), you can change the direction of the turn signals to park on the other side of the road, even if you have already activated the park assist.
- Assisted parking cannot be used in combination with the parking systems to park the vehicle on tight bends.

Park assist

How it works

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

Once a parking space has been found, the park assist helps you to drive the vehicle into and out of the space. The park assist steers the vehicle while you operate the accelerator and brake pedal and monitor the area around the vehicle. The park assist can be stopped at any time.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 112* to ⇨ *page 115*.
- The driver is always responsible for safety during parking and all other manoeuvres.
- Do not use the function if the vehicle cannot move freely (e.g. if it is on the jack).
- The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

CAUTION

- Do not use the park assist if you are transporting objects which project beyond the vehicle, if snow chains are fitted or if the parking space is on a slope.
- In certain situations, the park assist will guide the vehicle onto or across the kerb, for instance if other vehicles are parked on the kerb. You should always be ready to take over the steering wheel in order to prevent damage to the tyres and/or wheel rims; alternatively, you can abort the parking/unparking manoeuvre.
- When parking the vehicle in a space where there is no kerb, maintain a distance of at least 50 cm to walls and buildings to avoid any damage to the vehicle.

Note

Always observe the relevant country-specific regulations when using the park assist.

Using the park assist to park the vehicle

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

Important: A suitable parking space must have been found and selected ⇨ *page 151*. The vehicle must be stationary to begin with.

Arrows and symbols on the roof of the vehicle ② ⇨ *page 151, Fig. 121* on the centre display indicate the action required, e.g. braking or change of direction. The park assist automatically steers the vehicle into the parking space while the driver operates the pedals.

- ▸ After stopping for a moment, select reverse gear.
- ▸ Take your hands off the steering wheel.
- ▸ Watch the road. When the road is clear, press the accelerator carefully ⇨ ⚠. The maximum manoeuvring speed is approx. 7 km/h.
- ▸ Follow the instructions on the centre display and the warning tones until the parking manoeuvre is complete.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 112* to ⇨ *page 115*.
- The park assist serves as a driver assist function. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for monitoring the area around the vehicle and preventing collisions.
- The steering wheel turns rapidly on its own when parking the vehicle and leaving the space. Injury may result if a person reaches between the spokes on the steering wheel when it is turning.

Note

You can cancel the direction of travel given by the system before parking by shifting between forwards and reverse gear. The system will then calculate the further path and ▸

steering directions for the manoeuvre based on the position of the vehicle.

Using the park assist to leave a parking space

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

If the vehicle is parked parallel to the roadside, you can use the park assist to drive out of the parking space.

Arrows and symbols on the roof of the vehicle ② ⇨ *page 151, Fig. 121* on the centre display indicate the action required, e.g. braking or change of direction. The park assist automatically steers the vehicle out of the parking space while the driver operates the pedals.

- ▸ Start the engine.
- ▸ Press the P button ⇨ *page 151, Fig. 120*.
- ▸ Wait until a message appears on the centre display requesting you to specify the direction in which you wish to leave the space; this is needed to start the manoeuvre.
- ▸ Operate the appropriate turn signal.
- ▸ Check that the direction of travel of your vehicle matches the direction given by the park assist.
- ▸ Take your hands off the steering wheel.
- ▸ Watch the road. When the road is clear, press the accelerator carefully ⇨ ⚠. The maximum manoeuvring speed is 5 km/h.
- ▸ Follow the instructions on the centre display and the acoustic warning tones until the manoeuvre is complete.
- ▸ The procedure is complete when no more manoeuvring is necessary and the specified steering angle is sufficient to drive out of the space. Take over the steering ⇨ (!).

⚠ WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 112* to ⇨ *page 115*.
- The park assist serves as a driver assist function. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for monitoring the area around the vehicle and preventing collisions.
- The steering wheel turns rapidly on its own when parking the vehicle and leaving the space. Injury may result if a person reaches between the spokes on the steering wheel when it is turning.

(!) CAUTION

Take over the steering as soon as you are requested to do so after the system has completed the last manoeuvre, so that the steering wheel remains at the specified angle and is not turned back to the central position.

Stopping the park assist

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

The park assist stops automatically in the following situations:

- If you switch off the system.
- If you move the steering wheel by hand.
- If the speed becomes too high.
- If the time limit is exceeded.
- If an obstacle is detected.
- If the ESC intervenes.

Take full control of the vehicle and stop the park assist manually. Or:

- In some situations you can resume the parking manoeuvre. Press the P button in the centre console.
- To continue unparking with the park assist, switch the engine off/on. Press the P button.

⚠ WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 112* to ⇨ *page 115*.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

If the indicator lamp , or lights up, the park assist is unavailable or has been stopped.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in ▸

front of the sensors ⇨ *page 115* and attempt to switch the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Multi Media Interface

Notes on traffic safety

Audi recommends that certain infotainment functions should not be used unless the vehicle is stationary, e.g. entering a destination or connecting a mobile device. Always be prepared to stop operating the infotainment system in the interest of your own safety and that of other road users.

WARNING

- Only operate the infotainment system when the road, traffic, visibility and weather conditions allow you to do so safely and when you can maintain proper control of your vehicle – risk of accident!
- The same applies when operating your mobile device via the MMI. Do not let visual/acoustic signals from a mobile device distract your attention from the road – risk of accident!

Note

- Certain functions are not available while the vehicle is in motion.
- Certain lists, such as the radio station list, are arranged alphabetically. Lists with messages or current notifications are arranged by date.

Introduction

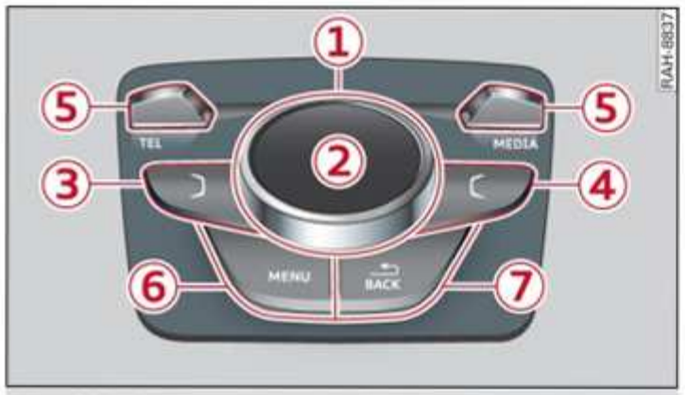


Fig. 122 MMI control console: Overview

The Multi Media Interface (MMI) combines different communication, navigation* and entertainment systems in your Audi. You can operate your MMI system via the MMI control console, the multi-function steering wheel plus* or the speech dialogue system*.

Overview of MMI control console

① Rotary pushbutton; may include joystick function* 158, 162
② MMI touch pad* 159
③ Left control button 158
④ Right control button 158
⑤ Buttons for calling up menus directly 158
⑥ MENU button 158
⑦ BACK button 158

MMI ON/OFF button with joystick function

How to use

Applies to: vehicles with ON/OFF button with joystick function



Fig. 123 MMI control console: ON/OFF button with joystick function

Switching the MMI system on/off

The MMI can be switched on/off manually.

Switching on manually

- Press the ON/OFF button ① briefly, or:
- Press the MENU button ⑥ ⇨ *page 156, Fig. 122* or one of the buttons for calling up menus directly ⑤ ⇨ *page 156, Fig. 122*.

Switching off manually

- Press and hold the ON/OFF button ① until the MMI switches off. If the MMI was switched off manually the last time it was used, it will not be switched on automatically the next time the ignition is switched on. ▶

Further functions

- **To adjust the volume**: Turn the ON/OFF button ①.
- **To mute**: Briefly press the ON/OFF button ①.
- **To select the previous/next function (e.g. radio station/track)**: Briefly press the ON/OFF button ① to the left ⏮ or right ⏭.
- **To rewind/fast forward (e.g. track)**: Press and hold the ON/OFF button ① to the right ⏭ or left ⏮.

WARNING

The audio system volume should be set at a level which enables you to hear external signals (such as the sirens of police and emergency vehicles) clearly – failure to do so could result in an accident.

Note

If the engine is switched off and the vehicle battery charge level is low, the MMI system will be switched off automatically.

Infotainment display

Switching on/off

- Press the ⏻ button to switch the infotainment display on/off.

You can operate certain functions using the MMI ON/OFF button with joystick function* when the MMI is switched on but the display is switched off ⇨ *page 156*.

Note

There may be a delay when you switch on the display.

Notes on the illustrations of the displays



Fig. 124 Infotainment system: Display version A

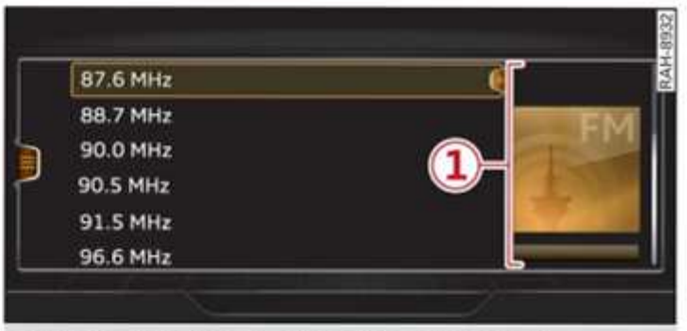


Fig. 125 Infotainment system: Display version B

The display version depends on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Additional content (e.g. album covers, maps) may be shown on display type B ①. As the other content is almost identical for both display versions, the illustrations in this Owner's Manual primarily show display version A, depending on the topic.

How to use the MMI

Selecting and confirming a function

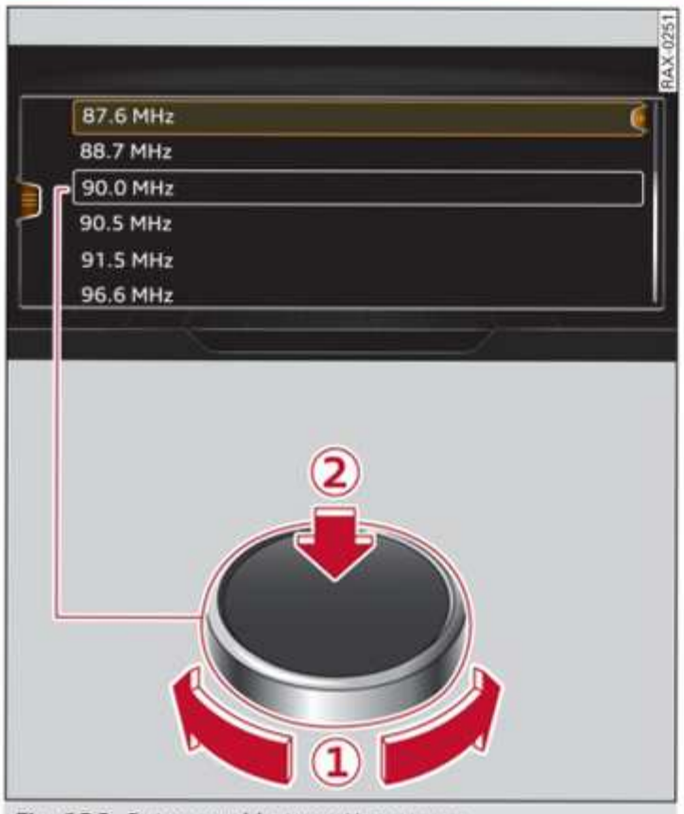


Fig. 126 Rotary pushbutton: How to use

Selecting and confirming a function in a menu/list

- **To select a function**: Turn the rotary pushbutton ① to the desired function (e.g. setting a frequency).
- **To confirm the selection**: Press the rotary pushbutton ②.

Returning to the previous function level

- Press the BACK button ⑦ ⇨ *page 156, Fig. 122*.

Calling up the main menu/menu



Fig. 127 Infotainment system: Main menu

Calling up the main menu

- Press the button marked MENU ⑥ ⇨ *page 156, Fig. 122*. The MMI menus (e.g. **Radio**) are displayed. You can then use the rotary pushbutton to select and confirm a function.

Calling up a menu directly

- Press the corresponding button to call up menus directly ⑤ ⇨ *page 156, Fig. 122* in the direction of the menu you require (e.g. RADIO). You can then use the rotary pushbutton to select and confirm a function.

Calling up the selection/options menu with the control buttons

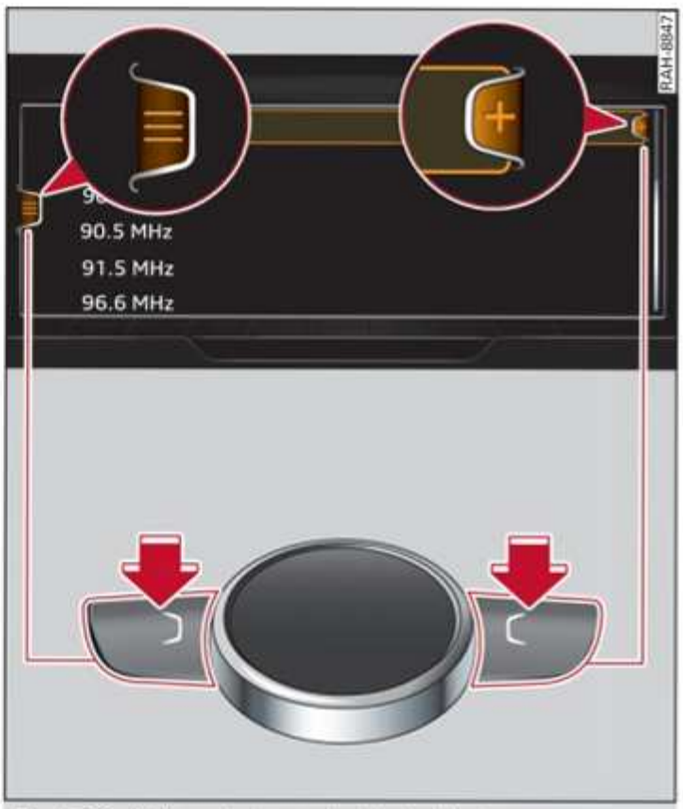


Fig. 128 MMI control console: Control buttons

Selection menu

Important: The symbol for the selection menu must be shown on the infotainment display.

You can use the selection menu to call up further functions for individual menu items (e.g. **Radio**).

Calling up the selection menu

- Press the left control button. You can then use the rotary pushbutton to select and confirm a function. ▶

Options menu

Important: The symbol for the options menu must be shown on the infotainment display.

You can use the options menu to select and confirm specific functions for individual menu items (e.g. **Radio**) and to make changes to settings.

Calling up the options menu

- Press the right control button. You can then use the rotary pushbutton to select and confirm a function.

Notes on path descriptions

The path descriptions in this manual show you at a glance how to call up the menu you require along with its settings and functions.

Example of a path description

- Select: RADIO button > left control button > **FM**.

Using a path description

- Press the RADIO button.
- Press the left control button.
- Turn the rotary pushbutton to **FM** in the menu.
- Press the rotary pushbutton to confirm **FM**.

The function you have selected and confirmed is now set. In this example, the **FM** waveband is selected.

MMI touch

MMI touch pad

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch



Fig. 129 MMI touch pad: Entering a navigation destination

You can enter data on the MMI touch pad with the help of handwriting recognition.

The MMI touch pad is located on the surface of the rotary pushbutton.

Entering letters, numbers and characters

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch



Fig. 130 Infotainment system: Display when MMI touch is active

The MMI touch pad enables information to be entered with the help of handwriting recognition. ▶

Important: A function requiring text or number input must be active and the symbol ① must be shown on the infotainment display.

Basic principle

- Use your finger to write an individual letter (capital or small letters) or numbers/symbols on the MMI touch pad. If the system positively identifies a character, it will be shown on the infotainment display ① ⇨ *page 159, Fig. 129* and may be confirmed acoustically. It will then be shown in the entry field.

Entering spaces

- Move your finger from left to right across the MMI touch pad.

Deleting characters

- Move your finger from right to left across the MMI touch pad.

Confirming an entry suggestion

- Press the rotary pushbutton.

Switching directly to the results list

- Turn the rotary pushbutton clockwise.

Entering Cyrillic characters

- Press the right control button.
- Select and confirm **Switch to Cyrillic characters**.

Opening the speller

- Select the right control button > **Open speller**. Text and numbers can be entered via the speller ⇨ *page 164*.

Moving the crosshairs

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch



Fig. 131 MMI touch pad: Moving the crosshairs

Important: A map must be displayed ⇨ *page 220*.

Displaying/hiding the crosshairs

- Press the rotary pushbutton to display the crosshairs ①, or:
- Press the MMI touch pad.
- To hide the crosshairs, press the BACK button ⑦ ⇨ *page 156, Fig. 122*.

Moving the crosshairs on the map

- Move your finger in the desired direction on the MMI touch pad while the crosshairs ① are displayed.

Moving the crosshairs quickly

- Move your finger in the desired direction on the MMI touch pad quickly while the crosshairs ① are displayed. The crosshairs will only stop moving again after a few seconds.

Moving the map

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch



Fig. 132 MMI touch pad: Moving the map

Important: A map must be displayed ⇨ *page 220*.

Displaying/hiding the crosshairs

- ▸ Press the rotary pushbutton to display the crosshairs ①.
- ▸ To hide the crosshairs, press the BACK button ⑦ ⇨ *page 156, Fig. 122*.

Moving the standard map/satellite map[1)]

- ▸ Move two fingers in the desired direction on the MMI touch pad while the crosshairs ① are displayed.

Moving the map quickly

- ▸ Move two fingers in the desired direction on the MMI touch pad quickly while the crosshairs ① are displayed. The map will only stop moving again after a few seconds.

Zooming in/out on the map

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch



Fig. 133 MMI touch pad: Zooming in/out on the map

Important: A map must be displayed ⇨ *page 220*.

Zooming in/out on the map

- ▸ Press the rotary pushbutton to display the crosshairs.
- ▸ Place two fingers on the MMI touch pad and move them apart/together.
- ▸ To hide the crosshairs, press the BACK button ⑦ ⇨ *page 156, Fig. 122*.

Adjusting the sound focus

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch

Important: The **Balance/fader*** option must be selected ⇨ *page 260*.

Moving the crosshairs for sound focus

- ▸ Move your finger in the desired direction on the MMI touch pad.

Storing the location of the crosshairs

- ▸ Press the rotary pushbutton twice, or:
- ▸ Press the BACK button ⑦ ⇨ *page 156, Fig. 122*.

1) Audi only enables you to access third-party services. We cannot guarantee that these services will be available at all times; this is the responsibility of the third-party service provider.

Rotary pushbutton with joystick function

How to use

Applies to: vehicles with rotary pushbutton with joystick function

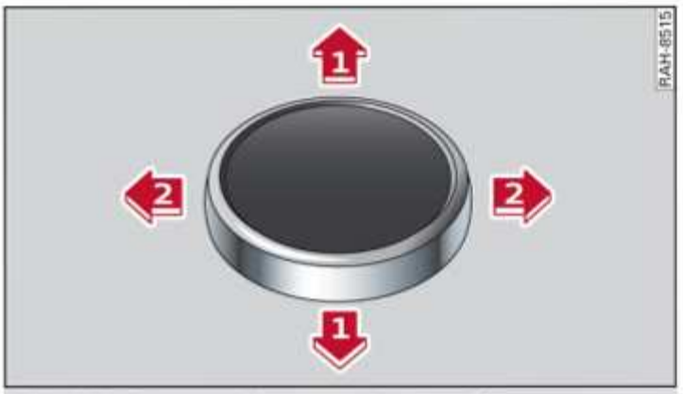


Fig. 134 Rotary pushbutton with joystick function: How to use

You can push the rotary pushbutton up/down ① or to the left/right ②.

Calling up the entertainment drawer

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch and rotary pushbutton with joystick function

Calling up the entertainment drawer

- ▸ Press the rotary pushbutton downwards to open the entertainment drawer ③ ⇨ *page 166, Fig. 138*. You can then select and confirm a function.

Closing the entertainment drawer

- ▸ Press the rotary pushbutton upwards to close the entertainment drawer, or:
- ▸ Press the BACK button ⑦ ⇨ *page 156, Fig. 122*.

Further functions

Applies to: vehicles with rotary pushbutton with joystick function

Displaying the entry field/switching to the speller

- ▸ Push the rotary pushbutton upwards to access the entry field or the beginning of a list in the central area.
- ▸ If the entry field is already open, you can switch directly to entry via the speller by pushing the rotary pushbutton upwards again ⇨ *page 164*.

On the map

Important: A map must be displayed ⇨ *page 220*.

Displaying the entry field

- ▸ Push the rotary pushbutton upwards.

Displaying the navigation screen

- ▸ If route guidance is active, you can have the route displayed by pushing the rotary pushbutton upwards ⇨ *page 215, Fig. 152*.

Zooming in/out on the map

- ▸ Turn the rotary pushbutton to the left/right to make the map scale larger or smaller.

Displaying/hiding the crosshairs

Applies to: vehicles with rotary pushbutton with joystick function without MMI touch

- ▸ Press the rotary pushbutton. The crosshairs will appear on the map.
- ▸ To hide the crosshairs, press the BACK button ⑦ ⇨ *page 156, Fig. 122*.

Moving the crosshairs

Applies to: vehicles with rotary pushbutton with joystick function without MMI touch

- ▸ With the crosshairs displayed, turn the rotary pushbutton in the direction you would like to move the crosshairs.
- ▸ Press and hold the rotary pushbutton until the crosshairs are at the desired position on the map.

Further options on the map

Refer to ⇨ *page 222*.

Adjusting the sound focus

Applies to: vehicles with rotary pushbutton with joystick function without MMI touch

Important: The balance/fader option must be selected ⇨ *page 260*.

Adjusting the sound focus using the crosshairs

The crosshairs can be moved horizontally and vertically.

- ▸ Turn the rotary pushbutton clockwise/anticlockwise to zoom in/out of the map. ▶

- To move the crosshairs vertically, press the rotary pushbutton.
- Turn the rotary pushbutton clockwise or anticlockwise.
- Press the rotary pushbutton again to save the setting.

Selecting a menu option

- Move the rotary pushbutton with joystick function up or down, or to the left or right.

Confirming your selection

- Press the rotary pushbutton.

Calling up the selection/options menu with the rotary pushbutton

Applies to: vehicles with rotary pushbutton with joystick function

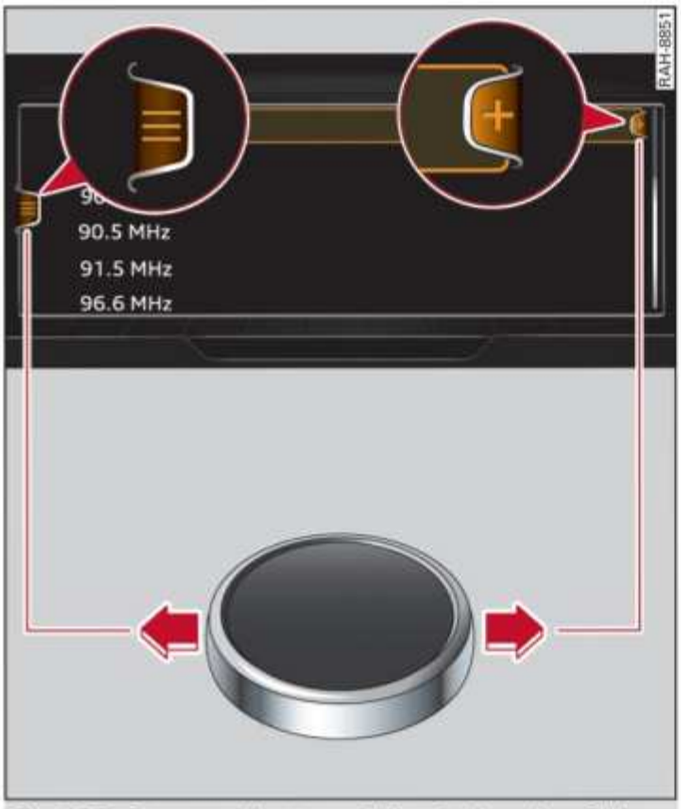


Fig. 135 Rotary pushbutton with joystick function: Calling up the selection/options menu

Calling up/closing the selection menu

Important: The symbol for the selection menu must be shown on the infotainment display.

- Push the rotary pushbutton to the left to call up the selection menu. You can then use the rotary pushbutton to select and confirm a function.
- Press the BACK button (7) ⇨ *page 156, Fig. 122* to return to the previous function.

Calling up/closing the options menu

Important: The symbol for the options menu must be shown on the infotainment display.

- Push the rotary pushbutton to the right to call up the options menu. You can then use the rotary pushbutton to select and confirm a function.
- Press the BACK button (7) ⇨ *page 156, Fig. 122* to return to the previous function.

Speller for letters/numbers

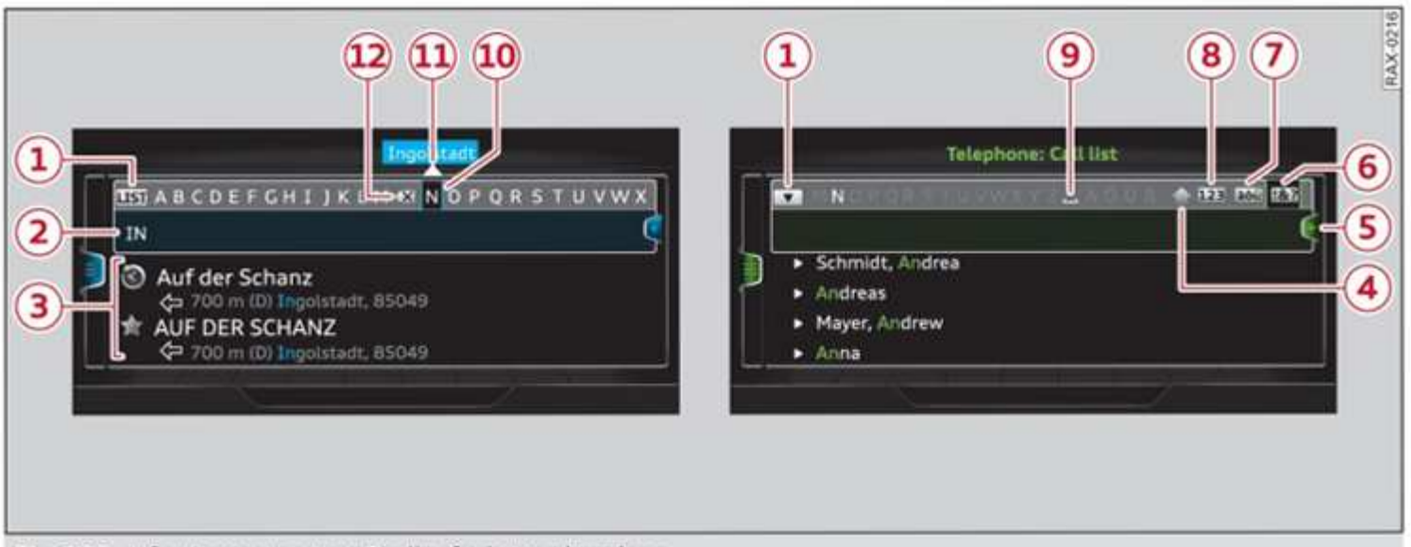


Fig. 136 Infotainment system: Speller for letters/numbers

You can use the speller for letters/numbers to enter letters, numbers and characters in the MMI. This option is available while the entry field (2) is active.

Calling up/closing the speller for letters/numbers

- Push the rotary pushbutton upwards/downwards while the entry field is active, or:
- Select the right control button > **Open speller/Close speller**.

Entering letters/numbers

- Turn the rotary pushbutton to the desired character while in the character selection line (10).
- Press the rotary pushbutton to confirm the letter/number. Your entry will appear in the entry field (2).
- When you have entered all characters, select and confirm **LIST** (1) to switch to the results list, or:
- Push the rotary pushbutton downwards.

Entering diacritics (e.g. â, ç, ñ, ö)

- Turn the rotary pushbutton to select a letter while in the character selection line (10).
- To open the corresponding set of diacritics, press and hold the rotary pushbutton.
- Turn the rotary pushbutton to select a diacritic while in the character selection line (10).
- Press the rotary pushbutton to apply the diacritic.
- To close the set of diacritics without selecting a character, press and hold the rotary pushbutton again, or:
- Select and confirm **ăõű** (7).

Deleting characters

- Select and confirm ⌫ (12).
- To delete all characters in the entry field, select ⌫ and press and hold the rotary pushbutton until all characters have been deleted.

Entering special characters

- Select and confirm **!&?** (6), **ăõű** (7) or **123** (8).
- Press the rotary pushbutton to select and confirm the special character desired (such as a hyphen or full stop).

Input help

In some cases (such as in the navigation system*), the system will suggest words* (11) to complete your entry while you are still making it.

- Push the rotary pushbutton upwards to confirm the suggestion.

Results list

In some cases (such as in the directory), the system will switch to the results list (3) automatically.

- Select and confirm a suggestion from the list. ▶

Switching between the speller and the MMI touch pad*

Important: The entry field ② must be active.

The handwriting recognition feature is automatically activated for the MMI touch pad*, which means you can simply start writing.

Overview of the symbols in the speller

The symbols of the speller for letters/numbers are explained in the following table:

	Symbol/designation	Description
①	**LIST** or ▼	To switch to the results list.
②	Entry field	The current entry is displayed. *Menu language Arabic*: A vertical line on the left/right side of the cursor indicates where the next character will be inserted.
③	Results list	A list of suggestions for the letters already entered is displayed.
④	⬆	To switch from lower case to upper case letters and vice versa. *Menu language Arabic*: To show additional Arabic characters.
⑤		To open further speller options, e.g. **Close speller**, **Clear entry field** or **Switch to Cyrillic characters**.
⑥	**!&?**	Punctuation and special characters
⑦	**ăõű**	To display diacritics (e.g. â, ç, ñ, ö) or the Cyrillic alphabet. *Menu language Arabic*: To switch between Arabic and Latin characters.
⑧	**123/ABC**	To switch the speller from letters to numbers and vice versa.
⑨	⎵	To enter a space in the entry field.
⑩	Character selection	The character selected will be highlighted.
⑪	▲	The suggested word* can be accepted by pushing the rotary push-button upwards.
⑫	⌫	To delete the character to the left of the cursor. *Menu language Arabic*: Note the direction of writing.

Note

Diacritics are not available for every letter.

Search function

Applies to: vehicles with search function



Fig. 137 Infotainment system: Search function

You can enter search terms in any order using the search function.

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the search function may be available in the **Car**, **Radio**, **Media**, **Telephone**, **Navigation** and **Audi connect** menus.

Calling up the search function

- Select: MENU button > *desired menu item* (e.g. **Telephone**).
- Turn the rotary pushbutton anti-clockwise until the entry field ① for the **search function** is displayed, or
- Push the rotary pushbutton upwards to call up the entry field ①. ▶

The handwriting recognition feature is automatically activated for the MMI touch pad*, which means you can simply start writing.

Searching for an entry

▸ Enter one or more search terms in the entry field in any order. The individual search terms must be separated by spaces.

The system may make suggestions to complete your entry* ③ depending on what you have entered. Further entries containing the search terms entered will be displayed in the list of results ②.

If the desired term is not yet displayed, continue entering letters until it appears.

The first few letters of the search terms will often be sufficient to bring up a list of results. In the **Telephone*** menu, for example, write the initials of the contact you are looking for, separating them with a space.

Confirming an autocomplete suggestion

Important: An autocomplete suggestion* ③ must be displayed.

▸ **When using MMI touch***: Press the rotary pushbutton.

Using an entry from the results list

Important: At least one entry must be displayed in the results list ②.

Entry via the MMI touch pad*

▸ Turn the rotary pushbutton clockwise.
▸ Select an entry from the list and confirm it.

Making an entry using the speller

▸ Select and confirm **LIST** ① ⇨ *page 164, Fig. 136*, or:
▸ Push the rotary pushbutton downwards.
▸ Select an entry from the list and confirm it.

Menus and symbols

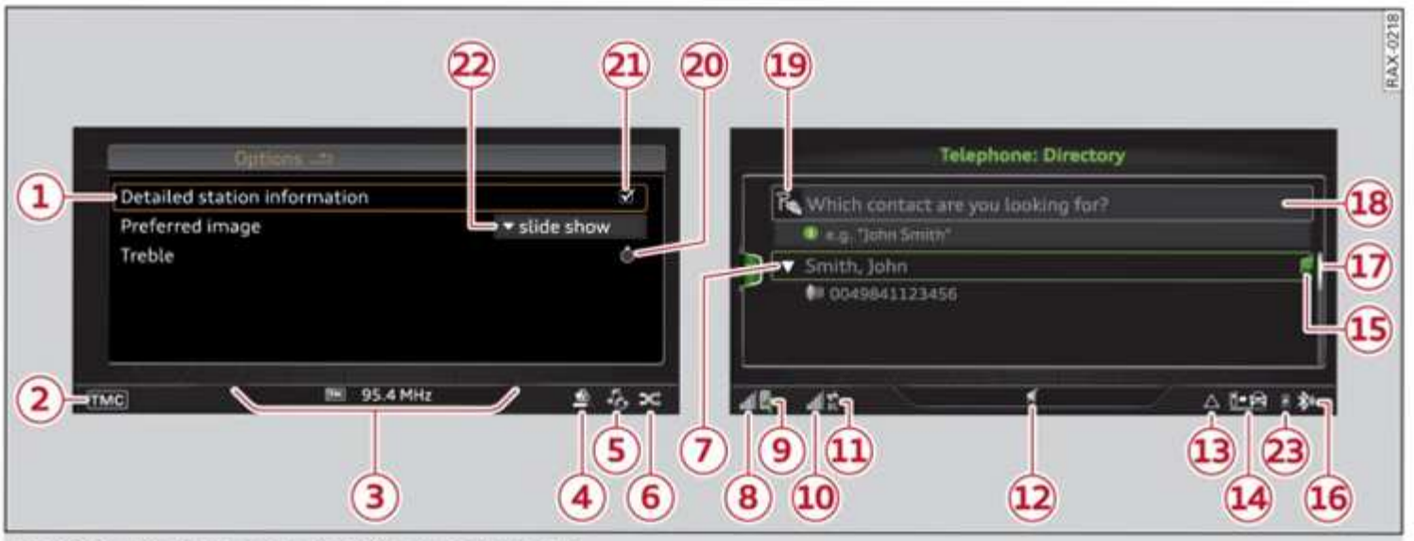


Fig. 138 Infotainment system: Menus and symbols

The following menus and symbols are displayed, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

	Symbol/designation	Description
①	Selected option	Selected function
②	TMC	Reception of TMC/online traffic information ⇨ *page 226*

	Symbol/designation	Description
③	Entertainment drawer	Information on the media source currently selected or an event (e.g. a call) is displayed. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, you may be able to operate functions (e.g. tuning to a radio station, answering a call) via the open entertainment drawer ⇨ *page 162*.
④	Jukebox import process	Copying audio/video files to the jukebox ⇨ *page 237*
⑤	Repeat track	The track currently playing will be repeated ⇨ *page 248*
⑥	Random playback	All tracks in the playlist will be played in random order ⇨ *page 248*
⑦	Arrow	Information can be called up by pressing the rotary pushbutton when text is highlighted
⑧	Signal strength bars for telephone	Reception strength for the telephone
⑨	Exclamation mark on the telephone	Indicates missed calls
⑩	Signal strength bars for data connection	Reception strength of the active connection, or **PIN**: Enter the PIN code **PUK**: Enter the PUK code **SIM**: Insert the SIM card
⑪	2G/3G/LTE	Network coverage of the active connection ⇨ *page 204* **2G**: GSM network **3G**: UMTS network **LTE**: LTE network
⑫	Mute function	Audio source muted ⇨ *page 261*
⑬	Roaming	Connected mobile phone/SIM card inserted in SIM card reader or embedded SIM card has left its mobile network
⑭	Import procedure	Import/update of contacts in the directory/call list
⑮	Options menu	Select and confirm specific functions for individual menu items and make changes to settings.
⑯	Bluetooth	Bluetooth device connected ⇨ *page 238*/⇨ *page 182*
⑰	Scrolling bar	Signifies a long list. You can move within lists by turning the rotary pushbutton
⑱	Entry field	Entries that can be changed using the speller for letters/numbers ⇨ *page 164* or the MMI touch pad ⇨ *page 159*
⑲	MMI touch	Can be used via the MMI touch pad.
⑳	Rotary control	Settings for the selected function can be made by turning the rotary pushbutton
㉑	Checkbox	You can switch certain functions on ☑ or off ☐ by pressing the rotary pushbutton.
㉒	Selection list	Settings for the selected function that can be called up by pressing the rotary pushbutton
㉓	Battery	Battery charge level of the connected mobile phone during wireless charging

Multi-function steering wheel plus

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with multi-function steering wheel plus

You can use the multi-function steering wheel plus* in conjunction with the driver information system to control many of the infotainment functions via the display in the instrument cluster ⇨ *page 17*.

Further infotainment functions can be controlled using the MMI control console in conjunction with the infotainment display ⇨ *page 156*.

⚠ WARNING

Please direct your full attention to the road at all times! As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. For this reason, you should only use the functions in a manner that allows you to maintain control of the vehicle in all situations – accident risk!

Radio

Applies to: vehicles with multi-function steering wheel plus and radio

Important: Radio mode must be activated ⇨ *page 229*, and the radio/media tab must be displayed.

Calling up the menu

▸ Select the following on the multi-function steering wheel: left control button > ⇨ *page 18*.

The following functions are available on the driver information system, depending on the vehicle equipment:

Selecting a waveband

▸ Select and confirm a waveband.

Tuning to a station from the station list

▸ Select and confirm a radio station.

Selecting a station from the favourites list

▸ Select and confirm **Favourites** > *desired radio station*.

Calling up a media source

▸ Select and confirm **To media**.

Further settings

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

▸ Select: right control button > *desired entry*.

The following settings are available depending on which function is selected:

– **Detailed station information**: See ⇨ *page 233*.

Media

Applies to: vehicles with multi-function steering wheel plus and media

Important: A media drive must contain audio/video* files ⇨ *page 236*, and the radio/media tab must be displayed.

Calling up the menu

▸ Select the following on the multi-function steering wheel: left control button > ⇨ *page 18*.

The following functions are available on the driver information system, depending on the vehicle equipment:

Selecting a media source

▸ Select and confirm a media source, for example SD card.

Playing an audio/video file

▸ Select and confirm a track/file.

Pausing/resuming playback

▸ Press the right thumbwheel ③ ⇨ *page 24, Fig. 11*.
▸ To continue playback, press the right thumbwheel again.

Switching to radio

Applies to: vehicles with analogue instrument cluster

▸ Select and confirm a waveband (for example **FM**). ▶

Switching to radio

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

▸ Select and confirm **To radio**.

Calling up detailed track information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

▸ Select the right control button > **Detailed track information**.

For more information, please refer to ⇨ *page 248*.

Note

– The MMI media drives will not play DRM-protected files; these files are marked with the symbol.
– Please note that when you are using the driver information system to control playback within a media source, only the playlist selected on the MMI control console can be played ⇨ *page 246*.
– Note the information on the infotainment display. It may be necessary to use the MMI control console to operate certain functions.

Telephone

Applies to: vehicles with multi-function steering wheel plus and telephone

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 182*, and the telephone tab must be displayed.

Calling up the menu

▸ Select the following on the multi-function steering wheel: left control button > ⇨ *page 18*.

The following functions are available on the driver information system, depending on the vehicle equipment:

Calling a contact

▸ Select and confirm **Call list/Favourites/Directory**.
▸ Select and confirm a contact.

Directory contacts

Only directory contacts for which a telephone number is stored are displayed in the driver information system. If several telephone numbers are stored for one contact, the list of stored telephone numbers is displayed first when the contact is selected. For more information on the symbols displayed, refer to ⇨ *page 193*.

Call list

The call lists contain all received, placed and missed calls.

▸ **To display the call list**: Press the button while no calls are active and there are no incoming calls.

Caller information

Depending on whether the caller is stored in the directory and whether the telephone number is transmitted with the call, the name, the telephone number or **Unknown** will appear on the display of the driver information system.

Functions for an incoming call

▸ **To answer a call**: Press the button when there is an incoming call.
▸ **To end a call**: Press the button during a call.
▸ **To ignore a call**: Select and confirm **Ignore** when there is an incoming call.

Functions during a call

Applies to: vehicles with analogue instrument cluster

▸ **To make a further call**: Select **Hold** > left control button > **Directory/Call list** > *entry in list*.
▸ **To answer a further call when you are talking on the phone and have another call on hold**: Select and confirm **Replace**. The current call will be replaced by the incoming call.

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

▸ **To make a further call**: Select **Hold** > left control button > **Directory/Call list** > *entry in list*.
▸ **To answer a further call when you are talking on the phone and have another call on hold**: Select and confirm **Answer**. The current call will be replaced by the incoming call.

Further functions

Microphone off: If you select and confirm this option, the caller will no longer be able to hear you; you will still be able to hear the caller. ▶

Hold/Resume: You can put a call on hold and retrieve it later from the hold queue.

Switch: You can switch between two phone calls (one of them will be on hold at any given time). Select **End call** to end whichever call is active. The call on hold will remain in the hold queue and can be retrieved by selecting **Resume call**.

Conference: Up to five callers and one caller on hold can take part in a conference (depending on the mobile network provider). To set up a further call, select **Hold** to place all the members of an existing conference on hold. You can then press the left control button to place another call to a contact in the directory or the call list. Select **Continue** if you want to retrieve all participants in an existing conference from the hold queue.

Note

- The functions of the telephone can be operated using the multi-function steering wheel only if the telephone equipment was installed at the factory.
- The functions of the telephone depend on your mobile phone and whether they are supported by your mobile network service provider.
- The option **Call waiting** must be activated on your mobile phone and on the MMI for you to be made aware of incoming calls during a conversation. The call options depend on your mobile network service provider. For more information, contact your service provider.

Navigation

Operation via driver information system

Applies to: vehicles with multi-function steering wheel plus and navigation system

Important: The navigation tab must be displayed.

If route guidance has not been started, the driver information system display will show a compass. On vehicles with the Audi virtual cockpit*, the map will be displayed.

Calling up the menu

▸ Select the following on the multi-function steering wheel: left control button > ⇨ *page 18*.

The following functions are available on the driver information system, depending on the vehicle equipment:

Calling up recent destinations

▸ Select and confirm **Last destinations** > *desired destination*.

Calling up favourites

▸ Select and confirm **Favourites** > *desired destination*.

Displaying the navigation screen while route guidance is active

Applies to: vehicles with analogue instrument cluster

▸ Select and confirm **Route guidance**.

Displaying the compass while route guidance is deactivated

Applies to: vehicles with analogue instrument cluster

▸ Select and confirm **Compass**.

Starting route guidance to the stored home address

Applies to: vehicles with analogue instrument cluster

▸ If applicable, select and confirm **Stop route guidance**, and then select **Favourites** > **Home address**.

Stopping route guidance

Applies to: vehicles with analogue instrument cluster

▸ Select and confirm **Stop route guidance**.

Starting route guidance to the stored home address

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

▸ If applicable, select and confirm **Stop route guidance**, and then select **Favourites** > **Home address**.

Stopping route guidance

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

▸ Select: right control button > **Stop route guidance**.

Further settings

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

▸ Select: right control button > *desired entry*.

The following settings are available depending on the equipment on your vehicle and on which function is selected:

– **Map display** ⇨ *page 222*
– **Map colours** ⇨ *page 222*
– **Map orientation** ⇨ *page 222*
– **Automatic zoom** ⇨ *page 223*

Navigation view when route guidance is started

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Audi virtual cockpit



Fig. 139 Audi virtual cockpit: Standard map with route guidance active

Important: A destination must have been entered ⇨ *page 210*, the route guidance function must have been started, and the navigation tab must be displayed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and on the view selected ⇨ *page 18*, the following information is displayed on the driver information system.

① Map contents (e.g. special destinations or traffic information)
② Current vehicle position
③ A bar graph appears when you approach a turn-off. The fewer bars are displayed, the shorter the distance to the turn-off point. If there is no impending turn-off, the remaining distance to the destination/stopover is shown on the right-hand speedometer along with the estimated arrival time.
④ Name of the street you are currently on

Street view when route guidance is started

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and analogue instrument cluster



Fig. 140 Instrument cluster: Lane change displayed in street view



Fig. 141 Instrument cluster: Turn-off displayed in street view

Important: A destination must have been entered ⇨ *page 210*, the route guidance function must have been started, and the navigation tab must be displayed.

The following information is displayed on the driver information system, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

① Distance to next manoeuvre
② Distance to destination/stopover
③ Estimated time of arrival
④ Name of motorway, major road or street: If the symbol ○ is displayed in front of the street name, you are being directed to turn into the street.
⑤ Arrow indicating direction of upcoming turn-off
⑥ Lane recommendation
⑦ If an arrow is displayed, a bar graph will also appear. The fewer bars are displayed, the shorter the distance to the turn-off point. ▸

The following functions are available when route guidance is active:

– **To have the last navigation cue repeated**: Press the NAV button.
– **To adjust the volume of the navigation cues**: Scroll the right thumbwheel up/down while a navigation cue is being played.

WARNING

The route calculated by the navigation system is a recommendation. Always adhere to the locally applicable traffic laws and regulations. If the recommended route is in contradiction with the locally applicable traffic laws and regulations, these always take precedence – risk of accident!

Note

– Also refer to ⇨ *page 10, Front cabin*.
– An exclamation mark "**!**" in front of the street name indicates that the navigation data of the MMI system do not contain all the information on this street or street section. Pay attention to traffic rules such as one-way streets or pedestrian zones.



Fig. 142 Overview of commands

81B012720AJ

Speech dialogue system

General information

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system

You can operate many vehicle functions conveniently by voice.

For best results when using the speech dialogue system

- Speak clearly in a normal volume. Speak louder if you are driving fast.
- Speak in a normal tone without long pauses.
- Close the doors, windows and sun roof* to reduce background noise. Make sure that passengers are not talking when you say a command.
- Keep the vents pointed away from the microphones located near the front interior lights in the headliner.
- The system should only be operated by the driver, since the microphones are directed towards this seating position.

WARNING

- Please direct your full attention to the road at all times! As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. For this reason, you should only use the functions in a manner that allows you to maintain control of the vehicle in all situations – accident risk!
- The speech dialogue system must not be used in cases of emergency, since the voice changes in stressful situations. This could result in a failed or delayed telephone connection. Always dial emergency numbers manually!

Note

No navigation cues* or traffic announcements* are played when a dialogue is active.

How to use the speech dialogue system

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system

Important: The ignition and the MMI system must be switched on. The system language must be set to one supported by the speech dialogue system. You must not be talking on the phone, the parking aid must not be active, and transmission position R/reverse gear must not be selected.

- **To switch on**: Briefly press the button (2) on the multi-function steering wheel ⇨ *page 24, Fig. 11* and give a spoken command after the **beep** signal.
- **To switch off**: Press and hold the button for several seconds, or:
- Press the ⮌ button.
- **To pause**: Say the command **Pause**. To end the pause, press the button.
- **To make a correction**: Say the command **Correction**.

Input help

The system guides you through the input routine with cues and messages.

– **Input help messages on screen**: After the speech dialogue system is switched on, a selection of possible commands will be shown. The command display can be switched on or off as required. Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Speech dialogue system**.

– **Spoken input help cues**: To have the system play the commands that are currently possible, press the button on the multi-function steering wheel and say **Help**.

Further settings

Refer to ⇨ *page 262, Speech dialogue system*.

Note

– The dialogue is paused when an incoming telephone call is received; you can continue the dialogue by ignoring the call. If you answer the call, the dialogue will be cancelled.

– You can select an entry from a list both via the speech dialogue system and using the rotary pushbutton.

Notes on the overviews of commands

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system

The following overviews show you the commands that you can give to operate the MMI via the speech dialogue system.

Alternative commands are separated by the symbol "**/**"; for example you can say: **Telephone** /(or) **Navigation** /(or) **Radio**.

Commands that belong together and should be spoken as a sequence are marked with the symbol "**>**"; for example you can say: **Enter address** > (and subsequently) **Enter country**.

As a rule, only the main commands are displayed. However, the system may also recognise some synonyms. For example, for **business address** you can also say **work address**, **office address**, **the office** or **at work**.

Commands

Global commands

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system

You can give global commands any time, irrespective of the menu currently selected.

You may be able to say the following commands depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Function	Say:
Calling up the menu	**Telephone** / **Directory** / **Navigation** / **Radio** / **Media** / **Audi connect** / **Car** / **Sound**
Having the system play the possible commands	**Help** / **Help Speech dialogue system** / **Help Telephone** / **Help Navigation** / **Help Map** / **Help Radio** / **Help Media** / **Help Audi connect**
Telephone functions	**Call (XY)**, e.g. **Call John Smith** / **Enter number** / **Redial** / **Directory** / **Read new text message** / **Read new e-mail** / **Dictate text message**
Navigation functions	**Drive me to (XY)** or **Navigate to (XY)**, e.g. **Navigate to John Smith** / **Enter address** / **Stop route guidance** / **Map** / **Online destinations** / **Online destination (XY)**
Calling up favourites	**Favourites** > *follow the directions given by the system*
Selecting an entry from a list	**Line (XY)**
Scrolling through a list	**Next page** / **Previous page**
Correcting a command	**Correction**
Switching off the speech dialogue system	**Cancel**

Telephone

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system and telephone

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 182*, and the **Telephone** menu must be open ⇨ *table on page 175*.

You may be able to say the following commands depending on the vehicle's equipment and the menu item selected: ▶

Function	Say:
Calling a contact from the directory	**Call (XY)**, e.g. **Call John Smith**
Dialling a specific number stored for a contact	**Call (XY) business / private / land line / mobile**, e.g. **Call John Smith private**
Dialling a phone number when an address card is open	**Call / Call business number / Call private number / Call land line / Call business mobile**
Calling a contact from the favourites list	**Telephone favourites** > *desired contact when requested* > **Dial**
Displaying the call list	**Call list**
Calling the last number dialled	**Redial**
Dialling a telephone number	**Enter number** > *enter phone number in blocks of individual digits when requested*, e.g. **07441 234 567** > **Dial**
Correcting an entered phone number	**Correction / Delete number**
Displaying contact information	**Directory** > *desired contact when requested*, e.g. **John Smith**
Listening to voice mail messages	**Call mailbox**
Entering the SIM PIN code	**Enter PIN** > *enter PIN in individual digits when requested* > **Store**
Correcting an entered PIN	**Correction / Delete PIN**
Correcting an entry	**No, I meant (XY)**
Closing the full list of commands	**Close**

Note

– If you have a mobile phone that transmits first names and surnames separately, you can select directory contacts both by entering the full name ("first name, surname" or "surname, first name") and by saying only the first name or surname.

– Please note that commands can only be spoken for the main telephone* ⇨ *page 183*.

Audi connect infotainment

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system and Audi connect infotainment

Important: The requirements for Audi connect infotainment must be met ⇨ *page 198*.

Function	Say:
Calling up an Audi connect infotainment service	**Audi connect** > *follow the directions given by the system*
Audi connect infotainment services	**Weather / Online news / Fuel prices / Parking information / Travel information / Twitter / Traffic information**
Search areas for Audi connect infotainment services	**In vicinity of destination / In immediate vicinity / In new town**
Correcting an entry	**No, I meant (XY)**

CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 198.*

Messages (Audi connect infotainment)

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system and Audi connect infotainment

Important: A SIM card with a messaging and data option must be inserted in the SIM card reader* ⇨ *page 199* or a SIM card with data option must be inserted in the SIM card reader* and a mobile phone with activated MAP (Message Access Profile) must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 182*. The declaration of consent must have been accepted ⇨ *page 191*.

Function	Say:
Text message dictation	**Dictate text message** / **Dictate text message to (XY)** > *follow the directions given by the system*
E-mail dictation	**Dictate e-mail** / **Dictate e-mail to (XY)** > *follow the directions given by the system*
Commands for text editing	**Read** / **Continue** / **Delete** / **Re-record** / **Replace with (XY)** / **Add recipient** / **Send**
Having a new message read out	**Read new text message** / **Read new e-mail**
Having a message read out	**Read text message** / **Read e-mail**
Replying to an opened text message	**Reply**
Forwarding an opened text message	**Forward** > **Add recipient** / **Insert template** / **Send**
Correcting an entry	**No, I meant (XY)**

CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 198.*

Note

The "Text message dictation" and "E-mail dictation" services are not available in all languages and countries. Your Audi dealer will be able to provide you with more detailed information.

Navigation

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system and navigation system

Important: The **Navigation** menu must have been opened ⇨ *table on page 175*.

You may be able to say the following commands for entering a destination depending on the vehicle's equipment and the menu item selected:

Function	Say:
Calling up a list of recent navigation destinations	**Last destinations**
Calling up favourites	**Navigation favourites**

Function	Say:
Calling up your home address	**Home address** or **Drive home**
Entering an address with assistance from the system	**Enter address** > *follow the directions given by the system*
Individual commands for entering a destination	**Enter country** / **Enter town** / **Enter post code** / **Enter street** / **Enter house number**
Making corrections while entering a destination	**Correction**
Navigating to a contact	**Drive me to (XY)** or **Navigate to (XY)**, e.g. **Drive me to John Smith**
Navigating to a specific address stored for a contact	**Navigate to (XY) business** / **private**, e.g. "Navigate to John Smith private"
Navigating to favourites	**Navigation favourites** > **Line (XY)** / *line content* > *start route guidance when requested*
Starting route guidance when an address card is open	**Navigate** / **Navigate to private address** / **Navigate to business address**
Entering a new destination/stopover while route guidance is active	**Enter address** > *desired address when requested* > *confirm new destination/stopover when requested*
Starting route guidance after entering a destination	**Start route guidance**
Cancelling the active route guidance	**Stop route guidance**
Calculating alternative routes	**Calculate alternative routes**
Entering a special destination with search area with assistance from the system	**Special destination** > **Change search area** > *enter desired category or subcategory when requested*, e.g. "Restaurant"
Categories for entering special destinations	**Audi Service** / **Railway station** / **Airport** / **Hotel** / **Hospital** / **Parking space** / **Service area** / **Restaurant** / **Filling station** *etc.*
Search areas for entering special destinations	**In immediate vicinity** / **In vicinity of route** / **In vicinity of destination** / **In vicinity of stopover** / **In new town** / **In new country**
Entering an online destination	**Online destination (XY)**, e.g. "**Online destination Palace Hotel**"
Correcting an entry	**No, I meant (XY)**
Closing the full list of commands	**Close**

Important: The **Navigation** or **Map** menu must be open.

You may be able to say the following commands for further navigation settings depending on the vehicle's equipment and the menu item selected:

Function	Say:
General map options	**Map** / **Day map** / **Night map** / **Change map colours automatically**
Map type	**2D driving position map** / **2D north position map** / **3D map** / **Destination map** / **Overview map** / **Standard map** / **Traffic map** / **Satellite map**[a)]
Displaying the route list	**Route list**

Function	Say:
Displaying remaining distance/time while route guidance is active	**Destination info**
Highest speed query	**How fast can I go here?**
Setting the navigation cues during active route guidance	**Voice guidance on / Voice guidance off / Voice guidance compact / Voice guidance complete / Voice guidance traffic**
Dynamic traffic avoidance	**Manual traffic avoidance / Automatic traffic avoidance / Switch off traffic avoidance**
Excluding the next section of the route	**Exclude route**
Excluding a certain section of the route	**Exclude route for (XY) metres/kilometres/yards/miles / Exclude next street / Exclude next section of route**

a) Audi only enables you to access third-party services. We cannot guarantee that these services will be available at all times; this is the responsibility of the third-party service provider.

CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 198.*

Note

Depending on the selected menu language and the country you are in, you may have to spell destinations to enter them for route guidance.

Radio

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system

Important: The **Radio** menu must be open ⇨ *table on page 175.*

You may be able to say the following commands depending on the vehicle's equipment and the frequency selected:

Function	Say:
Selecting a waveband	**FM/DAB / DAB / FM / AM**
Tuning to a station from the station list	**Station (XY) / Ensemble (XY)**[a]
Selecting a station from the favourites	**Radio favourites > Line (XY)**
Setting the frequency	**Frequency (XY)**
Receiving traffic news stations and switching traffic announcements on/off	**Traffic announcements on / Traffic announcements off**
Correcting an entry	**No, I meant (XY)**
Closing the full list of commands	**Close**

a) Applies to the DAB* waveband

Media

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system

Important: You must be in the **Media** menu.

You may be able to say the following commands depending on the vehicle's equipment and the medium currently active:

Function	Say:
Selecting a source directly	**Jukebox / CD / SD card 1 / SD card 2 / Audi music interface / iPhone / USB / Bluetooth / Wi-Fi / Medium (XY)**, e.g. "Rachel's player"
Selecting audio/video files from the jukebox	**Media favourites / Artists / Albums / Genres / Tracks / Playlists / Videos**
Selecting audio files from an iPod (source: Audi music interface)	**Artists / Albums / Genres / Tracks / Playlists / Composers / Podcasts / Audiobooks**
Navigating in a structure of folders/ list	**Folder up / Line (XY)**
Selecting random playback	**Switch on random playback / Switch off random playback**
Correcting an entry	**No, I meant (XY)**
Closing the full list of commands	**Close**

CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 198.*

Natural commands

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system and natural commands

The following overview shows a selection of commands that enable you to speak more naturally with your vehicle.

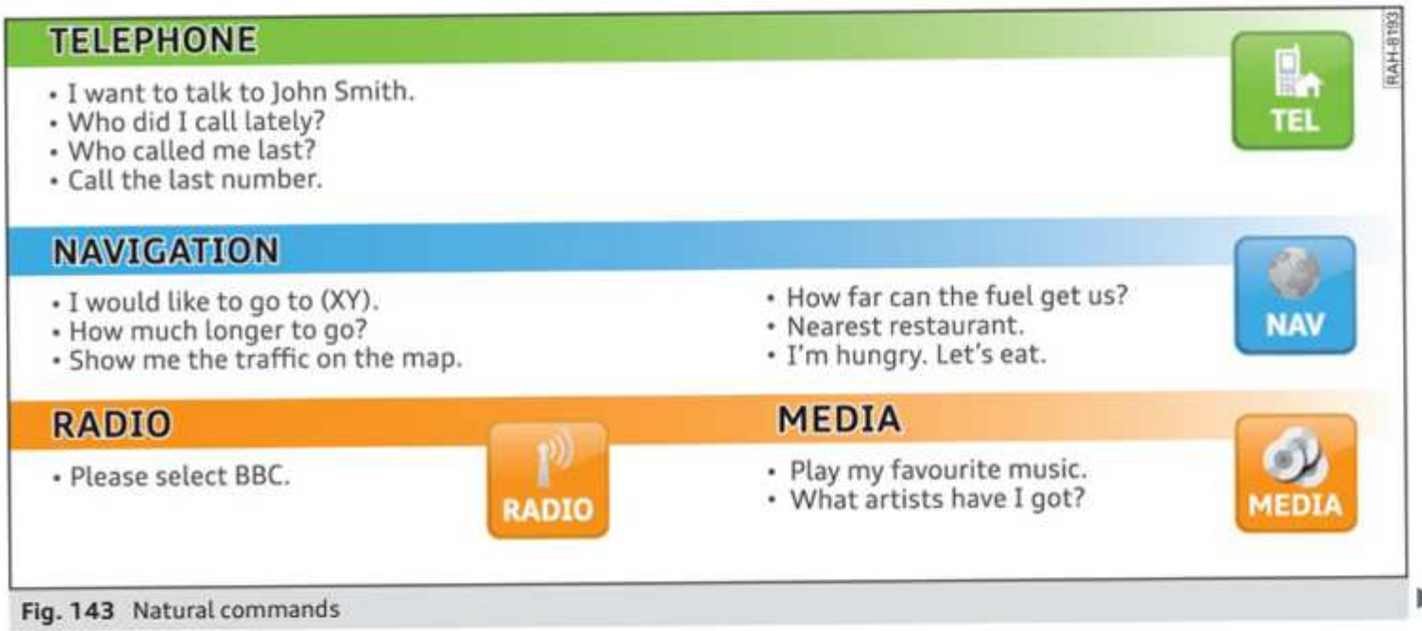


Fig. 143 Natural commands

Note

The natural commands are not available for all languages.

External voice control function

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system and external speech dialogue system

Important: The ignition and the MMI system must be switched on. A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI system via the **Handsfree** profile ⇨ *page 183*. The mobile phone connected must have a voice control function that can be controlled externally. You must not be talking on the phone, the parking aid must not be active, and transmission position R/reverse gear must not be selected.

- **To switch on**: Press and hold the button on the multi-function steering wheel and give a spoken command after the external speech dialogue system has been activated.
- **To continue/restart a dialogue**: After a dialogue has been ended, the system remains active for a short period during which you can start a new external dialogue at any time.
- If necessary, press the button and say a new command, or:
- Select and confirm **Continue** on the MMI control console.
- **To switch off**: Press and hold the button for several seconds, or:
- Select and confirm **Cancel** on the MMI control console.

Note

– No navigation cues* or traffic announcements* are played when a dialogue is active.
– Audi only enables you to access your mobile phone's speech dialogue system and accepts no responsibility for the content and commands of the external speech dialogue system.

Telephone

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

You can use a wide range of telephone functions in your vehicle conveniently via the MMI.

The following options may be available depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment:

- Connecting a mobile phone via Bluetooth
- Using two telephones
- Making calls via your own mini SIM card
- Using the Audi phone box

WARNING

- According to health organisations, mobile phones may interfere with the function of pacemakers. A minimum distance of 20 cm between the mobile phone aerial and the pacemaker should therefore be maintained.
  - Do not carry a mobile phone in your breast pocket directly over the pacemaker when the phone is switched on.
  - If you suspect interference, switch the mobile phone off immediately.
- The speech dialogue system* ⇨ *page 174* must not be used in cases of emergency, since the voice changes in stressful situations. This could result in a failed or delayed telephone connection. Always dial emergency numbers manually!
- Switch off your mobile phones in all areas where there may be a risk of explosion. Remember that these areas may not always be adequately marked. Such places are filling stations, fuel and chemical storage facilities or transport vehicles and other places where fumes, chemicals (e.g. from leaking propane or fuel vapours in vehicles or buildings) or large quantities of dust particles (e.g. from flour, wood or metal) could accumulate in the air. This warning also applies to all other places where you would normally switch off the power unit.
- Driving on the road requires the full attention of the driver. Please always note the information in the chapter ⇨ *page 156, Notes on traffic safety*.

CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 198*.

Note

- The maximum range of the Bluetooth connection is limited to the interior of the vehicle.
- You can find a selection of supported Bluetooth devices in the database for tested mobile devices at www.audi.com/bluetooth.

Setting up

Connecting a mobile phone via Bluetooth

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Important: The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on. The Bluetooth settings must be open on your mobile phone during the connection procedure. The mobile phone you would like to connect must not be connected actively to any other Bluetooth device. The MMI must not be connected to a mobile phone. A mini SIM card must not be inserted in the SIM card reader*.

▸ Switch on the Bluetooth function and discoverability on both the MMI system ⇨ *page 259* and the mobile phone.
▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > **Connect mobile phone** > **Find new devices** > **Continue**. The available Bluetooth devices will be shown on the infotainment display, or
▸ Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Connection manager** ⇨ *page 257*.
▸ Select and confirm the desired mobile phone from the list of Bluetooth devices shown.

A PIN for a secure Bluetooth connection will be created.

▸ Confirm the PIN on your mobile phone and on the MMI, or:
▸ Enter the PIN to establish a connection on your mobile phone. You have about 30 seconds to enter the PIN.
▸ Follow the instructions given by the system. ▶

▸ Please note any system queries on the MMI and your mobile phone.

After connecting successfully

You will be shown information on the profiles used to establish the connection. You can also change the profiles afterwards ⇨ *page 259*.

The contacts on the mobile phone are automatically loaded into the MMI. This may take several minutes, depending on how many contacts are stored on the mobile phone.

Depending on the mobile phone and the type of connection, you can use the following functions:

Handsfree operation

Important: Your mobile phone must be connected to the MMI via the Bluetooth Hands Free Profile (HFP).

The handsfree system is available for use. Your phone calls will be made via the aerial of your mobile phone.

Car phone function

Applies to: vehicles with car telephone kit

Depending on the country and your vehicle's equipment, it may be possible for the MMI to use your mobile phone's SIM card to establish a telephone connection.

Important: Your mobile phone must be connected to the MMI via the Bluetooth SIM Access Profile (SAP). You must have confirmed access to your SIM card (*SIM access*) on the mobile phone.

Your phone calls will be made via the vehicle's external aerial. Using the external aerial reduces radiation in the vehicle and also ensures better reception quality.

Make sure that the car phone function is switched on ⇨ *page 196*.

Sending and receiving text messages

Refer to ⇨ *page 190*.

CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 198*.

Note

– You can adjust further settings for connected mobile phones using the **connection manager** ⇨ *page 257*.
– You can also search for the MMI system via the Bluetooth device search function on your mobile phone.
– Bluetooth devices only have to be bonded once. Any devices that have already been bonded to the MMI system are connected automatically when the Bluetooth function is switched on, the devices are within range of the car and the ignition is on. The mobile phone last connected is given priority.
– Please note any system queries on your mobile phone, e.g. whether the phone should connect automatically in the future. On some mobile phones, you may also need to download the directory and allow access to your text messages separately.
– The Bluetooth connection between the system and the mobile phone is automatically terminated when you leave the car. Depending on the mobile phone, telephone calls may be transferred automatically from the MMI to your mobile phone so that you can continue talking.
– We recommend using the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot* when the car phone function* is in use so that your mobile phone's apps retain access to the Internet.
– When the car phone function* is active, Audi connect infotainment* is only available using your own SIM card ⇨ *page 199*.

Using two telephones

Applies to: vehicles with telephone and Audi phone box

You can connect two mobile phones to the MMI system (e.g. your business mobile as the primary phone and your personal mobile as an additional phone). You can then be reached inside the vehicle on both mobile phones.

The first mobile phone that you connect is shown as the primary phone on the MMI system. The second mobile phone is connected as an additional phone. ▶

The system will always display the phone book on the primary phone while it is connected. To use the phone book on the additional phone, you have to swap the primary phone and additional phone ⇨ *page 184*.

Connecting a mobile phone as the primary phone

▸ Connect your mobile phone to the MMI system via Bluetooth. The first mobile phone that you connect is shown as the **primary phone** on the MMI system.

Refer to ⇨ *page 182, Connecting a mobile phone via Bluetooth*.

Connecting a mobile phone as an additional phone

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI as the primary phone, or your own mini SIM card must be inserted in the SIM card reader* to make phone calls.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Connect additional phone**.

Refer to ⇨ *page 182, Connecting a mobile phone via Bluetooth*.

For example, you have connected your business mobile to the MMI system as the primary phone and your personal mobile as the additional phone. To call a contact stored in your personal phone book, you now have to swap the primary phone with the additional phone because the system always displays the phone book from the primary phone.

Using a mini SIM card in the SIM card reader*

Refer to ⇨ *page 185, Making and receiving calls using your own mini SIM card*.

Connecting a mini SIM card as an additional phone

▸ Insert your own mini SIM card in the SIM card reader* ⇨ *page 185, Making and receiving calls using your own mini SIM card*.
▸ Then connect a mobile phone to the MMI system as an additional phone via Bluetooth.

You can now use the option **Switch primary & additional phone** so that the mini SIM card is connected as an additional phone.

Swapping the primary phone and additional phone

Important: A primary phone and additional phone must be connected.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Switch primary & additional phone**.

Note

– Please note that, when your mini SIM card is inserted in the SIM card reader*, any mobile phones for making and receiving calls which are already connected to the MMI via Bluetooth will be disconnected.
– You can see in the **connection manager** ⇨ *page 257* whether your mobile phone is connected as a primary phone or an additional phone.
– Using the function **Store as default telephone** in the **Connection manager**, you can store one of your connected mobile phones as the default phone ⇨ *page 259*.
– The device name of the primary phone connected to the system (e.g. MyPhone) is displayed in the **Telephone** menu.
– If the primary phone is not connected to the MMI automatically when the ignition is switched on, e.g. because it is out of range of the vehicle or because the Bluetooth function is switched off, a phone which was previously connected as an additional phone will be connected automatically as the primary phone.
– You can send and receive messages on both the primary phone and additional phone ⇨ *page 187, Fig. 145*. You do not have to swap the primary phone and additional phone to do so.

Making and receiving calls using your own mini SIM card

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment and Audi phone box

The SIM card reader is located in the glove box.

With this telephone option[1], you can be reached on the telephone number of your own mini SIM card in the SIM card reader. Depending on the type of mini SIM card, this may be the same number as for your current mobile phone contract (twin/Multi SIM card) or another number from a different mobile phone contract.

Using your own mini SIM card

Important: The vehicle must be stationary, the ignition must be switched on and the **Telephone** menu must have been called up.

- ▸ The missing corner of the mini SIM card should be at the front left as you insert it. Slide the mini SIM card into the slot in the SIM card reader until you feel it engage.
- ▸ If requested, enter the PIN code for your mini SIM card in the MMI.
- ▸ Select and confirm **OK**.
- ▸ To allow the MMI to connect automatically in the future, select and confirm **Yes**. The PIN for your mini SIM card is stored in the MMI.
- ▸ To make calls via the mini SIM card, select **Telephone installed in vehicle (SIM card)**. Your phone calls will be made via the vehicle's external aerial. Your own mini SIM card in the SIM card reader is used for phone calls and for Audi connect infotainment.
- ▸ To use the mini SIM card for Audi connect infotainment only, select **Personal mobile phone (Bluetooth)**. The vehicle's external aerial will then only be used in conjunction with the Audi phone box. Your own mini SIM card in the SIM card reader is only used for Audi connect infotainment.

After connecting successfully

After connecting successfully, either one or two symbols (depending on the connection type) will appear in the status line of the infotainment display to indicate the signal strength ⑧/⑩ ⇨ *page 166, Fig. 138*.

You can change whether you wish to make calls using your mini SIM card in the SIM card reader or your mobile phone (this setting can be changed later) ⇨ *page 259*.

In addition, the contacts on the mobile phone are automatically loaded into the directory of the MMI. This may take several minutes, depending on how many contacts are stored on the mobile phone.

Removing a mini SIM card

- ▸ Briefly press the mini SIM card.

CAUTION

- – Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 198*.
- – To avoid damaging the SIM card reader, only use mini SIM cards (25 mm x 15 mm). Please contact your mobile network service provider for more information on mini SIM cards.
- – Should you have inserted a different SIM card size in the SIM card reader, do not under any circumstances attempt to remove it yourself as this may damage the SIM card reader. Please contact a qualified workshop.
- – If you use SIM card adapters, the vibrations caused by the movement of the vehicle may cause the SIM card to become detached from the adapter - risk of damage to the SIM card reader.

Note

If your mobile phone does not support Bluetooth SAP (e.g. iPhone), you can use the contacts from your mobile phone when a SIM card is inserted in the vehicle by connecting the mobile phone to the system via the **Directory/contacts** profile ⇨ *page 259*.

[1] Not available in all countries.

Using the Audi phone box

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box



Fig. 144 Storage compartment underneath the centre armrest: Audi phone box with connections

You can use the Audi phone box to charge your mobile phone's battery. You can make and receive calls using the vehicle's external aerial*. Using the external aerial* reduces radiation in the vehicle and also ensures better reception quality.

The following options are available:

- **To establish a connection with the external car aerial***[1]: Place your mobile phone centrally onto the telephone symbol in the Audi phone box ⇨ *Fig. 144* with the phone's display facing upwards. Make sure that there are no objects between the Audi phone box and the mobile phone.
- **To charge a mobile phone wirelessly**: Place your Qi compatible[2] mobile phone centrally onto the symbol in the Audi phone box ⇨ *Fig. 144* with the phone's display facing upwards. The mobile phone will be charged.
- **To charge a mobile phone via a USB adapter**: Connect your mobile phone to the Audi music interface ① using a USB adapter. You can charge your mobile phone using special USB adapters ⇨ *page 241, Fig. 169*.

WARNING

- Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of accident! Stow objects away safely while the vehicle is moving.
- Do not let visual/acoustic signals from a mobile device distract your attention from the road – risk of accident! Operate the mobile device via the MMI only. Keep the centre armrest folded down while driving.
- The mobile phone may become hot while charging wirelessly. Consider the temperature of your mobile phone when removing it. Take the mobile phone out of the Audi phone box carefully.
- An alternating magnetic field is used for wireless charging. Always keep a minimum of 6 cm away from the charging plate of the Audi phone box. The limits for long-term exposure according to ICNIRP 1998 are kept to at this distance. Side effects such as irritation to sensory organs or functional issues with active implants (e.g. pacemakers, infusion pumps, neurostimulators) or passive implants (e.g. artificial joints) are therefore very unlikely. If you have implants, please consult a doctor if you have any questions.

Note

- If the mobile phone is placed in the Audi phone box in a bag or a protective case, this may interfere with the connection to the external aerial*.
- Any metal objects in the Audi phone box will prevent the mobile phone from charging wirelessly or being used to make calls via the external aerial*.
- The charging time and the temperature vary depending on the mobile phone being used.
- The ignition must be switched on to charge a mobile phone in the Audi phone box.
- To avoid malfunctions, ensure that the mobile phone is correctly placed inside the Audi phone box.
- The maximum charging capacity is 5 W. ▶

[1] Not available in all countries. Additional car phone function only with Audi connect infotainment*.

[2] The Qi standard enables you to charge your mobile phone wirelessly.

– An enhanced transmission quality* cannot be guaranteed if more than one mobile phone is placed inside.
– Only one mobile phone can be charged wirelessly at a time in the Audi phone box.
– Audi recommends the use of Audi Genuine Accessories. Audi has tested these products for suitability, reliability and safety.
– USB adapters are available from Audi dealers or specialist retailers.
– When you charge your mobile phone wirelessly, the charging procedure may be interrupted if you place your remote control key in the Audi phone box together with the mobile phone.

Using the telephone

Calling up the telephone

Applies to: vehicles with telephone



Fig. 145 Infotainment system: Telephone functions in the selection menu



Fig. 146 Infotainment system: Further telephone functions in the selection menu

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 182*, or your own mini SIM card must be inserted in the SIM card reader* ⇨ *page 185*.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button.

The following telephone functions are available:

① Call list 187
② Favourites 189
③ Directory 193
④ Dial number 187
⑤ Text message (SIM card)*/Text message (MyPhone)*/Text message (additional phone)* 190
⑥ E-mail (MyPhone)*/E-mail (additional phone)* 191

Dialling a number

Applies to: vehicles with telephone



Fig. 147 Infotainment system: Dialling a telephone number from the call list

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button.

Call list

Important: The call list must contain a telephone number.

Turn the rotary pushbutton to show the call list.

Select and confirm the desired telephone number in the call list.

Symbols in the call list:

① Missed calls
② Numbers dialled
③ Received calls

Select: *a contact from the list* > right control button.

– **Call**: To call the selected contact.
– **Connect additional phone*/Switch primary & additional phone***: Refer to ⇨ *page 184*.
– **Edit number before making call**: To edit a telephone number before making a call. Select and confirm **OK** to use the changes. Press the left ▸

control button to go back without making the changes.
– **Send text message***: To send the selected contact a text message.
– **Delete call list**: Select and confirm if you wish to **Delete this entry** or **Delete all entries**.
– **Store as favourite**: To store the selected contact as a favourite.
– **Show contact details**: Refer to ⇨ *page 194*.
– **Connection manager**: Refer to ⇨ *page 257*.
– **Bluetooth settings***: Refer to ⇨ *page 259*.
– **Online settings***: Refer to ⇨ *page 259*.
– **Wi-Fi settings***: Refer to ⇨ *page 205*.
– **Telephone settings**: Refer to ⇨ *page 195*.

Favourites

Important: A telephone number or a contact must have been added as a favourite ⇨ *page 189*.

Select and confirm a favourite in the favourites list.

Directory

Important: You must have stored a contact on your mobile phone.

Select and confirm a telephone number in the directory ⇨ *page 193*.

Enter number

– **To enter a telephone number using numbers**: Enter a telephone number using the speller for numbers.
– **To enter a telephone number using letters**: Select and confirm **ABC** using the speller for numbers. Enter a series of letters, e.g. *AUDISERVICE* using the speller for letters.
– **To dial a telephone number**: Select and confirm ✆, or push the rotary pushbutton downwards. Select and confirm **OK**.
– **To delete letters/numbers individually**: Select and confirm ⌫.
– **To delete all the numbers/letters you have entered at once**: With the selection line activated, turn the rotary pushbutton to ⌫ and press and hold the rotary pushbutton, or select: right control button > **Clear entry field**.

Answering/ending a call

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ **To answer a call**: Select and confirm **Answer**.
▸ **To decline a call**: Select and confirm **Ignore**.
▸ **To mute an active call**: Select and confirm **Switch microphone off**.
▸ **To end a call/cancel the dialling process**: Select and confirm **End call**.
▸ **To answer a further call**: Refer to ⇨ *page 188*.

Note

Media playback or the radio is muted automatically during a call.

During a telephone call

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Important: A call must be in progress.

– **End call**: You can end the call.
– **Send tone sequence**: You can enter **DTMF** tones ("touch-tones") directly using the speller for numbers. These are then sent to the person you are speaking to.
– **Further call options**: Press the right control button.

The following options may be available during a call depending on the mobile phone being used and the type of connection:

– **To answer a further call**: If you are already talking on the phone when someone else calls, select **Answer** to place the current call on hold and to answer the incoming call. If you select **Ignore**, the incoming call will be declined.
– **To answer a further call when you are talking on the phone and have another call on hold**: Select **Replace**. The current call will be replaced by the incoming call.
– **To mute an incoming call**: Select and confirm **Mute**.
– **Further call**: Select **Find contact** > **Call list**/**Directory**/**Favourites** > *an entry from the list*.

Switch microphone off: If you select and confirm this option, the caller will no longer be able to hear you; you will still be able to hear the caller. Select and confirm **Switch microphone on** to switch the microphone back on. ▶

Hold/Resume: You can put a call on hold and retrieve it later from the hold queue. Select and confirm a call to resume it.

Transfer call to mobile phone*: Select and confirm **Transfer call to mobile phone** to transfer your current call from the MMI to your mobile phone.

Retrieve call*: Important: A call must be in progress. Select and confirm **Retrieve call** to transfer the current call from your mobile phone to the MMI.

Switch: You can switch between two phone calls (one of them will be on hold at any given time). Select **End call** to end whichever call is active. The call on hold will remain in the hold queue and can be continued by pressing the right control button > **Resume**.

Conference: Up to five callers and one caller on hold can take part in a conference (depending on the mobile network service provider).

- **To add participants**: Select the left control button > **Call list/Directory/Favourites** > *an entry in the list*.
- Select the right control button:
- **Hold**: To put all existing conference participants on hold.
- **Resume**: To resume the conference with all participants.
- **Remove conference participant**: You can remove a participant from the conference. The call with this participant will be ended.
- **Merge to conference**: The contact you have called can be added to the conference.

Note

- If you are using the **Handsfree** profile, the option *Call waiting* must be activated on your mobile phone for you to be alerted to incoming calls during a conversation.
- The Bluetooth connection between the system and the mobile phone is automatically terminated when you leave the car. Depending on the mobile phone, telephone calls may be transferred automatically from the MMI to your mobile phone so that you can continue talking.

Dialling the emergency number

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Dial number** > emergency number (e.g. 112) > **OK**.

WARNING

- Since your telephone operates via radio waves, a connection cannot be guaranteed under all circumstances. Do not rely solely on your telephone when a vital communication (e.g. medical emergency) is involved.
- Always follow the directions of the emergency operators when making an emergency call and do not end the call before you are requested to do so.

Note

Emergency numbers are not the same for all countries. Please make sure that you know the emergency number for the country you are in.

Favourites

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

In addition to the mailbox number, you can store up to 50 contacts in the list of favourites, in any order:

Calling up the menu

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button.

Storing an existing telephone number as a favourite

▸ Select and confirm **Call list/Directory**.
▸ Select a contact/a telephone number from the list.
▸ Select: right control button > **Store as favourite**.
▸ Enter a name for the favourite or accept the suggestion.
▸ Select and confirm **Store**.

Renaming a stored favourite

▸ Select: **Favourites** > *a favourite from the list*. ▶

▸ Select: right control button > **Rename favourite**.

Moving a stored favourite

▸ Select: **Favourites** > *a favourite from the list.*
▸ Select: right control button > **Move favourite**.
▸ Select and confirm the position of the favourite selected.

Deleting a stored favourite

▸ Select: **Favourites** > *a favourite from the list.*
▸ Select: right control button > **Delete favourite** > **Delete this entry** or **Delete all entries**.

Messages

Text messages

Applies to: vehicles with car phone function or mobile phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile

Depending on your mobile phone and your mobile phone contract, you may be able to send and receive text messages via the MMI. You can also use the speech dialogue system* to dictate text messages.

Important: Your own mini SIM card with a messaging option must be inserted in the control console's SIM card reader* or your mobile phone must be connected to the MMI via Bluetooth Message Access Profile (Bluetooth MAP) ⇨ *page 182*.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** left control button > **Text message (SIM card)*/Text message (myPhone)/Text message (additional phone)***.

Write new text message

Select and confirm **Write new text message**.

– **To use a template**: Select and confirm the template you require from the list.
– **To enter your own text***: Select and confirm **Do not use template**. Enter a text using the MMI touch pad* or the speller for letters/numbers.
– Enter one or more recipients.
– Select and confirm **Send**.

Dictate new text message[1)]

Refer to ⇨ *page 177, Messages (Audi connect infotainment)*.

Inbox

All the text messages you have received are displayed.

Sent

All the text messages you have sent are displayed.

Outbox

All the text messages to be sent are displayed.

Drafts

All the text messages which have been stored but not yet sent are displayed.

Deleted

All the text messages you have deleted are displayed.

Note

Depending on your SIM card (e.g. if you are using a Multi SIM card), you may need to activate the function for sending and receiving text messages.

Message options

Applies to: vehicles with car phone function or mobile phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Text message (SIM card)*/Text message (myPhone)/Text message (additional phone)*** > **Inbox/Sent/Outbox** > right control button.

The following options may be available depending on which menu you have selected:

Storing a text message as a template

There are already ten text message templates stored on the MMI. You can store up to ten additional templates. ▶

[1)] Only available with Audi connect infotainment*.

– Create a text message.
– Select and confirm **Store as template**.

Continue with last text message

You can continue with the text message you last edited.

Reply*

You can reply to a text message you have selected in the **Inbox**.

Forward

You can forward a text message you have selected to another recipient.

Resend*

You can re-send a text message you have selected.

Delete this text message*

You can delete a text message you have selected.

Read[1)]

You can have the MMI read an opened text message to you.

Delete text messages from SIM

A crossed-out envelope symbol is displayed in the status line of the infotainment display if the SIM card memory is full. You can still send text messages but will not be able to receive any new ones. Select and confirm **Delete sent text messages** to delete all sent text messages from the SIM card. Select and confirm **Delete read text messages** to delete all read text messages from the SIM card.

Text message settings*

Activate **Text message notifications** to have a notification displayed when a new text message is received. An envelope symbol ✉ is displayed in the status line of the infotainment display if there are any new text messages.

The number of your mobile network service provider's **Text message centre** is displayed. If no number has been stored, you can enter the number of the text message centre. For more information, contact your service provider.

Text msg dict. declaration of consent[2)]: Agreement that spoken data are forwarded to the service provider via Audi.

Connection manager

Refer to ⇨ *page 257*.

Bluetooth settings*

Refer to ⇨ *page 259*.

Online settings*

Refer to ⇨ *page 259*.

Wi-Fi settings*

Refer to ⇨ *page 205*.

Telephone settings

Refer to ⇨ *page 195*.

Note

Messages deleted using the MMI are also automatically deleted on the mobile phone.

E-mail

Applies to: mobile phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile

Depending on your mobile phone, you may be able to send and receive e-mails via the MMI. You can also use the speech dialogue system* to dictate e-mails.

Important: A mobile phone with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (Bluetooth MAP) must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 182*.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **E-mail (MyPhone)/E-mail (additional phone)***.

Write new e-mail

Select and confirm **Write new e-mail**. ▶

1) Not available in all languages.
2) Only available with Audi connect infotainment*.

– **To use a template**: Select and confirm the template you require from the list.
– **To enter your own text***: Select and confirm **Do not use template**. Enter a text using the MMI touch pad* or the speller for letters/numbers.
– Enter one or more recipients.
– Select and confirm **Send**.

Dictate new e-mail[1)]

Refer to ⇨ *page 177, Messages (Audi connect infotainment)*.

Inbox

All the e-mails you have received are displayed.

Sent

All the e-mails you have sent are displayed.

Outbox

All the e-mails to be sent are displayed.

Drafts

All the e-mails which have been stored but not yet sent are displayed.

CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 198*.

Note

Please connect your mobile phone to the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot* so that the e-mail app on your mobile phone retains access to the Internet. This helps to ensure that e-mails can be sent and received. If you cannot receive e-mails despite being successfully connected, please contact your e-mail service provider or your mobile network provider.

Message options

Applies to: mobile phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **E-mail (MyPhone)/E-mail (additional phone)*** > **Inbox/Sent/Outbox** > right control button.

The following options may be available depending on which menu you have selected:

Storing an e-mail as a template

There are already ten e-mail templates stored on the MMI. You can store up to ten additional templates.

– Create an e-mail.
– Select and confirm **Store as template**.

Continue with last edited e-mail

You can continue with the e-mail you last edited.

Reply*

You can reply to an e-mail you have selected in the **Inbox**.

Reply to all*

You can reply to all the recipients of an e-mail you have selected in the **Inbox**.

Forward

You can forward an e-mail you have selected to another recipient.

Delete this message*

You can delete an e-mail you have selected.

Read[2)]

You can have the MMI read an opened e-mail to you.

E-mail settings*

Activate **E-mail notifications** to have a notification displayed when a new e-mail is received. An envelope symbol ✉ is displayed in the status line ▶

1) Only available with Audi connect infotainment*.
2) Not available in all languages.

of the infotainment display if there are any new e-mails.

Connection manager

Refer to ⇨ *page 257*.

Bluetooth settings*

Refer to ⇨ *page 259*.

Online settings*

Refer to ⇨ *page 259*.

Wi-Fi settings*

Refer to ⇨ *page 205*.

Telephone settings

Refer to ⇨ *page 195*.

Note

Messages deleted using the MMI are also automatically deleted on the mobile phone connected.

Listening to voicemail messages

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

- Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button. Select and confirm **Call list/Directory/Favourites** > **Mailbox**.

Important: No mailbox number must have been stored yet.

- **To enter the mailbox number**: Enter the number desired. Select and confirm **OK**.

Important: A mailbox number must already have been stored.

- **To dial the mailbox number**: Select and confirm **Mailbox**.

Note

This service must be set up and activated by your mobile network service provider before you can use it.

Directory

Calling up the directory

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

After a mobile phone has been connected successfully, the contacts from the mobile phone are automatically imported into the directory of the MMI system.

Important: You must have stored a contact on your mobile phone.

- Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Directory**.
- **To call a contact**: Select and confirm a contact in the directory. The telephone numbers for the contact you have selected will be displayed. Select and confirm a phone number to start the call.
- **To use the search function**: Refer to ⇨ *page 194*.

The contacts will be displayed. You can change the sort order ⇨ *page 196*, **Sort order**.

You can connect several different mobile phones to the MMI system, or use different mini SIM cards in the SIM card reader*, allowing you to manage up to four private directories.

Note

- For more information on the search function, please refer to ⇨ *page 165*.
- Please pay attention to any synchronisation queries on your mobile phone. You must confirm any synchronisation queries from the directory before the contacts can be loaded from your mobile phone into the MMI directory.
- Please note that the system only ever displays the directory on the primary phone*.
- In certain cases, contacts from a mobile phone may not be transmitted in alphabetical order. If there are too many entries, contacts with certain initial letters may not be displayed on the MMI system.
- If your own mini SIM card is inserted in the SIM card reader* ⇨ *page 185*, the SIM card entries and the contacts in the local MMI memory are displayed. ▶

– The contacts in the local MMI memory are visible at all times and are therefore not protected against access by other users.

Using contacts from another mobile phone

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment and Audi phone box

If your own mini SIM card is inserted in the SIM card reader and is used for telephone calls, you can access the directory on another mobile phone.

Important: A mini SIM card must be inserted in the SIM card reader ⇨ *page 259*.

Note

– When the MMI system has downloaded the directory from the mobile phone, the contacts from the SIM card will no longer be shown in the MMI directory.
– When you switch the ignition on again after switching it off and leaving the car, the MMI system will load the mobile phone's directory if the phone is within range and Bluetooth is activated both on the phone and on the MMI system. If this is not the case, the MMI system will show the contacts from the mini SIM card in the SIM card reader.

Searching for a contact

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Directory**.
▸ To limit the search, enter the initials of the contact you are looking for individually in the entry field, separating them with a space. Enter additional letters if necessary.
▸ Select and confirm a contact in the directory. The telephone numbers for the contact you have selected will be displayed.
▸ Select and confirm a phone number to start the call.

Note

– You can scroll rapidly through long lists by turning the rotary pushbutton quickly. The scrolling speed depends on the number of entries in the list.
– For more information on the search function, please refer to ⇨ *page 165*.

Showing contact details*

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

You may be able to have contact details displayed, depending on the equipment in your vehicle:

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button.
▸ Select and confirm **Directory** > *a contact from the directory*.
▸ Select: right control button > **Show contact details**.

– **Call**: Select and confirm the desired telephone number.
– **Add navigation destination***: To start navigating, select and confirm the desired address. Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Press the right control button to call up further options for the contact details.

– **Read contact**[1]: The MMI system automatically creates a name tag for each contact in the directory, which you can have the system read to you.
– **Store as favourite**: Refer to ⇨ *page 189*.
– **Send text message***: You can send the selected contact a text message ⇨ *page 190*.
– **Delete contact**: You can delete a contact you have selected.

Note

You can only edit/delete the contacts in the local MMI memory.

[1] Not available in all languages.

Importing/exporting contacts

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

You can import or export contacts in the vCard format (.vcf) into or from the directory.

Important: An SD card must be inserted in one of the SD card readers * ⇨ *page 236*, a USB mass storage device must be connected to the Audi music interface* ⇨ *page 241*, or the requirements for Audi connect infotainment services* must be fulfilled ⇨ *page 198*.

- Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Directory**.
- Select: right control button > **Directory settings**.
- **To import contacts from a storage device**: Select and confirm **Import contacts** > **SD card 1/SD card 2** or **USB device 1/USB device 2** > *desired contacts* > **Start import**.
- **To export contacts to a storage device**: Select and confirm **Export contacts** > **SD card 1/SD card 2** or **USB device 1/USB device 2** > *desired contacts* > **Start export**.
- **To select all contacts at once for import/export**: Select and confirm **Import contacts/Export contacts** > **SD card 1/SD card 2** or **USB device 1/USB device 2** > **All** > **Start import/Start export**.

CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 198*.

Note

- Further information on the myAudi account can be found at my.audi.com.
- The imported contacts are stored in the local memory of the directory you are using.
- You can import up to 1000 contacts. You can call up the memory capacity of the directory any time ⇨ *page 196*.
- It is not possible to export contacts which have been downloaded from a mobile phone.
- There should be no files or directories on the storage medium other than the contacts you wish to import.

Further settings

Telephone settings

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

- Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Telephone settings**.

Call options*

Call forward: Forwarding of incoming calls to your mailbox or to another phone number can be switched on/off. You can use **Check status** to check whether this function is activated or deactivated.

Call waiting: If this option is activated ☑, you will be informed of incoming calls when you are on the phone. You can use **Check status** to check whether this function is activated or deactivated.

Transmit caller ID: Sending your telephone number in outgoing calls can be activated/deactivated. With the **Network-dependent** option, the setting agreed in your mobile network service contract will be used. The settings apply only to the **Telephone** menu in the MMI system. When the Bluetooth connection has been terminated, the settings of your mobile phone apply. You can use **Check status** to check whether this function is activated or deactivated.

Telephone mode*

On vehicles with a car telephone kit, you can choose between three different telephone modes to optimise the mobile network response:

- **Automatic**: The car telephone automatically switches between the GSM (2G), UMTS (3G) and LTE networks. This depends on the mobile network's availability and reception, and on the ▶

position of the vehicle. There may be restrictions when using the satellite map*[1] or Wi-Fi.
- **Telephony optimised**: The car telephone kit registers with the GSM network (2G). In this mode, the reception is prioritised for making and receiving calls. There may be restrictions when using the satellite map*[1] or Wi-Fi.
- **Data service optimised**: The car telephone registers with the GSM (2G), UMTS (3G) or LTE network. This depends on the mobile network, its reception, and the position of the vehicle. In this mode, the reception is prioritised for the use of data services. There may be restrictions when making and receiving calls.

Ring tone and volume settings[2]

You can use the **Mute telephone** function to switch ring tone playback via the MMI loudspeakers on/off. Ring tones are played when you select the function **Ring tone**. Select an entry from the list and confirm it. For the settings **Ring tone volume/Message volume**, see ⇨ *page 261*. You can adjust the **Microphone input level** during an active phone call using the rotary pushbutton.

Network settings*

Refer to ⇨ *page 260*.

Serial number (IMEI)*

The serial number of the telephone module installed in the MMI system is displayed.

Switch on telephone/Switch off telephone

Applies to: vehicles with car telephone kit

The car phone will be turned on automatically when the ignition is switched on, as long as it was *not* switched off separately the last time it was used.

Note

- You can bond several mobile phones to the MMI system; however only two* connections are active at a time.
- All bonded Bluetooth devices can be deleted by resetting the **Bluetooth** function to the factory settings ⇨ *page 257*.
- If you select the telephone mode* **Automatic** or **Telephony optimised**, there may be network restrictions if you try to use Audi connect infotainment services* and make telephone calls at the same time.

Further options

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button.

- **Connection manager**: Refer to ⇨ *page 257*.
- **Bluetooth settings***: Refer to ⇨ *page 259*.
- **Online settings***: Refer to ⇨ *page 259*.
- **Wi-Fi settings***: Refer to ⇨ *page 205*.

Directory settings

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Directory** > right control button > **Directory settings**.

Memory capacity

The **Memory capacity** of the directory will be displayed.

You can manage up to 17000 contacts with the directory. Up to 4000 contacts can be loaded from your mobile phone into each directory, and up to 1000 contacts can be imported from a storage device.

Sort order

You can sort the contacts in your directory alphabetically according to their **surname** or **first name**.

Import contacts/Export contacts

Refer to ⇨ *page 195*. ▶

[1] Audi only enables you to access third-party services. We cannot guarantee that these services will be available at all times; this is the responsibility of the third-party service provider.

[2] Depends on the connected mobile phone

Download directory

To update the contacts in the MMI, you can download the contacts from your mobile phone manually. Depending on the mobile phone you are using, the Bluetooth connection may have to be disconnected and re-established before you can update the contacts.

Hiding contacts without a number

If this function is switched on and if no number has been stored for a contact, the contact is hidden in the directory.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Subject	Advice
Connecting the mobile phone to the MMI fails.	Check if the requirements for connecting a mobile phone have been met ⇨ *page 182*, or: Check if you have accidentally declined the PIN for setting up the connection on your mobile phone. If necessary, repeat the connection procedure ⇨ *page 182*.
The mobile phone does not support the **Bluetooth SIM Access Profile** (e.g. iPhone).	Insert your own mini SIM card in the SIM card reader* and use the functions of the car telephone kit* independently of your mobile phone. When the mini SIM card is inserted, you can also use the contacts from your mobile phone by connecting the mobile phone to the system via the **Directory** profile ⇨ *page 259*.
Using the MMI with **two SIM cards** (in the SIM card reader *and* in a mobile phone).	The MMI only ever accesses *one* SIM card at a time. A mini SIM card inserted in the SIM card reader* has priority over one in a mobile phone. However, you can still access the contacts on another mobile phone via Bluetooth if a mini SIM card is inserted ⇨ *page 259*.
After the mobile phone was connected **not all/none of the contacts** were loaded into the MMI.	Avoid using special characters in names. Avoid using contact groups on your mobile phone.
Some **telephone functions** are greyed out/not available.	The telephone functions will depend on the mobile network service provider and the mobile phone used.
Some **telephone functions** are greyed out/not available, even though the mobile phone supports them.	Check if the Bluetooth settings on your mobile phone are restricted or if individual Bluetooth settings are deactivated. This may be the case if the mobile phone belongs to a business organisation.
Applies to vehicles with Audi phone box: Your mobile phone cannot be charged wirelessly or the charging cycle is interrupted.	Applies to vehicles with Audi phone box: Check whether your mobile phone is Qi compatible. Check that your mobile phone is placed centrally on the phone symbol in the Audi phone box and that there are *no* other objects in the Audi phone box. Do not place your remote control key in the Audi phone box together with your mobile phone.

Audi connect

General information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

The following functions may be available depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment:

– Audi connect infotainment
– Audi connect vehicle control services

WARNING

– Only use Audi connect services and the Wi-Fi hotspot when the traffic conditions allow you to do so safely – risk of accident! Please see ⇨ *page 156, Notes on traffic safety*.
– Mobile devices, tablet and laptop computers and devices of a similar weight can only be operated safely when the vehicle is stationary. Like any loose object, they can be catapulted through the vehicle in an accident and cause serious injuries. Always make sure that such devices are securely stowed while you are driving. Please also observe the safety warnings in the chapter on ⇨ *page 56*.

CAUTION

– Applies when using the embedded SIM card: With a small number of exceptions, the data connection costs for Audi connect infotainment services are included in the price of Audi connect infotainment during the licence period. Please note that costs can be incurred if certain services are used. This applies, for example, to online radio/podcasts, the Gracenote online database or Internet connections and services which use the Wi-Fi hotspot, such as online media. Depending on your country, you will need to purchase data plans for an additional charge ⇨ *page 205* or use your own SIM card for these services. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.
– Applies when using your own SIM card in the SIM card reader or in the mobile phone via Bluetooth (SAP) or in a Wi-Fi device via personal hotspot: If you use your own SIM card, all data connections for all Audi connect infotainment services will use it. Depending on your network provider, you may be charged for this service, especially if you are using the system abroad. We therefore strongly recommend that you use an unlimited data plan. For more information, contact your service provider.
– In certain cases, the data connection for the Wi-Fi hotspot is established via the SIM card of your Wi-Fi device as a substitute. This depends on the configuration of your Wi-Fi device and operating system. Depending on your network provider, this may incur charges, especially if you are using the system abroad. We therefore strongly recommend that you use an unlimited data plan. For further information, contact your mobile network service provider or refer to the operating instructions for your Wi-Fi device.
– Please note that it is your responsibility to take precautions regarding data protection, anti-virus protection and protection against loss of data on mobile devices used, for example, to connect to the Internet via the Wi-Fi hotspot.
– In areas with poor GPS reception or outside the area covered by your mobile network service provider, some functions/services may not be able to send/receive data and may be restricted or unavailable.

Note

– The availability of the services depends on the licence period.
– Audi only enables you to access third party services via the MMI and accepts no responsibility for the content or availability of the services.
– The latest mobile phone standards are not available for use in all countries. For further information, please consult an Audi dealer or your mobile network service provider.
– The availability, scope, provider and price of the services offered can vary, as can the way in which the services are displayed on the screen. These variations depend on your country, model, model year, device and mobile phone contract.

▶

– All services/apps may be changed, activated/deactivated, renamed or extended without further notice.
– In some countries a different app than the myAudi app may be available for your vehicle. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.

Audi connect infotainment

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

Audi connect infotainment services allow online information to be directly transmitted into the vehicle.

An Internet connection is required in order to use Audi connect infotainment. The following options may be available for this, depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment:

– Embedded SIM card
– SIM card reader
– Mobile phone via Bluetooth
– Personal Wi-Fi hotspot

WARNING

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 198.*

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 198.*

Embedded SIM card

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment and embedded SIM card

The data connection for the Audi connect infotainment services is established via an embedded SIM card (eSIM card) fitted in the vehicle. You can use Audi connect infotainment services right away.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 198.*

SIM card reader

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment and SIM card reader

All data connections will be established via the SIM card in the card reader if one is inserted ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 198.*

Important: The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on. A data connection for Audi connect infotainment services must be configured. Your own SIM card must be the size of a mini SIM card ⇨ ⓘ and must have a data option.

Inserting SIM card

The SIM card reader is located in the glove box.

- ▸ The missing corner of the SIM card should be at the front left as you insert it.
- ▸ Slide the SIM card into the slot in the SIM card reader until you feel it engage.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Enter PIN** on the MMI. Enter the PIN for your SIM card.
- ▸ Select and confirm **OK**.
- ▸ If you would like the MMI to connect automatically in the future, select and confirm **Yes**. Refer also to ⇨ *page 204*.

The signal strength symbol ⑩ and connection type symbol ⑪ will appear in the status bar of the MMI when the connection has been established successfully ⇨ *page 166, Fig. 138.*

Removing SIM card

- ▸ Briefly press the SIM card.

CAUTION

– Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 198.*
– To avoid damaging the SIM card reader, only use mini SIM cards (25 mm x 15 mm). Please contact your mobile network service provider for more information on mini SIM cards.
– Should you have inserted a different SIM card size in the SIM card reader, do not under any circumstances attempt to remove it yourself as this may damage the SIM card reader. Please contact a qualified workshop. ▸

– If you use SIM card adapters, the vibrations caused by the movement of the vehicle may cause the SIM card to become detached from the adapter - risk of damage to the SIM card reader. Please contact a qualified workshop.

Note

– Further information on the Internet connection can be found on ⇨ *page 204*.
– The SIM card must not be removed from the SIM card reader while Audi connect infotainment services are being used.

Connecting a mobile phone via Bluetooth

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment and SAP-enabled mobile phone

Depending on the country and your vehicle's equipment, it may be possible for the MMI to use your mobile phone's SIM card to establish an Internet connection.

All data connections are established via the SIM card in the mobile phone ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 198*.

Important: Your mobile phone must support the Bluetooth SIM Access Profile (Bluetooth SAP for data connections). The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on. There must not be a SIM card inserted in the SIM card reader. The mobile phone you would like to connect must not be connected actively to any other Bluetooth device. The MMI must not be connected to a mobile phone. Access to your SIM card (*SIM Access*) must be activated on your mobile phone. Your own SIM card must have a data option.

Connecting a mobile phone

▸ Switch on the Bluetooth function and the discoverability option of both the MMI system ⇨ *page 259* and the mobile phone.
▸ Connect the mobile phone to the MMI ⇨ *page 182*.

Only after the mobile phone has been successfully connected via Bluetooth SAP for data connections will the name of your mobile phone appear in the connection manager ⇨ *page 257* in the **Data connection** menu. If this does not happen, make sure that the car phone function is switched on.

Switching on the car phone

▸ Select: Menu button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Connection manager**.
▸ Turn the rotary pushbutton clockwise or anticlockwise to select your mobile phone.
▸ Select: right control button > **Display Bluetooth profiles**.
▸ Switch on the **Car phone** function.

If your mobile phone does not support Bluetooth SAP for data connections or the requirements for connecting a mobile phone have not been met, it will not be possible to switch on the car phone function.

After connecting successfully

Your mobile phone is no longer connected to the Internet.

▸ To establish the Internet connection, connect your mobile phone to the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot ⇨ *page 201*.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 198*.

Note

– It is only possible to connect a mobile phone via the SIM Access Profile on vehicles with the Audi phone box*.
– The Bluetooth connection between the system and the mobile phone is automatically terminated when you leave the car.

Using a personal Wi-Fi hotspot

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment and personal Wi-Fi hotspot

Depending on the country and your vehicle's equipment, it may be possible for the MMI to use your mobile device's existing Internet connection via a Wi-Fi connection. ▸

Important: The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on. Your mobile device and mobile network provider must support the personal Wi-Fi hotspot function. The personal Wi-Fi hotspot on your mobile device must be activated. Other devices must be permitted to access the personal hotspot. Your own SIM card in the mobile device must have a data option. There must not be a SIM card inserted in the SIM card reader.

Connecting the MMI to a personal hotspot

- Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Wi-Fi settings** > **Wi-Fi** > **on**.
- Then select and confirm **Network search**. The devices found will be shown on the infotainment display.
- Select and confirm your personal Wi-Fi hotspot from the list.
- You may need to enter the password specified by your mobile device.
- Select and confirm **OK**.

WARNING

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 198.*

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 198.*

Note

– Please contact your mobile network service provider to find out which functions your mobile device supports.
– Whether other devices can use your personal Wi-Fi hotspot depends on your data plan.
– Audi recommends that you set a password to protect mobile wireless networks from unauthorised access.

Using the Wi-Fi hotspot

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi hotspot

You can connect up to eight Wi-Fi devices (such as smartphones) to the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot. If the MMI is connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 199*, the connected Wi-Fi devices can also use the MMI's Internet connection.

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

- Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Wi-Fi settings** > **Wi-Fi**. Switch on the Wi-Fi hotspot.
- Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Wi-Fi settings** > **Network key**. The access codes for the Wi-Fi hotspot will be displayed. If necessary, activate the discoverability setting on the Wi-Fi hotspot.
- Switch your mobile device's Wi-Fi function on and connect it to the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot using the access data displayed.
- Please note any system queries on your Wi-Fi device.

Your device should now have been successfully connected to the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot.

WARNING

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 198.*

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 198.*

Audi connect infotainment services

Configuration

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

Important: Your vehicle must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 199*.

Before you first use certain Audi connect infotainment services, it is necessary to configure them via your personal myAudi account at my.audi.com.

- Register in the myAudi app or at my.audi.com.
- Add your vehicle in the myAudi app. Follow the instructions given by the myAudi app.
- Verify your myAudi account in the myAudi app using one of the verification procedures offered. ▶

▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > right control button > **Login**.
▸ Log in to myAudi with your e-mail address and password.

Note

– When you call up certain Audi connect infotainment services on the MMI, you may also need to enter your myAudi access data.
– Some Audi connect infotainment services must be activated via my.audi.com.
– To log in easily in the vehicle, you will receive an 8-digit myAudi PIN as an alternative to your myAudi password after you have set up a myAudi account.
– In some countries a different app than the myAudi app may be available for your vehicle. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.
– Depending on the country, you can use an Audi app or my.audi.com.

Calling up Audi connect infotainment

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect**.

The available Audi connect infotainment services will be listed on the infotainment display.

You can also filter the Audi connect infotainment services by category:
▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > left control button > e.g. **Navigation** for the Audi connect infotainment services in the navigation menu.

Basic functions

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > *desired Audi connect infotainment service* > right control button.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment and the Audi connect infotainment service you wish to use, the following basic functions may be available:

Save as a preview

You can have a preview of selected Audi connect infotainment services displayed on the Audi connect infotainment homepage.

Show on map

You can have selected content displayed on the map and use it for route guidance.

Login

Refer to ⇨ *page 201*.

Read[1)]

You can have the MMI read out some types of content.

Call

If a telephone number has been stored for an entry, you can call the number and, for example, reserve tickets.

Refresh

The content of the Audi connect infotainment service selected is updated.

Start route guidance

If an entry contains a location, this can be used as a navigation destination. The route guidance function will be started immediately.

Change search area

The search area selected can be changed at any time. For more information on search areas, please refer to ⇨ *page 213*.

Closing an Audi connect infotainment service

You can close an Audi connect infotainment service at any time and go back to the homepage, regardless of which function you were using.

Services

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

The following services and more may be available depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment: ▶

[1)] Not available in all languages.

Weather information

Information on the current weather and weather forecasts for the search area selected.

▸ Select and confirm **Weather**.

Online news

▸ Select: **Online news** > *desired news feed* > *a headline*.

Personalised newsfeeds can be displayed if you have logged in to myAudi in your vehicle ⇨ *page 201*.

WARNING

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 198*.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 198*.

Further options

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > right control button.

Depending on the country and the equipment in your vehicle, the following options may be available in the overview of the Audi connect infotainment services:

About Audi connect

Here you will find legal information about the use of Audi connect infotainment.

Login

Refer to ⇨ *page 201*.

Connection manager

Refer to ⇨ *page 257*.

Licence periods

The validity and the time remaining on your licences is displayed.

Refresh

The content of the Audi connect infotainment service selected or the entire Audi connect infotainment list is updated.

Data protection

Refer to ⇨ *page 318*.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 198*.

Audi connect vehicle control services

Services

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control services

You can use the Audi connect vehicle control services, for example, to view data on your vehicle or to control vehicle functions remotely.

You can view and use the services available for your vehicle at my.audi.com or in the myAudi app.

Information on the services and the corresponding app were correct at the time of printing. The scope of the services depends on the country and the vehicle equipment. There may be changes during the service life of the vehicle.

WARNING

– Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 198*.
– Driver messages, notifications and warning and indicator lamps that are lit up in the vehicle take precedent over the information from Audi connect services. Do not let the information from Audi connect services tempt you into taking any risks when driving. This could lead to a breakdown in road traffic resulting in a potential accident with serious injury.

Note

– Whether you are able to call up certain types of data or operate functions remotely depends on the charge level of the vehicle's ▸

battery. These functions are therefore only available to a limited extent after the ignition has been switched off.
– The Internet connection for the Audi connect vehicle control services is established via an eSIM card. The costs for this are included in the price of the Audi connect vehicle control services. The mobile network, for example, must be available to use the services.

Setting up

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control services

The owner of the vehicle must be set as the key user for certain Audi connect vehicle control services, depending on the vehicle's equipment.

Setting the key user

Important: You must not have set a key user yet.

- ▸ You need a myAudi account in order to set a key user for the vehicle. Register in the myAudi app or at my.audi.com.
- ▸ Add your vehicle in the myAudi app.
- ▸ Follow the instructions given by the myAudi app.

Resetting the key user

If you remove the key user, all other users and their permissions will be deleted. It will no longer be possible to use the Audi connect vehicle control services.

Important: A key user must have been set. The ignition must be switched on.

Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > right control button > **Audi connect user management** > **Key user** > **Reset key user**.

Using the myAudi app

- ▸ Install the myAudi app on your mobile device and log in with your access data.

Note

– Before you sell your vehicle, reset the key user and reset all the settings to the factory defaults ⇨ *page 257*.
– It may also be necessary to enter your 4-digit PIN (which you specified at my.audi.com) when calling up some Audi connect vehicle control services.
– In some countries a different app than the myAudi app may be available for your vehicle. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.
– Depending on the country, you can use an Audi app or my.audi.com.
– When entering the vehicle code, please note that the system is case-sensitive.

Settings

Mobile network

- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > right control button > **Connection manager**.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Online settings** > **Data connection settings**.

Depending on the type of connection, the following functions may be available depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment:

Data connection settings

You can select when you would like the system to establish an Internet connection in the **Data connection settings** menu. The online connection is ended automatically when a requested Audi connect infotainment service no longer requires any further data.

– **Connection setup**: You can specify when a data connection should be established.
– **Data roaming**: This function is deactivated when the vehicle leaves the factory. Data roaming must be activated before you can use a data connection abroad. This setting is saved for the current SIM card/the mobile device currently connected.
– **Audi connect (MMI)**: If this function is switched on, a data connection will be established automatically for the use of Audi connect infotainment services.
– **Wi-Fi devices**: When this function is activated, mobile devices can use the Internet connection on the Wi-Fi hotspot. ▸

Connection settings

Depending on the SIM card used, the connection may be configured automatically. The following settings can be changed. For more information, contact your service provider.

- **APN**: The system access point depends on your mobile network service provider and is assigned automatically.
- **User name**: The user name for your online profile is assigned by your mobile network service provider.
- **Password**: The password for your online profile is assigned by your mobile network service provider.

WARNING

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 198*.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 198*.

Note

For more information on roaming charges, contact your service provider.

Wi-Fi settings

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi hotspot

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

► Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Wi-Fi settings**.

The following functions may be available depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment:

Wi-Fi

If this function is switched on, the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot is activated and Wi-Fi devices can be connected to the Wi-Fi hotspot.

Network key

The Wi-Fi connection between the MMI and your Wi-Fi device is encrypted. You can change the following values as required:

- **Access point (SSID)**: Name of the Wi-Fi hotspot.
- **Password**: A random MMI password is set at the factory. This password can be changed. The encryption method requires the password to be at least 8 characters long. Please select a secure password.
- **Discoverability**: You can activate/deactivate the discoverability of the Wi-Fi hotspot.

Network search

A list of the Wi-Fi networks available near you is displayed.

Connection to personal hotspot

The Wi-Fi hotspot of the MMI is activated. The MMI can establish an Internet connection to a personal Wi-Fi hotspot (e.g. smartphone). For more information, please refer to ⇨ *page 200*.

WARNING

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 198*.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 198*.

Note

In vehicles without Audi connect infotainment, the Wi-Fi hotspot can only be used for the Wi-Fi audio player*. A data connection to the Internet cannot be established.

Data plans[1)]

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Data plans must be purchased for certain services ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 198*.

You can purchase data plans via my.audi.com. ▶

1) Not available in all markets.

WARNING

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 198.*

CAUTION

- Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 198.*
- Please note that, when using your own SIM card, you will be unable to use any current data plans.

Note

- If no data plans are available for the required country, you may be able to use your own SIM card.
- Depending on the country, you can use the myAudi app or my.audi.com.
- When selling your vehicle, you should delete the vehicle in the network provider's customer portal to prevent any further purchases at your expense.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle's equipment.

Subject	Advice
Audi connect infotainment services: Some Audi connect infotainment services are greyed out/not available.	Before you first use some Audi connect infotainment services, it is necessary to activate/configure them via your personal myAudi account. Detailed information can be found online at my.audi.com.
Wi-Fi hotspot: No Wi-Fi connection is possible.	Check whether Wi-Fi is activated on the MMI ⇨ *page 205*. Delete all existing Wi-Fi connections on your mobile device and restart it.
Wi-Fi hotspot: The data connection is interrupted.	Check whether the **Connection to personal hotspot** function is switched on ⇨ *page 205*. Switch the function off when you are not using a personal hotspot.
Personal Wi-Fi hotspot: **Network search** is not possible (greyed out).	The Wi-Fi hotspot must be switched on in order to start a network search for your personal Wi-Fi hotspot ⇨ *page 200*.

Emergency call

Overview

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

Description of the in-vehicle emergency call system.

An emergency call is a combination of a voice call and a data transfer. Important information such as details about the vehicle and its position are transferred to the relevant emergency switchboards using the vehicle's data transfer function.

Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, the following functions are available:

The **emergency call** function allows you to organise assistance as quickly as possible in dangerous situations. Use this function whenever you need help ⇨ *page 207*.

– Audi connect emergency call (TPS emergency call). This eCall system uses third-party emergency switchboards, which may include public emergency switchboards.

The **online roadside assistance call** function allows you to request assistance in the event of a breakdown or a minor accident ⇨ *page 208*.

⚠ WARNING

In areas with poor GPS reception or outside the area covered by your mobile network service provider, some functions/services may not be able to send/receive data and may be restricted or unavailable.

Emergency call

Operation

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

The services are provided via a SIM card installed in the vehicle. Provision of these services requires that the mobile network of the SIM card be functioning and ready for use. The services provided by Audi are only available within the area covered by the mobile network service provider chosen by Audi.

Note

– The emergency call function cannot be deactivated via the settings on the infotainment system.
– The availability of the TPS emergency call is time-limited.
– The cost of TPS voice calls and data connections is included in the price of the services.

Functions

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

The TPS emergency call can be placed manually or automatically ⇨ *page 207*.

When a TPS emergency call is placed automatically, information required to alert the emergency services may also be transferred to a public switchboard or police station to enable assistance to be provided as quickly as possible.

Making an emergency call

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

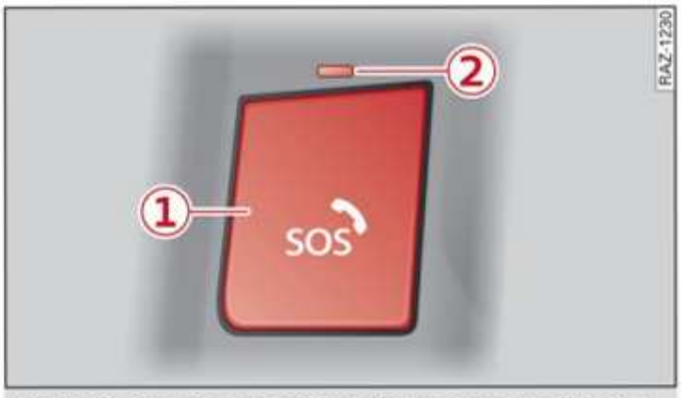


Fig. 148 Front headliner: Cover for emergency call button

Manual emergency call

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

- ▸ Lightly press the cover ① to open it.
- ▸ Press the emergency call button until the LED ② flashes. The emergency call will be placed.
- ▸ If you press the emergency call button accidentally, press it again immediately until the LED lights up permanently. The emergency call will be cancelled. ▶

Automatic emergency call

In some circumstances, the vehicle's electronics will make an emergency call automatically if, for example, an airbag has been triggered. The LED in the emergency call button ② will flash. The emergency call will be placed. The emergency call cannot be cancelled.

Meaning of LEDs

- **Green** – The emergency call function is available.
- **Red** – A fault has occurred in the emergency call function. Please contact a qualified workshop. Please note the driver messages regarding the availability of the emergency call function ⇨ *page 208*.
- **Off** – The emergency call function is temporarily unavailable, e.g. if there is no network.

Warnings

In the event of a critical emergency call system failure, the vehicle occupants receive a warning; refer to ⇨ *page 208, Meaning of LEDs* and ⇨ *page 208, Driver messages*.

Note

If the emergency call is dropped due to a poor connection, the system will re-connect automatically.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

Emergency call function: fault. Function partially available. Please contact workshop

You can make an emergency call if the indicator lamp lights up and the message appears, but not all of the functions may be available. For example, you may not be able to make a voice call to the emergency call centre. However, it may be possible for the system to transfer data. Drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Emergency call function: fault. Function unavailable. Please contact workshop

If the indicator lamp lights up and the message appears, you cannot make an emergency call. Drive to a qualified workshop as soon as possible and have the fault rectified.

Online roadside assistance call

Description

Applies to: vehicles with online roadside assistance call

A call to the online roadside assistance service[1)] is a combination of a voice call and a data transfer. Important information such as details about the vehicle and its position are transferred to the Audi call centre using the vehicle's data transfer function.

Making an online roadside assistance call

Applies to: vehicles with online roadside assistance call



Fig. 149 Front headliner: Online roadside assistance call button

Making an online roadside assistance call

- Press button ③. The red LED in the button will light up. The online roadside assistance call will be placed.
- If you press button ③ accidentally, simply press it again.

Audi incident assistance

The vehicle electronics detect if a minor accident has occurred. You can then choose between an online roadside assistance call or an emergency call. ▶

[1)] The availability of the services offered depends on your country and is time-limited.

Note

If the roadside assistance call is dropped due to a poor connection, the system will re-connect automatically.

Navigation

Calling up the navigation menu

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 150 Infotainment system: Entering a destination

The navigation system guides you directly to your destination, avoiding traffic obstructions and using alternative routes if desired.

▸ Select: NAV/MAP button.

After calling up the navigation system, the **Enter destination** menu will be displayed.

The following information can be displayed:

① Entry field for the search function . 210
② Home address 212
③ Destinations recently travelled to . 211
④ Stored favourites 212

If you have connected a mobile phone to the MMI, your directory contacts are then listed if you have added navigation data to at least one contact.

The menu item **Favourites** ④ and your directory contacts are shown in the **Enter destination** menu when you have entered one or more letters in the entry field.

Switching between destination entry and map

– Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed, or:
– Press the left control button > **Switch to map**.

WARNING

– Driving on the road requires the full attention of the driver. Please always note the information in the chapter ⇨ *page 156, Notes on traffic safety*.
– The route calculated by the navigation system is a recommendation. Always adhere to the locally applicable traffic laws and regulations. If the recommended route is in contradiction with the locally applicable traffic laws and regulations, these always take precedence – risk of accident!

Note

– Snow or other obstructions on the GPS aerial or interference caused by trees or large buildings could affect the reception of the satellite signals and make positioning difficult. GPS reception and vehicle positioning can also be adversely affected by deactivation or a malfunction of several satellites.
– Road names can change; therefore the names stored on the MMI may be different from the actual names in exceptional cases.

Entering a destination

Searching for navigation destinations

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

With the search function, you can use the MMI touch pad* or the speller for letters/numbers to enter navigation destination information in any order (e.g. Forest Road 20 London). You can search for special destinations, contacts, recent destinations or favourites in the same way to help you navigate to the desired address.

Search function

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 210, Fig. 150*.
▸ Push the rotary pushbutton upwards. The entry field will be displayed ① ⇨ *page 210, Fig. 150*.
▸ Enter one or more search terms in the entry field.
▸ If appropriate, confirm an autocomplete suggestion* or a suggested word* ⇨ *page 164, Speller for letters/numbers*.
▸ Turn the rotary pushbutton clockwise to switch to the results list. ▶

▸ Select a destination from the results list and confirm it.

The route will be displayed as an overview on the map. Route guidance is already active.

Narrowing the search area

All countries are preselected for the search function at the factory.

▸ In the input menu ① ⇨ *page 210, Fig. 150*, select the right control button > **Country selection**.
▸ Select the country (●) which you would like to search in. This will limit the number of results and speed up the search. The entry selected in the country selection menu will be stored, or:
▸ Select and confirm **All countries**.

Note

– The terms suggested by the MMI depend on the destinations to which you have recently driven.
– Up to 50 entries are stored in the list of destinations to which you have recently driven.
– For more information on the search function, please refer to ⇨ *page 165*.

Loading the last destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

The destinations you have most recently driven to are stored automatically and can be loaded directly as new destinations.

Calling up the menu

Important: You must have set a destination in the past.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 210, Fig. 150*.

The destinations to which you have recently driven are listed directly in the **Enter destination** menu under your home address and marked with the symbol ③ ⇨ *page 210, Fig. 150*.

▸ Select and confirm one of the recently set destinations from the list.

Deleting recent destinations

▸ Select one of the recently set destinations from the list.
▸ Select: right control button > **Delete destination** > **Delete this recent destination** or **Delete all recent destinations**.

The destination selected or all the recent destinations will be deleted and no longer displayed in the **Enter destination** menu.

Entering an address

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

As an alternative to the search function, you can also enter an address step by step.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 210, Fig. 150*.
▸ Select: left control button > **Enter address**.
▸ **To enter a destination via the country**: Select and confirm **Country**. Select a country from the list and confirm it, or search for a country via the entry field.
▸ **To enter a destination via the town/post code**: Select and confirm **Town/post code**. Enter a town or a post code, or select the town from the list and confirm it.
▸ Select and confirm additional details for the destination such as **Street**, **House number** or **Centre**.
▸ **To enter a destination via an intersection***: You must already have entered a street. Select and confirm **Intersection**. Select a street from the list and confirm it, or search for a street via the entry field.
▸ Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Setting a destination from the map (via MMI touch)

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and MMI touch pad

A location on the map can be set as a destination.

Calling up the map

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed. ▶

Setting a convenient map scale

▸ Turn the rotary pushbutton clockwise or anti-clockwise.

Activating the crosshairs

▸ Press the rotary pushbutton. The crosshairs will appear on the map.

Moving the crosshairs

▸ Use the MMI touch pad to move the crosshairs to the destination ⇨ *page 161*.

Setting the destination

▸ Press the rotary pushbutton when the crosshairs are displayed.
▸ Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Hiding the crosshairs

▸ Press the BACK button.

Additional information on the point selected with the crosshairs: If you use the crosshairs to preselect a location on the map, any existing information on this location (e.g. road name, address or special destinations) will be displayed ⑫ ⇨ *page 220, Fig. 158*.

Using home address/favourite as the destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

The home address option is a quick and easy way to have the system guide you home. The favourites make it easier to access destinations you require regularly.

Calling up the menu

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 210, Fig. 150*.

Using the home address as the destination

Important: A home address must have been stored ⇨ *page 217*.

Your **home address** is displayed in the **Enter destination** menu ② ⇨ *page 210, Fig. 150*.

▸ Select and confirm **Home address**.

Using a favourite as the destination

Important: At least one favourite must have been stored as a destination ⇨ *page 217*.

▸ Enter at least the first three letters of the desired favourite in the entry field for the search function. The favourites found will be shown on the infotainment display ④ ⇨ *page 210, Fig. 150*.
▸ Select and confirm the desired item.

Note

– Further home address settings can be found on ⇨ *page 217*.
– Further favourites settings can be found on ⇨ *page 217*.

Using a destination from the directory

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 151 Infotainment system: Contact details

You can navigate directly to entries in the directory.

Important: A postal address with navigation data must be available for a contact or a navigation destination must have already been added for a contact ⇨ *page 218*.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 210, Fig. 150*.
▸ Select: left control button > **Directory** > *a contact*.

Directory contacts are displayed in alphabetical order and are displayed together with a location symbol:

① Business postal address
② Private postal address
③ Business navigation destination ▶

④ Private navigation destination

– Select and confirm a postal address or a navigation destination. If you select a navigation destination, route guidance is started immediately.
– If you select a postal address, you can check the address details again.
– You can then select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Further directory functions in the navigation system can be found on ⇨ *page 218*.

Note

– Addresses which you have imported from your mobile phone into the MMI can also be used as navigation destinations.
– If a directory contact is greyed out, no navigation destination/postal address has yet been added for the contact.

Point of interest search (special destinations)

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Searching for special destinations

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 210, Fig. 150*.
▸ Select: left control button > **Special destinations**.

Changing the search area

▸ Select and confirm: **Search area** > *a search area from the list*.

The following search categories are available:

In immediate vicinity: You can select special destinations from different categories. The special destinations are displayed in a list, starting with destinations in the immediate vicinity and going up to destinations within a radius of 200 km.

In vicinity of route: Special destinations along the route can only be selected when the route guidance function is active. The special destinations are located directly on or in the immediate vicinity of your route. You can also select special destinations from different categories. For example, you can look for a hotel or a car park along the route.

In vicinity of destination/In vicinity of stopover: Special destinations near the destination/stopover can only be selected when the route guidance function is active. You can also select special destinations from different categories. For example, you can look for a hotel or a car park at the destination.

In new town: Select a country or search in a new town. Enter the name of the desired town. You can select special destinations from different categories. You can use this function to find special destinations in any town irrespective of the destination currently set or the vehicle position.

Searching for the name of a special destination in the selected search area

▸ Select and confirm **Find entry** > **Enter special dest.**
▸ Enter the name of the special destination.

Searching for a special destination in a specific category

▸ Select and confirm **Select category**.
▸ Select and confirm a category, for example: Restaurant.

myAudi special destinations*[1)]

Important: You must have created a myAudi account at my.audi.com. You must have added a vehicle to your myAudi account and stored a destination.

In **myAudi special destinations**, you can find personal special destinations which you have added in your myAudi account and imported to the MMI using an SD card or online* ⇨ *page 225*.

Adding further myAudi special destinations

▸ Select: right control button > **Import myAudi special destinations**.
▸ Log in to myAudi if necessary.
▸ Select and confirm the desired medium from the source list (e.g. **SD card 1**). ▶

1) This function is not available in the Mexican market.

Note

– Further information on the myAudi special destinations can be found online at my.audi.com.
– The distances to special destinations are shown as the crow flies from your current location. The actual driving distance between your current position and the special destination is updated automatically. However, the list of special destinations is not sorted again.
– Sometimes there are destination entries in the list that cannot be displayed completely because they are too long. Select the corresponding entry in the list. Select: right control button > Show destination details. Detailed information on the list entry selected is then shown.

Online point of interest search (online search)

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Audi connect infotainment

You can look for special destinations online.

Important: The requirements for Audi connect infotainment must be met ⇨ *page 198*.

Calling up the online search

- Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 210, Fig. 150*.
- Select: left control button > **Online search**. The search area that was last set will be displayed in the entry field.

Changing the search area

- Select: right control button > **Select search area**.

Searching for an online destination in the selected search area

- Enter a new town/country if necessary.
- Enter the search term, e.g. hotel.
- Press the rotary pushbutton.
- Select and confirm an online destination from the list.

Searching for an online destination in a specific category

- Select and confirm **Select category**.
- Select and confirm a category, for example: Restaurant.

Please see ⇨ *page 213* for information on which search areas are available.

You can also use the speech dialogue system* to search for online destinations ⇨ *table on page 177*.

CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 198*.

Calling up destinations from myAudi account

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Audi connect infotainment

You can import personal navigation destinations from your myAudi account to the MMI.

Important: The requirements for Audi connect infotainment must be met ⇨ *page 198*. You must have created a myAudi account at my.audi.com. You must have added a vehicle to your myAudi account and stored one or more destinations.

- Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 210, Fig. 150*.
- Select: left control button > **myAudi contacts**.
- If necessary, enter your myAudi login details or your myAudi PIN ⇨ *page 201*. The contacts stored in myAudi will be displayed.
- Select and confirm a contact.
- Select and confirm a private/business navigation destination.
- If desired, select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Note

– You only have to enter your myAudi login details once.
– You will receive your myAudi PIN after setting up a myAudi account. ▶

– For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.

Entering a destination using coordinates

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 210, Fig. 150*.
- ▸ Select: left control button > **Geographic coordinates**.
- ▸ Select **Latitude/Longitude**.
- ▸ Press the rotary pushbutton to select the individual values.
- ▸ Turn the rotary pushbutton clockwise or anticlockwise to change the selected value.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Adding a stopover

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 152 Infotainment system: Active route guidance with stopover

You can enter a new destination while route guidance is active.

Important: The route guidance function must already be active.

Calling up the menu

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 210, Fig. 150*.

Entering a destination as a stopover

- ▸ Enter a destination in the entry line ① ⇨ *page 210, Fig. 150*.
- ▸ Select a destination from the results list and confirm it.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Set as stopover**.

Deleting a stopover

- ▸ Push the rotary pushbutton upwards. The search function and the active route guidance will be displayed, or:
- ▸ Turn the rotary pushbutton to the left until the active route guidance is displayed.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Delete stopover** ②. The stopover will be deleted.

Stopping route guidance

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Important: The route guidance function must be active.

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 210, Fig. 150*.
- ▸ Turn the rotary pushbutton to the left until the active route guidance is displayed ⇨ *page 215, Fig. 152*.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Delete destination** ① ⇨ *page 215, Fig. 152*. The destination will be deleted. Alternatively:
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Stop route guidance**.

Further options when entering a destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ▸ Press the right control button.

Depending on the function chosen, the following options may be available to you when you are entering a destination:

Stop route guidance: The route guidance function must be active. The route guidance will be stopped. For more information, please refer to ⇨ *page 215*.

Country information: With this option, you can view the speed limits for towns and country roads in the country you have selected. This information is displayed automatically when you cross a border in the route information ⑦ ⇨ *page 220, Fig. 157* if this is activated ⇨ *page 223*.

Country selection ⇨ *page 210*.

Route criteria ⇨ *page 219*. ▶

Show location on map: Important: You must have selected a destination from the results list. The destination entered will be shown on the map.

Parking at this location*: Important: You must have selected a destination from the results list. All the parking facilities near the location selected are shown on the infotainment display.

Delete: The selected entry will be deleted. You can delete individual entries or all the entries (e.g. favourites or last destinations).

Audi connect at this location*: Important: You must have selected a destination from the results list. This allows you to search for e.g. travel information in the vicinity of the selected location.

Online traffic data*: Reception of online traffic information ⇨ *page 227* can be switched on/off.

Add destination to contact ⇨ *page 218*.

Store as favourite ⇨ *page 217*.

Voice guidance ⇨ *page 220*.

Navigation settings ⇨ *page 218*.

Personal route assist

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and personal route assist



Fig. 153 Infotainment system: Personal route display

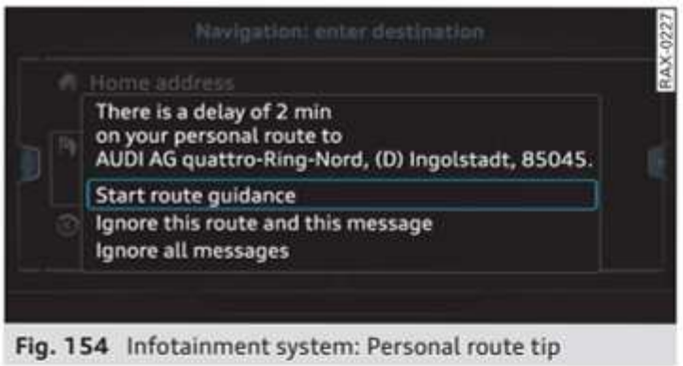


Fig. 154 Infotainment system: Personal route tip

Your MMI system can memorise routes that you frequently follow and suggest them based on your vehicle's current location (e.g. the daily route to your workplace and back).

Calling up personal routes

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 210, Fig. 150*.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Navigation settings** > **Personal route assist**.

When the function is activated ☑, the MMI records routes you frequently follow (even if you do not enter the destinations and start route guidance).

If route guidance is not active, your personal routes are listed below the home address in the **Enter destination** menu and marked with the symbol ①. This symbol is displayed in the status line on the infotainment display while the personal route assist function is switched on and the navigation menu is active.

The distance to the destination and the estimated time of arrival are also displayed for your personal routes. Even before route guidance is started, your MMI system monitors the traffic situation for your personal routes and the infotainment display shows possible traffic disruptions along the route you will probably take ②.

Optimised routes

A message is displayed if there are any larger traffic disruptions (more than 7 minutes delay), irrespective of which menu is selected ⇨ *Fig. 154*.

- ▸ Select and confirm one of the following options:

Start route guidance: The MMI starts route guidance for the personal route shown and searches for a faster route (if one is available).

Ignore this route and this message: The destination shown and all of the corresponding personal routes are no longer taken into account on the current trip. No more messages are displayed for the destination shown. The destination shown ▸

and all the corresponding personal routes are ignored until the car is parked and the ignition is subsequently switched on again.

Ignore all messages: All of the personal routes are ignored for the current trip. No more messages are displayed. Messages for traffic disruptions on the personal routes are not displayed again until the car is parked and the ignition is subsequently switched on again.

The symbol disappears from the status line and your trips are no longer recorded as soon as you switch off the personal route assist function. Trips which have already been recorded remain stored.

Deleting a personal route

- Select the desired personal route in the **Enter destination** menu ①.
- Select: right control button > **Delete destination**.

Deleting all personal routes

- Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Factory settings**.
- Select and confirm **Navigation and online memory** > **Restore factory settings** ⇨ *page 257*.

Note

– Personal routes are memorised depending on your vehicle's location. Routes are prioritised depending on how often you drive to a destination.
– Up to three personal routes are displayed in the **Enter destination** menu. The traffic situation is always monitored for the three routes most likely to be followed depending on your vehicle's current location.
– Please note that, once a personal route has been stored, it remains stored after the function is deactivated (i.e. it has to be deleted manually).
– This function is not available in the Mexican market.

Home address

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Calling up the menu

- Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 210, Fig. 150*.

Storing a home address

- Select and confirm **Home address** ② ⇨ *page 210, Fig. 150*. After calling up the home address for the first time, you will be asked to set a home address.
- Select and confirm **Create now**.
- Enter a destination, or:
- Select and confirm a destination from the list.

Editing home address

- Select the **Home address** ② ⇨ *page 210, Fig. 150*.
- Select: right control button > **Edit home address**.
- Select and confirm a new destination as the home address.

The selected destination will be stored as the new home address.

Favourites

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Calling up the menu

- Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 210, Fig. 150*.

Storing a destination as favourite

- Search for the desired destination using the entry field, or:
- Select a destination from the list.
- Select: right control button > **Store as favourite**.

Renaming a favourite

- Select the left control button > **Favourites** > *a favourite from the list* > right control button > **Rename favourite**. ▶

Moving a favourite

- Select *a favourite from the list* > right control button > **Move favourite**.
- Select and confirm the position of the favourite selected.

Deleting a favourite

- Select *a favourite from the list* > right control button > **Delete favourite** > **Delete this favourite** or **Delete all favourites**.

Directory contacts

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Two addresses (private/business) can be stored as a destination for each contact in the directory.

Calling up the menu

- Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 210, Fig. 150*.

Storing a destination as a contact in the directory

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 182*.

- Select: *a destination* > right control button > **Add destination to contact**.
- Enter the first letters of the contact desired in the entry field for the search function ⇨ *page 210, Fig. 150*. You can then select a contact from the list.
- Select and confirm **Add business destination** or **Add private destination**.

Alternative routes

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 155 Infotainment system: Display of alternative routes

Important: A destination must have been entered and you must have started route guidance.

- Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 210, Fig. 150*.
- Select: right control button > **Navigation settings** > **Always display alternative routes**.

Three routes will be displayed on the overview map after you have entered a destination.

- Select and confirm the route which you would like to use for route guidance.

The following information (if available) is displayed in the route suggestions:

– Route type (fast ①, alternative fast ②, economical route ③)
– Distance to destination and estimated time of arrival
– Level of congestion on the route including length of delay

The route which was calculated on the basis of the selected route criteria is highlighted on the overview map. Further information on particular characteristics of your route ④ is also shown on the display and read out.

Further settings

Navigation settings

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 210, Fig. 150*.
- Select: right control button > **Navigation settings**.

Depending on the function selected, you can use the following settings:

Always display alternative routes

When this function is switched on ☑, up to three route suggestions are displayed on the map ⇨ *page 218*.

Fuel warning

When the fuel gauge is in the reserve zone, a message will appear when this function is on ☑. ▶

A list of nearby filling stations will be displayed after you confirm this message. When you select one of the filling stations, the route to its location will be calculated based on the current position of your car.

Trailer mode*

Trailer mode is switched off when the vehicle leaves the factory.

When this function is switched on ☑, the MMI will take the speed limit for vehicles towing a trailer into account and the calculated arrival time will be adjusted accordingly. Trailer mode is indicated on the map's legend menu by the symbol .

Personal route assist*[1)]

The personal route assist function is switched off by default in the factory settings.

When this function is activated ☑, your trips are recorded and destinations are suggested by the MMI system ⇨ *page 216*.

The personal route assist is indicated by the symbol in the status line of the infotainment display.

Arrival notification*

The arrival notification is switched off when the vehicle leaves the factory.

When this function is switched on ☑, the MMI will inform you when you are approaching selected special destinations (e.g. imported myAudi special destinations). You can also have a sound played using the **Play notification tone** function.

Delete myAudi special destinations*[1)]

Destinations that you import from your myAudi account to your MMI are automatically saved. You can delete them individually or all at once.

Presentation mode

Use the **Presentation mode** to plan and "drive" a journey effectively on the infotainment display without the need to move the vehicle. You can choose your start location manually (**Select start location**) if, for example, you would like to calculate a route starting from a different position than the current position of the vehicle. Start the **Presentation mode** to simulate a route guidance.

Route criteria

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 156 Infotainment system: Possible route criteria

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 210, Fig. 150*.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Route criteria**.

① Traffic avoidance[1)]

- **automatic**: The route is automatically optimised using the current traffic information. If the MMI system does not display a detour route although the automatic traffic avoidance function is on and a traffic jam has been reported on the planned route, this is because the estimated time required for the detour is longer than the delay on the route with the traffic jam.
- **manual**: The MMI indicates that a better route is available and informs you of the potential time saving ⇨ *page 228*. You can then choose which route you would like to use.
- **off**: The route is not updated automatically. No optimised route is suggested.

② Motorways/③ Vignette roads[1)]/④ Toll roads/⑤ Ferries[1)]/⑥ Motorail[1)]

If you do not wish for the navigation system to include motorways, vignette/toll roads, ferries or ▸

[1)] This function is not available in the Mexican market.

car trains when calculating the route, you can select the option **avoid**.

⑦ Time restricted

- **avoid**: Roads that are closed at certain times of the day (e.g. pedestrian zones) are excluded from the route calculation.
- **automatic**: The MMI system determines whether the restricted road can be included in the route calculation based on the time tables currently stored in the navigation data.
- **with**: Roads that are closed at certain times of the day are included in the route calculation.

⑧ Seasonally restricted[1)]

- **avoid**: Roads that are closed seasonally (e.g. mountain passes) are excluded from the route calculation.
- **automatic**: The MMI system determines whether the seasonally restricted road can be included in the route calculation based on the time tables currently stored in the navigation data.
- **with**: Roads that are closed seasonally are included in the route calculation.

Voice guidance

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 210, Fig. 150*.

▸ Select: right control button > **Voice guidance**.

Voice guidance: The navigation cues can be played in **complete** or **compact** form. You can use the **traffic** option to have the system play only those announcements on traffic obstructions that are relevant for your route. Select **off** if you do not want the system to play any navigation cues.

Voice guidance during calls: Navigation cues during a telephone call can be switched on/off.

Entertainment fader ⇨ *page 261*.

Volume of spoken cues ⇨ *page 261*.

1) This function is not available in the Mexican market.

Map

How to use the map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 157 Infotainment system: Standard map with crosshairs switched off



Fig. 158 Infotainment system: Standard map with crosshairs switched on

Calling up the map

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.

Zooming in/out on the map

▸ Turn the rotary pushbutton clockwise or anticlockwise. You can also zoom in or out on the map using the MMI touch pad* ⇨ *page 161* if you have activated the crosshairs, or:

▸ Scroll the left thumbwheel on the multi-function steering wheel* ⇨ *page 17, Fig. 5*.

Switching the crosshairs on

▸ Press the rotary pushbutton while the map is displayed.

Switching the crosshairs off

▸ Press the BACK button.

With the crosshairs switched off ⇨ *Fig. 157*:

① Orientation: For further information refer to ⇨ *page 222*. ▶

② Distance to destination and estimated time of arrival.

③ When the **trailer mode** function is switched on ☑, a corresponding symbol is shown next to the arrival time.

④ Scale: Turn the rotary pushbutton clockwise/anti-clockwise to zoom in or out. When the **Automatic zoom** function is switched on ☑, an "A" for "automatic" is shown in the zoom symbol.

⑤ Altitude

⑥ Location of the vehicle

⑦ Route information: Various information is displayed during route guidance (e.g. the upcoming manoeuvre including the calculated distance and road name). Traffic information or special destinations on your current route are also displayed.

⑧ Road the vehicle is currently on: When the vehicle is stationary, "offroad" is displayed here.

With the crosshairs switched on ⇨ *Fig. 158*:

⑨ Crosshairs: Move the crosshairs in the desired direction using the MMI touch pad*/rotary pushbutton and select an item on the map as the destination. Alternatively, have information displayed on the position of the crosshairs.

⑩ Speed display[1]: Display of the maximum permitted speed on motorways, dual carriageways and other major roads.

⑪ Entertainment drawer*: ⇨ *page 162*.

⑫ Additional information on the position of the crosshairs: If you move the crosshairs onto a point on the map, any existing information on the current position of the crosshairs will be displayed. Press the rotary pushbutton to call up the destination details or start route guidance. If the crosshairs are switched off, the road you are currently on will be displayed.

⑬ Map content (special destinations, favourites): If several special destinations are located close to each other, their symbols are stacked on the map.

⑭ Better route: If a better route is available for the current route guidance, this will be shown on the map together with the time saved. Further information can be found from ⇨ *page 228* onwards.

Note

Whether the level of congestion is taken into account when the route is being calculated depends on your traffic avoidance settings ⇨ *page 219*.

Map functions

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed ⇨ *page 220, Fig. 157*.
- Press the left control button.

The following map functions are available:

Switch to destination entry

The search function must be displayed in the **Enter destination** menu ⇨ *page 210, Fig. 150*.

Traffic announcements

Up-to-date traffic information is shown on the infotainment display. Further information can be found from ⇨ *page 226* onwards.

Route list

Important: The route guidance function must be active.

Information is displayed on the route, road names and the length of the route sections. On motorways, potential parking areas and service stations will be displayed. You can select them as e.g. a stopover.

Special destinations along the route

Important: The route guidance function must be active. ▶

[1] Applies to vehicles without camera-based traffic sign recognition.

You can search for special destinations along your current route. For more information, please refer to ⇨ *page 213*.

Further options on the map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed ⇨ *page 220, Fig. 157*.
- ▸ Press the right control button.

Depending on the function chosen, the following additional options may be available in the **Map** menu:

Stop route guidance ⇨ *page 215*.

Adjust position: You can adjust the vehicle's position on the map manually and thus change the route.

Map settings ⇨ *page 222*.

Route criteria ⇨ *page 219*.

Voice guidance ⇨ *page 220*.

Navigation settings ⇨ *page 218*.

Display alternative routes ⇨ *page 218*.

Parking along the route*: Parking facilities along the route are displayed.

Store current position*: You can store your vehicle's current position as a favourite ⇨ *page 217* or as a contact in the directory ⇨ *page 218*.

Audi connect at this location*: Enables you to search for e.g. travel information in the location entered (events, weather at destination etc.).

Online traffic data*: You can switch the online traffic data on or off ☑/☐.

Country information ⇨ *page 215*.

Exclude route*: When route guidance is activated, a section of the calculated route that you have set (max. 20 km) will be avoided if possible. The navigation system will calculate an alternative route. The route you entered will only be excluded in the current route guidance; if required, you will need to re-enter the route you wish to avoid. If you exclude a route section, this section will be hatched in red and white on the map.

Adjust route*: Move your finger over the MMI touch pad*/rotary pushbutton to adjust the route on the overview map.

Map settings

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Map settings**.

Depending on the function selected, you can use the following settings:

Map colours

day/night: The map is displayed with a light/dark background colour.

automatic: The colour of the map changes to match the current light conditions (e.g. from **day** to **night** when driving through tunnels).

Map display

Standard ⇨ *page 220, Fig. 158*.

Satellite map*[1] ⇨ *page 223, Fig. 159*.

Traffic*[2] ⇨ *page 226, Fig. 162*.

Map orientation

destination map: The map indicates the destination and is set to face north.

2D driving position/2D north: The map depicts the vehicle's current position. The map is set to face the direction of travel or north.

3D driving position*: The current vehicle position is displayed on a three-dimensional map, and the map is set to face the direction of travel. ▸

1) Audi only enables you to access third-party services. We cannot guarantee that these services will be available at all times; this is the responsibility of the third-party service provider.

2) This function is not available in the Mexican market.

If the map scale is more than 100 km, the map is set to face north.

overview map: The entire route from the vehicle position to the final destination or next stopover is displayed on the map. The map scale varies according to the length of the route and is adapted automatically. The map is set to face north.

Route information

The display of route information such as the street you are currently on, upcoming turn-offs, traffic information or special destinations on the current route can be switched on/off.

Automatic zoom

on: The map scale is adjusted automatically according to the category of the road you are on (motorway, major road, other road) to ensure that you always have the best possible overview of the route ahead. When there is an upcoming turn-off, the map display will also be automatically adjusted so that you have a more detailed view.

intersection: When route guidance is active and there are upcoming turn-offs, the map display will temporarily switch to a more detailed scale so that the road layout can be identified more easily.

off: The map scale you have set will remain unaltered.

Map content

The display of map content such as weather information, traffic information or favourite destinations can be switched on and off.

The weather* is shown on the map if the scale is set to 5 km or more ⇨ *page 218, Fig. 155*.

Satellite map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Audi connect infotainment



Fig. 159 Infotainment system: Satellite map

You can have the navigation map shown with satellite images.

Important: The requirements for Audi connect infotainment must be met ⇨ *page 198*.

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Map settings** > **Map display** > **Satellite map**[1)].

For this map display the system uses data packets received online in the form of satellite pictures and combines these pictures with the road network from the **Standard** map display. The MMI has a memory capacity of 2 GB for temporarily storing the map/navigation data received online (corresponds to map/navigation data for about 4000 km of route guidance). You can also use the loaded satellite pictures for route guidance without an active data connection as long as these pictures are stored.

CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs ⇨ *in General information on page 198*.

Note

– You can delete the data stored by the satellite map[1)] by selecting **Factory settings** > ▸

[1)] Audi only enables you to access third-party services. We cannot guarantee that these services will be available at all times; this is the responsibility of the third-party service provider.

Navigation and online memory
⇨ *page 257*.

– The satellite map[1] is updated at regular intervals when it is called up. This can take a few seconds.
– When the satellite map[1] is switched on and the 3D driving position map is selected, the map display automatically switches to the 2D position map while you are driving through a tunnel.

Map update

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

There are several different ways of updating the map:

– Map updates via the **online map update*** function ⇨ *page 224* [2].
– Importing a map update to your MMI[2] using an **SD card***. Further information can be found online at my.audi.com.
– Map update at your Audi dealership. This may lead to additional costs.

Online map update

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Audi connect infotainment



Fig. 160 Infotainment system: Display of a new online map update



Fig. 161 Infotainment system: Selection of a country package

With the online map update function you can update the map material of your navigation system directly in the vehicle.

Important: The requirements for Audi connect infotainment services must be met ⇨ *page 199*.

The MMI uses the vehicle's position to establish which regions you are most often in. The MMI uses this information to suggest update packages for these regions if any are available.

Calling up the online map update

▸ Select and confirm ① **Switch to online update** when the message informing you of a new map update appears on the infotainment display, or:
▸ Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **System maintenance** > **System update** > **Online update**.

A list of the available update packages is shown on the infotainment display.

Selecting online map update

▸ Select an update package from the list ☑ ②. If update packages with a large volume of data are available for certain countries (e.g. France), you can choose to update individual regions (e.g. only southern France).
▸ Press the BACK button to confirm your selection and return to the list of available update packages. ▶

[1] Audi only enables you to access third-party services. We cannot guarantee that these services will be available at all times; this is the responsibility of the third-party service provider.

[2] This function is not available in the Mexican market.

Starting download

- Select and confirm **Start download**.
- Confirm the safety query by selecting **Start download** again.

The update packages will be downloaded, and the download status will be shown on the infotainment display.

Installing online map update

The installation of the downloaded maps only occurs after the vehicle has been parked. The new update packages are installed after the ignition is switched off. When you restart the MMI, a message indicating that the updates have been installed successfully will appear on the infotainment display.

- Confirm the successful update with **OK**.

The new maps can now be used for navigation.

CAUTION

- If you cancel a map update download, the data already downloaded are permanently deleted. The appropriate update package can be downloaded again by selecting the MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **System maintenance** > **System update**.
- Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 198*.

Note

Because of the high level of data usage when downloading large country update packages or the entire package, Audi recommends that in these cases you download the data on your computer from your myAudi account, save them on an SD card and then import them to your MMI system. Further information can be found online at my.audi.com.

myAudi special destinations

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can import your myAudi special destinations in two ways:

- Importing myAudi special destinations via the **online update*** ⇨ *page 225*.
- Importing myAudi special destinations to the MMI using an **SD card**. Further information can be found online at my.audi.com.

Note

This function is not available in the Mexican market.

myAudi special destinations (online update)

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Audi connect infotainment

You can download your myAudi special destinations from your myAudi account while in the vehicle and use them for route guidance.

Important: You must have a myAudi account and have stored myAudi special destinations. You must have already sent myAudi special destinations from myAudi to your vehicle.

Calling up the online update

- Select: NAV/MAP button > left control button > **Special destinations** > **myAudi special destinations**.
- If you have already imported myAudi special destinations, select the right control button > **Import myAudi special destinations**.
- Log in with your myAudi user data/myAudi PIN if necessary. The update sources available will be listed on the infotainment display.
- Select and confirm **Online update**.

Selecting myAudi special destinations to import

- Select all the myAudi special destinations desired from the list ☑.
- Select and confirm **Start download**. ▶

Starting download

The size of the myAudi special destinations selected is shown on the infotainment display.

- Confirm the download again by selecting **Start download**.

The myAudi special destinations will be downloaded, and the download status will be shown on the infotainment display.

- To finish importing the new myAudi special destinations, confirm the update by selecting **OK**.

Activating myAudi special destinations in the map view

The myAudi special destinations must be activated in the map display to be used in the navigation system.

- Select: NAV/MAP button > right control button > **Map settings** > **Map content**. The imported myAudi special destinations are listed and can be identified by the list names you assigned to them.
- Select all myAudi special destinations that you would like to be shown in the map display.
- Press the BACK button.

The selected myAudi special destinations are now displayed in the map view and can be used for route guidance.

CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 198.*

Calling up traffic information

Traffic information (TMC)

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 162 Infotainment system: View of traffic messages with better route

Calling up traffic information

- Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed ⇨ *page 220, Fig. 157.*
- Select: left control button > **Traffic messages**.

An overview of all the traffic messages will be shown on the infotainment display. The traffic messages are sorted according to road name. If there are several traffic messages for one road, an arrow ▶ is displayed next to the road name in the corresponding line ②. Press the rotary push-button to have all the traffic messages for the road displayed.

When route guidance is started, traffic obstructions relevant for your route are shown in the top section of the list in order of the distance from your current location.

If your MMI has calculated a better route for the current route guidance, a corresponding message ① is shown. Further information can be found on ⇨ *page 228.*

Displaying traffic information on the map

The following coloured markings indicate the traffic flow along your planned route:

Green: no obstructions

Yellow: congested traffic

Red: traffic jam

Traffic jams or other obstructions are marked with a coloured warning symbol on the map ▶

when route guidance is active. Hatched markings show the stretch of road affected by the traffic obstruction.

Coloured warning symbols: There is an upcoming traffic obstruction directly ahead on your route.

Greyed out warning symbols: Traffic obstructions that are not relevant for your route.

You can adjust the settings for the display of the coloured markings, warning symbols etc. in the **Map content** menu ⇨ *page 223*.

Reception of traffic information is also indicated by the **TMC/ONLINE*** symbol in the status line of the infotainment display ③.

Note

– Urgent traffic information, such as a car travelling in the wrong direction on the motorway, is displayed automatically. To hide the traffic information, press the BACK button or the rotary pushbutton.
– The traffic information function is not available for the markets of the Gulf Cooperation Council (GCC) member states or for the Mexican market.

Online traffic information

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Audi connect infotainment

The MMI system can receive real-time information from the Internet regarding traffic congestion, accidents, roadworks and other incidents.

Important: The requirements for Audi connect infotainment services must be met ⇨ *page 198*.

Switching online traffic information on/off

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.

▸ Select: right control button > **Online traffic data** *on* ☑.

Switching on the traffic map display

▸ To have the traffic information displayed in the best possible way, select the NAV/MAP button > right control button > **Map settings** > **Map display** > **Traffic**.

You can also have the traffic information displayed on the satellite map[1] ⇨ *page 223* or the standard map ⇨ *page 220, Fig. 157*.

If no online traffic information can be received, the traffic information will automatically be received via **TMC** ⇨ *page 226*.

Prayer compass[2]

Applies to: vehicles with prayer compass

Important: The display must be set to the map view ⇨ *page 220*.

▸ Select: left control button > **Mecca**. The direction of prayer in relation to the current vehicle position will then be shown on the infotainment display.

CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 198*.

Note

Every vehicle with active **Online traffic data** contributes to specifying and predicting the traffic situation as precisely as possible. For this purpose, information on the position of your vehicle is encrypted and transmitted anonymously to the traffic data providers at regular intervals. Should you not wish this to happen, you can switch off the **online traffic information** function at any time.

1) Audi only enables you to access third-party services. We cannot guarantee that these services will be available at all times; this is the responsibility of the third-party service provider.

2) This function is only available for the markets of the Gulf Cooperation Council (GCC) member states.

Better route

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

By receiving traffic information via **TMC**, your MMI calculates a better route (if one is available) and any possible time saving for the current route guidance. You can then choose which route you would like to use.

Calling up a better route

Important: The route guidance function must be active and dynamic traffic avoidance must be set to **manual** ⇨ *page 219*.

- Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.

If your MMI has calculated a better route for the current route guidance, the message **A better route is available.** and the time saving will be displayed on the map for a few seconds. In the map view, the ☎ symbol ⇨ *page 220, Fig. 158* draws your attention to a better route.

A message also appears in the traffic information overview ① ⇨ *page 226, Fig. 162*.

Using a better route

- Press the right control button in the map view, or:
- Select: left control button > **Traffic messages**. The better route will be displayed along with your calculated arrival time.
- Select and confirm the better route, or:
- Select and confirm **Details** to display details on the optimised route.
- You can use the MMI touch pad* to zoom in/out on the map.

Important: More than one optimised route must have been calculated.

- Press the rotary pushbutton to switch to the next route in the detail view.
- **To close the detail view**: Press the BACK button.

The route will be recalculated after you select a better route.

Dynamic traffic avoidance

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Using the traffic information received via **TMC/ ONLINE** – depending on availability – you can have the MMI guide you past traffic obstructions whenever possible. For this, the traffic avoidance must be switched on ① ⇨ *page 219*.

Note

The traffic information function is not available for the markets of the Gulf Cooperation Council (GCC) member states or for the Mexican market.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Subject	Advice
Search function: The desired destination cannot be found.	The destination may not be stored in the navigation database or it may not have been spelt correctly. Check that the desired country is set in the **Country selection** ⇨ *page 211* for the search function or select the option **All countries**.

Radio

Calling up the radio menu



Fig. 163 Infotainment system: FM/DAB station list

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the radio may support the wavebands FM, AM and DAB (digital radio). You can use the HD Radio receiver* to receive radio stations from the FM/AM wavebands digitally.

▸ Press the RADIO button.

After you call up the radio, the station list that was last open will be displayed.

To select a station: Select a station from the station list and confirm it.

To set a waveband: Press the RADIO button repeatedly until the desired waveband appears.

Depending on the station list, the following information may be displayed:

① **Waveband**
The current waveband of the station is shown in the FM/DAB* or DAB* station list and in the favourites list.

② **Radio text (short display)**
Programme information for the currently selected station is displayed in all station lists when available.

③ **Frozen station name (FM)**[1)]
Station names with this symbol have been stored permanently ⇨ *page 230*.

1) This function is not available in the Mexican market.

2) This function is not available for DAB* waveband.

Note

– The DAB* waveband is not available in all countries.
– The DAB* waveband also supports the transmission standards DAB+* and DMB Audio*, where available.
– The DAB* waveband is not available in the Mexican market.
– HD Radio* is only available in the Mexican market.

Radio functions

Search function

Applies to: vehicles with search function



Fig. 164 Infotainment system: Entry field and results list for the search function

You can enter search terms in any order using the search function. You can search in all wavebands by station name or programme type (e.g. **News**).

▸ **To call up the search function**: While in a station list (e.g. FM station list), turn the rotary pushbutton to the left until the entry field for the **search** function is displayed.
▸ **To use the search function**: Refer to ⇨ *page 165*.

You can also search for frequencies[2)].

Stations from the favourites ③ are displayed in the results list ①. The symbol ② shows which station list you will switch to by selecting a particular station.

Further options

▸ Select: RADIO button > right control button. ▶

81B012720AJ

The following options may be available to you depending on the waveband:

– **Sound settings**: Refer to ⇨ *page 260*.
– **Store as favourite**: Refer to ⇨ *page 231*.
– **Radio settings**: Refer to ⇨ *page 232*.

Programme guide*[1)]

The current and next radio programmes are listed in the digital **programme guide** for all supported stations. Select and confirm a radio programme to have more details on the programme displayed.

Manual station search[2)]

The frequency bar will appear. Select and confirm the desired frequency.

Seek[3)]

The system will select the previous or next available frequency.

Announcements

▸ Select: RADIO button > right control button > **Announcements**.

Traffic announcements*[4)]

– **off**: Traffic announcements are not played.
– **FM**: Traffic announcements can be received via FM and played by the system irrespective of the selected waveband.
– **FM/DAB***: You receive traffic announcements from both wavebands. If DAB traffic announcements are not available from the station currently set, they will be received from the FM waveband.

DAB announcements*[4)]

Depending on station availability, information (e.g. news, weather information) may be played when the function ☑ is switched on.

Volume of announcements[4)]

Refer to ⇨ *page 262*.

Radio text

Calling up the radio text

▸ Select: RADIO button > left control button > a waveband (e.g. **FM**) > a station.
▸ Select: right control button > **Radio text**.

Additional information on the programme (e.g. artist, composer, track) is shown.

Browsing through radio text entries

▸ Turn the rotary pushbutton clockwise or anticlockwise.

Call*/Start route guidance*/Write text message*

Important: A radio text entry must be displayed, and the station must be transmitting a telephone number, navigation destination or a text message number as RadioText Plus information.

If a location, telephone number or text message number has been stored for a radio text entry, the entry will be displayed with a coloured frame.

▸ Select a radio text entry with RadioText Plus information and press the rotary pushbutton.
▸ Select and confirm **Call*/Start route guidance*/Write text message***.
▸ Press the BACK button to cancel the process.

Note

The availability of radio text and radio text plus depends on the radio station.

Station names

▸ Select: RADIO button > left control button > **FM**.
▸ Select the desired station from the station list. ▶

1) Not in the FM, AM station lists
2) Not in the DAB* waveband or in the mixed FM/DAB* station list.
3) Not in the mixed station list FM/DAB*
4) This function is not available in the Mexican market.

Variable station names

Some stations use variable station names. You can lock the current name of a selected station permanently by selecting the **Lock station name**[1] option.

– **Lock station name**: Select the right control button > **Confirm**. The locked station name will be marked with the symbol ③ ⇨ *page 229, Fig. 163*.
– **Unlock station name**: Select the right control button > **Unlock station name**. The name received for the radio station will be displayed.

Detailed station information view



Fig. 165 Infotainment system: Detailed station information

Important: The **Detailed station information** option must be switched on ⇨ *page 233*.

Symbols in the detailed station information view:

① **Radio text availability**
Radio text is available for the current station ⇨ *page 230*.

② **Slideshow availability**[1]
A **slide show** is available for the current station.

③ **Interference** (DAB*, FM HD Radio*)
The station cannot be received.

④ **Picture view**
You can choose to display a **slide show**[1], **cover art** or the **station logo**[2] ⇨ *page 233*, **Preferred image*** *(DAB*/DAB+*, HD Radio waveband, FM)*.

Displaying the station list

Turn the rotary pushbutton or press the BACK button.

Radio menu



Fig. 166 Infotainment system: Radio menu

Calling up the menu

▸ Select: RADIO button > left control button.

Selecting a waveband

▸ Select and confirm the waveband you require in the radio menu, or:
▸ Press the RADIO button repeatedly until the desired waveband appears. The station list will be displayed.

① **Favourites**
The favourites list will be displayed. The menu item Favourites appears if at least one radio station has been stored as a favourite ⇨ *page 231*.

② **FM/DAB***
The mixed FM/DAB station list* appears when DAB* is available ⇨ *page 229, Calling up the radio menu*.

Other wavebands

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, you may be able to select other wavebands ③/④/⑤ in the selection menu.

Favourites

You can store your favourite stations from any waveband in the favourites list. ▸

1) This function is not available in the Mexican market.
2) Station logos may not be available in all countries.

Calling up the menu

▸ Press the RADIO button.

Storing a favourite

Important: You must be in a station list.

▸ Select *a station from the list* > right control button > **Store as favourite**, or:
▸ Press and hold the rotary pushbutton for several seconds.

Displaying the favourites list

Important: At least one favourite must be stored in the favourites list.

▸ Select: RADIO button > **Favourites**.

Listening to a favourite

Important: The favourites list must be displayed.

▸ Select and confirm a favourite from the list.

Moving a favourite

Important: The favourites list must be displayed.

▸ Select *a favourite from the list* > right control button > **Move favourite**, or:
▸ Press and hold the rotary pushbutton for several seconds.
▸ Select and confirm the position of the favourite selected.

Deleting a favourite

Important: The favourites list must be displayed.

▸ Select *a favourite from the list* > right control button > **Delete favourite** > **Delete this favourite** or **Delete all favourites**.

Further settings

Radio settings

▸ Select: RADIO button > right control button > **Radio settings**.

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle and country and the waveband selected, you can select the following settings:

Alternative frequency* (FM, DAB*)[1)]

on: The tuner attempts to switch to an alternative frequency of the current station when the reception quality becomes weaker. When the reception is lost in the FM or DAB* waveband, the system will automatically (in the background) switch to an alternative station, if there is one available.

off: Switching to an alternative frequency is switched off. The current frequency will be maintained, and in some cases may no longer be received. In the FM waveband, the alternative frequency function is automatically switched on again when the station is changed.

Between related DAB stations*[1)]

Important: The alternative frequency function must be switched on.

Some stations divide up their programming by region and provide different content to different regions. When the function is on ☑, the system switches to related regional stations if the current station has poor reception.

L band (DAB*)[1)]

There are two wavebands for the digital radio: Band III and L band. Ensembles in band III usually have a larger range extending into several regions. They can be received at all times. In some regions DAB is broadcast in the L band. When this option is on, stations from the L band will also be received.

Station names (FM)[2)]

scrolling: Scroll texts transmitted by FM stations will appear on the infotainment display.

fixed: Scroll texts transmitted by FM stations will not appear in the infotainment display. The current scroll text on the display will freeze.

Station genres

You can switch the programme type display on/off (e.g. **News**). ▸

1) This function is not available in the Mexican market.
2) This function is only available in the Mexican market.

Disaster warning

When this function is activated, alarm announcements are shown on the infotainment display.

FM HD Radio/AM HD Radio[1)]

You can switch the reception of HD Radio on or off.

Station sorting (FM)[2)]

A-Z: The stations are displayed in the station list in alphabetical order. Radio stations with variable station names are displayed after the stations which have been sorted alphabetically. Radio stations with a frequency as their station name are displayed at the end of the list.

ID: The stations in the station list are sorted according to the station's ID (e.g. all BBC radio stations are sorted together). Radio stations with a frequency as their station name are displayed at the end of the list.

Station sorting (DAB)*[2)]

A-Z: The stations are displayed in the station list in alphabetical order.

Ensemble: Ensembles comprise various radio stations of a specific area (e.g. a town or region); they are listed together as an ensemble in the station list. To open/close the list of radio stations in an ensemble, select and confirm the ensemble. Available sub-programmes* (additional services provided by DAB* radio stations) are listed beneath the radio station (indented).

Detailed station information

When this function is switched on ☑ and the station or favourites list is open, the system switches to the **Detailed station information** view ⇨ *page 231* after approximately five seconds. Where available, information on the selected station (e.g. station name, artist, slide show[2)], station logo[3)]) may be shown.

Preferred image* (DAB*/DAB+*, HD Radio waveband[1)], FM)

You can specify your preferred image for the **Detailed station information** option ⇨ *page 231*.

- **station logo**[3)]: The station logo is displayed if available.
- **cover art**: Album covers or genre artwork are displayed if available.
- **slide show**[2)]: Depending on availability, additional information as a supplement to the normal programme may be shown (e.g. images from the studio, current photographs of artists or album covers).

Gracenote online database*

Important: The MMI must be connected to the Internet. The **cover art** option must be selected ⇨ *page 233,* **Preferred image*** *(DAB*/DAB+*, HD Radio waveband, FM)*.

When this function is switched on ☑, album covers or genre artwork will, if available, be downloaded from the Gracenote online database for the track currently playing.

Region for station logos*[3)]

Audi recommends using the **automatic** setting. When driving abroad, or if the station logo is not displayed correctly, select and confirm the appropriate region.

Applies to journeys in Russia: Select and confirm the city in Russia from the list which is the nearest distance to your vehicle's current location.

Note

- If the function ⇨ *page 230,* **Traffic announcements*** or ⇨ *page 230,* **DAB announcements*** is switched on, playback is interrupted for announcements. You can cancel an announcement while it is being played by briefly pressing the ON/OFF button ① ⇨ *page 156, Fig. 123*. ▶

1) This function is only available in the Mexican market.
2) This function is not available in the Mexican market.
3) Station logos may not be available in all countries.

– Not all radio settings for the FM and DAB* wavebands are available in the mixed station list FM/DAB*.

Troubleshooting

Subject	Advice
A station with poor reception is no longer listed in the station list after you switch to another station.	Store the station as a favourite in advance and call it up via the favourites list ⇨ *page 231*.

Media

Introduction

The MMI system includes various media sources and provides various options for connecting devices. For example, you can play audio/video* files from the jukebox* or connect mobile devices to the Audi music interface* and operate it via the MMI.

Notes

General information

Media and format limitations: The MMI system (including the SD card reader and the connection for the USB mass storage device*) has been tested for use with many of the products and media currently available on the market. However, there may be some devices/media and audio/video* files that are not supported or cannot be played, or the functionality may be limited under certain circumstances.

Digital rights management: Please note that copyright law applies to audio/video* files.

The MMI media sources will not play DRM-protected files; these files are marked with the symbol .

Data storage: Never store important data on SD cards, the jukebox*, CDs or mobile devices. Audi shall not accept any liability whatsoever for the loss of files and media.

Loading times: The more files, folders or playlists are stored on a storage device, the longer it will take to load the audio/video* files. Audi recommends using a storage device which contains only audio/video* files. If you want to reduce the time it takes to load the audio/video* files, you can create subfolders (e.g. for an artist or album). The loading time will be extended additionally if you are importing data.

Metadata: Metadata stored on audio files (e.g. artists, tracks, album covers) will be displayed automatically when the files are played. If this information is not stored on the relevant medium, the MMI system will use the database of metadata from Gracenote. Nevertheless, metadata may not be displayed in some cases.

Restricted performance: If you experience restricted performance, reset the **Media settings** to the factory defaults ⇨ *page 257*.

If you experience restricted performance from the **jukebox***, reset it to the factory settings ⇨ *page 257*.

For information on the characteristics of the supported media and file formats, please refer to ⇨ *page 250* onwards.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ *in General information on page 198*.

CD mode

Applies to: vehicles with CD drive

CD and format limitations: In view of the variety of CDs and the difference in memory capacities, the functionality may be restricted in the case of some storage devices. Under certain circumstances, audio CDs that are copy-protected, CDs that do not comply with the standard format or multisession CDs cannot be played at all, or the functionality may be limited. Audi recommends always finalising the burning process when creating multisession CDs.

Handling CDs and using the CD drive: To ensure perfect, high-quality playback and avoid read error messages or damage to the media drive, always store CDs in a suitable CD case and do not expose them to direct sunlight. Do not use:

– Damaged, dirty or scratched CDs
– Single CDs with an 8 cm diameter
– Non-circular CDs (shape CDs)
– CDs with stickers
– Protective rings
– Cleaning discs

Thermal cut-out: In the case of unusually hot/cold outside temperatures, it is possible that CD playback will temporarily not be possible. A thermal cut-out is installed to protect the CD and the reading laser. ▶

Laser devices: Laser devices are divided into the safety classes 1 to 4, as specified by DIN IEC 76 (CO) 6/VDE 0837. The optical readers installed in your vehicle are classified as safety class 1. Lasers used in devices that fall into this category are very weak and well screened, so there is no danger if used correctly.

Media drives

SD card reader

The SD card reader is located in the glove box.

Inserting an SD card

Important: The vehicle must be stationary.

- The missing corner of the SD card should be at the front right as you insert it. Slide the SD card into the slot in the card reader until you feel it engage.

Automatic playback

When an SD card with supported audio/video files* ⇨ *page 250* is inserted, playback will start automatically.

Removing the SD card

- Briefly press the SD card.

The SD card readers are called up and operated via the MMI ③ ⇨ *page 245, Fig. 170*.

CAUTION

Only use one-piece SD cards. If you use adapter cards (more than one piece), the SD card can become detached from the adapter (e.g. caused by jolting, etc). Parts could then get stuck in the drive, impairing the functionality of the system.

Note

Store the SD cards in a suitable case to protect them from dirt and dust and to avoid damage.

CD drive

Applies to: vehicles with CD drive

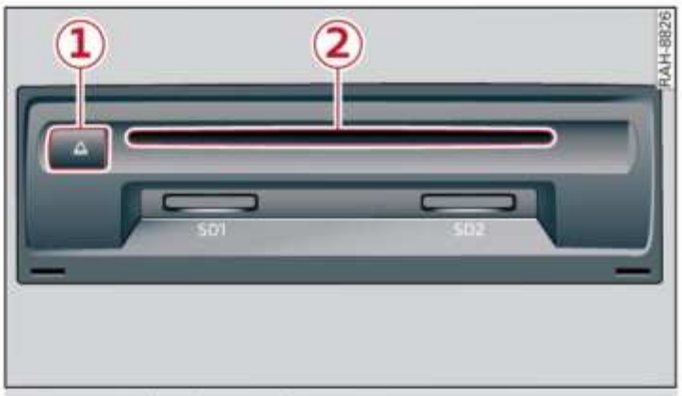


Fig. 167 Glove box: CD drive

Loading a CD

- The CD will be drawn in automatically. Insert the CD (text facing upwards) into the CD slot ②, holding it straight.

Automatic playback

Playback starts automatically when a CD with supported audio files ⇨ *page 251* is inserted.

Ejecting a CD

- Press button ①.

After it has been ejected, the CD will automatically be pulled back into the CD player after about ten seconds if it is not removed from the CD slot.

The CD drive is started and operated via the MMI ⇨ *page 245*.

CAUTION

- Never use any force to push a CD into the drive. The CD will be drawn into the slot automatically.
- Do not insert any CDs with stickers into the media drive. The stickers could become detached from the CD and damage the drive.

Note

Playback cannot be guaranteed if the CD contains audio files with a high data rate.

Jukebox

Applies to: vehicles with jukebox

After you have filled the jukebox with music or videos*, for example from your SD card, you can play them directly from the jukebox. The jukebox has approximately 10 GB of storage.

Calling up the jukebox

- Press the MEDIA button.
- Press the left control button repeatedly until the source overview ⇨ *page 245* is displayed.
- Select and confirm **Jukebox**.

Filling the jukebox

- Press the MEDIA button.
- Press the left control button repeatedly until the source overview ⇨ *page 245* is displayed.
- Select and confirm one of the following sources to copy to the jukebox: SD card, CD-ROM*, USB storage device*.

Selecting an entry

Important: The media centre (e.g. tracks, albums) must be open.

- Select an entry from the media centre.
- Select: right control button > **Copy to jukebox** > **This entry** or **Entire list**.

Selecting a track

Important: The playlist must be open ⇨ *page 247*.

- Select the track currently being played.
- Select: right control button > **Copy to jukebox** > **This track/Entire album** or **This artist**.

Important: A video file* must be playing.

- Select: right control button > **Copy to jukebox**.

The copying procedure will start. The status of the copying procedure will be shown on the MMI.

- **To hide the copying procedure**: Select and confirm **Continue copying in background**. The copying procedure will be hidden.
- **To cancel the copying procedure**: Select and confirm **Cancel copying procedure**, or remove the source from which you are currently importing files. Files that have already been copied will remain stored.

Important: Copying must be in progress in the background.

- **To display the copy procedure**: Select: right control button > **Active copy procedure**.

During the copying procedure, the audio files are automatically sorted according to the categories in the media centre based on the metadata stored for the files ⇨ *page 246*. The video files* copied can be found in the **Videos*** category of the media centre.

Playing from the jukebox

Important: The jukebox must contain audio/video* files ⇨ *page 237, Filling the jukebox*.

The jukebox is called up and operated via the MMI ① ⇨ *page 245, Fig. 170*.

Displaying the jukebox memory capacity

- Select: right control button > **Jukebox memory capacity**. Information on the jukebox memory capacity and the number of stored tracks will be displayed.

Deleting tracks from the jukebox[1)]

Important: The jukebox must contain audio/video* files.

- Select an entry from the jukebox's media centre.
- Select: right control button > **Delete from jukebox** > **This entry** or **Entire list**.

The status of the deletion process will be shown on the MMI. During the deletion process the playback of the jukebox is interrupted; it is started again automatically once the deletion process has been completed.

CAUTION

Do not copy audio/video* files while the vehicle is switched off; otherwise the vehicle battery will be discharged. ▶

1) Not in the **Playback** view.

Note

- For legal reasons it is not possible to copy tracks from audio CDs onto the jukebox.
- Files that have already been copied are detected automatically and cannot be copied to the jukebox again.
- It is not possible to copy and play audio files in the CD drive at the same time.
- For legal reasons there is no export function for the jukebox.
- Files or tracks that do not include stored metadata are listed as **Unknown**. Audi recommends that you mark the audio files with the corresponding metadata (e.g. ID3 tags).
- When handing over your vehicle e.g. to a new buyer, reset the **jukebox** to the factory settings ⇨ *page 257*.

Bluetooth audio player

Applies to: vehicles with Bluetooth audio player

You can use the Bluetooth audio player to play music from your Bluetooth-enabled device (e.g. smartphone) wirelessly via the MMI.

Important: The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on. The Bluetooth settings must be open on your mobile device during the connection procedure. The Bluetooth function and the discoverability option of the MMI system ⇨ *page 259* and the mobile device must be activated. The **Bluetooth audio player** ⇨ *page 259* must be switched on in the MMI.

Connecting a Bluetooth device

- ▸ Press the MEDIA button.
- ▸ Press the left control button repeatedly until the source overview is displayed.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Bluetooth audio player** ⑥ ⇨ *page 245, Fig. 171*.
- ▸ You may need to select and confirm **Not connected** > **Connect Bluetooth audio player**. The system will start searching for Bluetooth devices. Follow the instructions given by the MMI.
- ▸ Select and confirm the desired Bluetooth device from the list. The MMI will generate a PIN to establish the connection.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Yes**.
- ▸ Enter the PIN on your Bluetooth device to establish a connection, or if the PIN is already being displayed on your Bluetooth device, please confirm it on the device. You have about 30 seconds to enter the PIN.

Depending on the device you are using, the media are started and operated using the mobile device or the MMI.

Note

- Pay attention to any connection queries on your Bluetooth device.
- You can bond several Bluetooth audio players to the MMI system; however only one connection can be active at a time.
- The system supports the Bluetooth protocols AVRCP (1.0/1.3/1.4) and A2DP.
- Please note the volume control on your Bluetooth device. Audi recommends setting the volume of mobile devices to maximum when they are being used as Bluetooth audio players.
- Which media functions (e.g. random playback) are supported depends on the Bluetooth device you are using.
- You can find a selection of supported Bluetooth devices in the database for tested mobile devices at www.audi.com/bluetooth.

Wi-Fi audio player

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi audio player

The MMI's Wi-Fi audio player media source allows you to connect and operate your Wi-Fi media player (e.g. smartphone) to play music wirelessly from your player's media centre. The media player is connected via the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot. A UPnP server app or an integrated UPnP/DLNA server on the media player is required to access the media centre of your media player.

Important: The Wi-Fi function of the media player must be switched on. The myAudi app or a UPnP server app must be installed on your media player, or you must be using a UPnP/DLNA server integrated in the media player. ▸

Connecting a media player

- Press the MEDIA button.
- Press the left control button repeatedly until the source overview ⇨ *page 245* is displayed.
- Select and confirm **Wi-Fi audio player** ⑦ ⇨ *page 245, Fig. 171*.
- You may need to select and confirm **Wi-Fi off** > **Activate Wi-Fi** to switch Wi-Fi on in the MMI.
- If necessary, select and confirm **Wi-Fi settings**.
- Use the settings of the Wi-Fi hotspot for the media player you are using.

Starting the Wi-Fi audio player

- Start the myAudi app or a UPnP server app, or enable media sharing on your media player.

Controlling the media player

The media player is controlled via the MMI.

- Press the left control button repeatedly until the menu item **Folders** appears.
- Select and confirm **Folders**.

Playing music from a media player

- Select and confirm **Media centre**.

Internet radio: See ⇨ *page 240*.

WARNING

- Do not allow the features of the Wi-Fi hotspot to distract you from watching the traffic – taking your eyes off the road can cause an accident.
- Only use Audi connect services and the Wi-Fi hotspot when the traffic conditions allow you to do so safely – risk of accident! Please see ⇨ *page 156, Notes on traffic safety*.
- Mobile devices, tablet and laptop computers and devices of a similar weight can only be operated safely when the vehicle is stationary. Like any loose object, they can be catapulted through the vehicle in an accident and cause serious injuries. Always make sure that such devices are securely stowed while you are driving. Please also observe the safety warnings in the chapter on ⇨ *page 56*.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 198*.

Note

- Inserting or removing the mini SIM card from the SIM card reader* causes the Wi-Fi connection to be reconfigured. This may cause a short interruption in the audio playback of some media players.
- Please note that the Wi-Fi connection does not automatically enable you to use the Internet. Further information can be found from ⇨ *page 199* onwards.
- To avoid interruptions in audio playback, deactivate the energy saving function on your media player, or connect the player to a charger.
- The time it takes to load audio files depends on the media player in use and on the number of files stored.
- A maximum of 2,000 entries per directory are shown on the MMI.
- Tracks downloaded from music streaming services for use offline may be stored on your mobile device (e.g. smartphone) with DRM protection. Please note that files with DRM protection cannot be played by the Wi-Fi audio player.
- All services/apps may be changed, activated/deactivated, renamed or extended without further notice.
- In some countries a different app than the myAudi app may be available for your vehicle. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.
- Audi dealerships will be able to provide you with further information on Wi-Fi audio players.

Online media and Internet radio

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment



Fig. 168 Infotainment system: Online media

You can start and operate Internet radio and various online media services via the MMI.

▸ Press the MEDIA button.
▸ Press the left control button repeatedly until the source overview ⇨ *page 245* is displayed.

Applies to: using online media and Internet radio

Important

– The myAudi app must be installed and started on your mobile device.
– You must be logged in to your myAudi account in the myAudi app and must have selected your vehicle.
– The Wi-Fi function must be activated on the mobile device and on the MMI.
– If necessary, open the connection manager ⇨ *page 257* and check that the mobile device you have connected is selected under **myAudi App** ☑.
– A network connection must be set up on the MMI ⇨ *page 204*.
– The symbol for the media source **Online media** ① must be shown on the MMI.

Applies to: using online media

Additional requirements:

– One of the supported online media services must be available in your country.
– You must have an account with one of the supported online media services.
– Depending on the online media service, an app may need to be installed and set up on your mobile device.

Starting online media

– Press the MEDIA button.
– Press the left control button repeatedly until the source overview ⇨ *page 245* is displayed.
– Select and confirm an online media service.

Starting Internet radio

– Press the MEDIA button.
– Press the left control button repeatedly until the source overview ⇨ *page 245* is displayed.
– Select and confirm **Internet radio**. The Internet radio browser or the most recently played station will be shown.
– **To select a station**: Select and confirm a category in the Internet radio **Browser** (if desired) > *a station*.

Online media and Internet radio: Further options

– Press the right control button.

The following options may be available depending on the information displayed (e.g. the station/track currently playing):

– **Sound settings**: Refer to ⇨ *page 260*.
– **Wi-Fi settings**: Refer to ⇨ *page 205*.
– **Connection manager**: Refer to ⇨ *page 257*.
– Additional options may be available depending on the active online media service or Internet radio function.

WARNING

– Only use Audi connect services and the Wi-Fi hotspot when the traffic conditions allow you to do so safely – risk of accident! Please see ⇨ *page 156, Notes on traffic safety*.
– Mobile devices, tablet and laptop computers and devices of a similar weight can only be operated safely when the vehicle is stationary. Like any loose object, they can be catapulted through the vehicle in an accident and cause serious injuries. Always make sure that such devices are securely stowed while you are driving. Please also observe the safety warnings in the chapter on ⇨ *page 56*.

CAUTION

– Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 198*.

– In order to use online media, you generally have to set up an account with an online media service, which may lead to additional costs, especially if you are using the service abroad.

Note

– Depending on the Internet connection and network load, playback of the online media services may be interrupted.
– Whether **online media** and **Internet radio** can be used depends on the availability of services provided by third parties.
– Audi only enables you to access online media services via the MMI system and accepts no responsibility for the content of online media services.
– Depending on the mobile device you are using, you may experience interruptions in media playback when using the myAudi app. To avoid interruptions, keep the myAudi app running in the foreground and do not lock the screen on your mobile device.
– All services/apps may be changed, activated/deactivated, renamed or extended without further notice.
– In some countries a different app than the myAudi app may be available for your vehicle. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.
– Audi dealerships will be able to provide you with further information on online media.

Multimedia connections

USB adapters

Applies to: vehicles with USB adapters

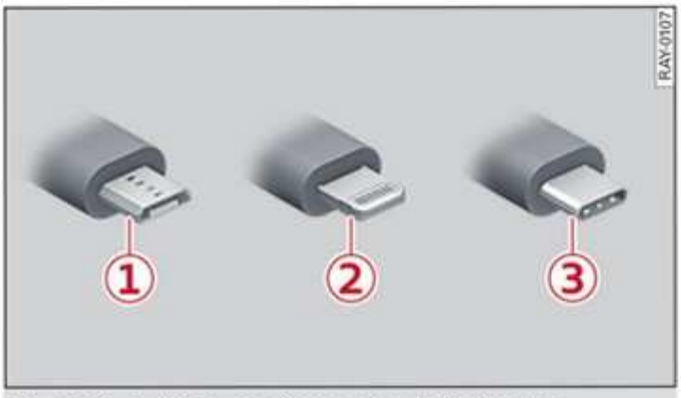


Fig. 169 Audi Genuine Accessories: USB adapters

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you may be able to connect your mobile devices (e.g. smartphones, MP3 players) to the Audi music interface or the USB charging socket using the special USB adapters.

The USB adapters are available from Audi dealers or specialist retailers:

① USB adapter for devices with micro USB connector
② USB adapter for Apple devices with Lightning connector
③ USB adapter for devices with USB-C connector

If the appropriate equipment is installed on your vehicle, you can connect your mobile devices to the MMI and simultaneously charge the battery using a USB adapter connected to the Audi music interface.

– **Audi music interface**: Refer to ⇨ *page 241*.
– **AUX input/USB charging socket**: See ⇨ *page 243*.
– **USB charging sockets in rear cabin**: See ⇨ *page 244*.

CAUTION

Please handle the USB adapters with care. Make sure the cable does not become pinched or trapped.

Note

– iPod touch/iPhone 5 and later with Lightning connector are supported via the USB adapter on the Audi music interface.
– Apple devices with dock connector can only be charged using a suitable USB adapter but cannot transfer data.

Audi music interface

Applies to: vehicles with Audi music interface

You can connect your mobile devices via the Audi music interface in order to charge the battery and operate the devices via the MMI.

The USB and AUX inputs for the Audi music interface are located in the storage compartment underneath the front centre armrest and in the ▶

81B012720AJ

front centre console. The USB inputs are marked with ⇠ and the AUX inputs with AUX.

USB connection

- **To connect/charge a mobile device using a USB adapter**: Connect the corresponding USB adapter to the USB input on the Audi music interface and then connect it to the mobile device (e.g. iPhone). The battery will be charged automatically.
- **To disconnect a mobile device from the Audi music interface**: Detach the USB adapter from the corresponding USB input of the Audi music interface.

Depending on the device you are using, the media are started and operated using the mobile device or the MMI ⇨ *page 245*.

To connect more than one mobile device: All of the devices (e.g. smartphones) plugged into the USB sockets of the Audi music interface can be used as playback sources.

AUX input

- **To connect a mobile device to the AUX input**: Connect the AUX cable to an AUX input on the Audi music interface before connecting it to the mobile device (e.g. MP3 player, smartphone).
- **To disconnect the mobile device from the AUX input**: Detach the AUX cable from the corresponding AUX input of the Audi music interface.
- **Operation**: Select and confirm the source **External audio player** ⑤ ⇨ *page 245, Fig. 170*. Media are started and operated using the mobile device.

WARNING

Driving on the road always requires your full attention. As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. Never operate mobile devices while the vehicle is moving - risk of accident!

CAUTION

- To avoid damaging the connection, please take care when detaching the connector from the Audi music interface.
- Use a USB extension cable to connect devices with an integrated USB connector (e.g. USB sticks). This will help to avoid damage to your USB device and the Audi music interface.
- Very high or very low temperatures (a common occurrence in a car's interior) can cause damage to mobile devices and/or impair their performance. Please do not leave your mobile devices in the vehicle when the temperature is very high or very low.

Note

- Please always observe the information ⇨ *page 65*.
- When you switch off the ignition, the USB ports will continue to be supplied with power as long as the energy management system does not intervene.
- Do not use any additional USB extension cables or adapters when connecting mobile devices which have an integrated cable or which must be connected via a USB adapter ⇨ *page 241* to the Audi music interface; this could cause performance issues.
- The AUX adapter cable is available from Audi dealers or specialist retailers.
- Audi recommends setting the volume of a mobile device connected to the AUX input to about 70 % of maximum.
- It cannot be guaranteed that mobile devices which do not conform to the USB 2.0 specification will function properly.
- USB hubs are not supported.
- Some iPod versions (e.g. iPod shuffle) cannot be connected with the USB adapter for Apple devices with dock connector. You can connect these devices using the AUX adapter cable. ▶

– Content that has been changed on a mobile device[1] connected to the Audi music interface may not be shown in the media centre. In this case, reset the **Media settings** to the **Factory settings** ⇨ *page 257*.
– Video playback* via the Audi music interface is only supported if the system detects that the device connected is a USB storage device (e.g. a USB stick). Apple devices or MTP devices (e.g. smartphones) are not recognised as USB storage devices.
– iPod/iPhone malfunctions also affect operation of the device via the MMI. In this case, please reset your mobile device.
– Audi recommends that you use the most up-to-date iPod/iPhone software possible. Please refer to the operating instructions of your mobile device for important information.
– iPod touch/iPhone 5 and later with Lightning connector are supported via the USB adapter on the Audi music interface.
– You can find a selection of supported devices in the database for tested mobile devices at www.audi.com/mp3.

AUX input/USB charging socket

Applies to: vehicles with AUX input/USB charging socket

You can charge the batteries of your mobile devices using the USB charging socket. You can connect mobile devices using the analogue AUX interface.

The USB charging socket and the AUX input are located in the storage compartment under the centre armrest. The USB charging socket is marked with CHARGE ONLY or ⇨ and the AUX input is marked with AUX.

USB charging socket

▸ **USB adapter**: Refer to ⇨ *page 241*.
▸ **To charge a mobile device using a USB adapter**: Connect your mobile device to the USB charging socket using the appropriate USB adapter.
▸ **To disconnect the mobile device from the charging socket**: Detach the USB adapter from the USB charging socket.

AUX input

▸ **To connect a mobile device via the AUX input**: Connect the AUX cable to the AUX input before connecting it to the mobile device (e.g. MP3 player, smartphone).
▸ **To disconnect the mobile device from the AUX input**: Detach the AUX cable from the AUX input.
▸ **Operation**: Select and confirm the source **External audio player** (5) ⇨ *page 245, Fig. 170*. Media are started and operated using the mobile device.

WARNING

Driving on the road always requires your full attention. As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. Never use mobile devices while the vehicle is moving - risk of accident!

CAUTION

– To avoid damage, please take care when unplugging the connector from the AUX input and the USB charging port.
– Very high or very low temperatures (a common occurrence in a car's interior) can cause damage to mobile devices and/or impair their performance. Please do not leave your mobile devices in the vehicle when the temperature is very high or very low.

Note

– Please always observe the information ⇨ *page 65*.
– When you switch off the ignition, the USB charging port will continue to be supplied with power as long as the energy management system does not intervene.
– Do not use any additional USB extension cables or adapters when connecting mobile ▶

[1] Applies to MTP devices only. Does not apply to Apple devices or USB mass storage devices.

devices which must be connected to the USB charging socket via a USB adapter ⇨ *page 241*; this could cause performance issues.
- The AUX adapter cable is available from Audi dealers or specialist retailers.
- USB hubs are not supported.
- Please refer to the operating instructions of your mobile device for important information on its operation.
- It cannot be guaranteed that all mobile devices will function without any problems.
- Using a mobile device with the engine switched off will drain the vehicle's battery.
- Audi recommends setting the volume of a mobile device connected to the AUX input to about 70 % of maximum.

USB charging sockets in rear cabin

Applies to: vehicles with USB charging sockets in rear cabin

You can charge the batteries of your mobile devices using one of the USB charging sockets.

Two USB charging sockets are located in the centre console in the rear cabin.

USB charging socket

- **USB adapter**: Refer to ⇨ *page 241, USB adapters*.
- **To charge a mobile device using a USB adapter**: Connect your mobile device to the USB charging socket using the appropriate USB adapter.
- **To disconnect the mobile device from the charging socket**: Detach the USB adapter from the USB charging socket.

WARNING

Driving on the road always requires your full attention. As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. Never use mobile devices while the vehicle is moving - risk of accident!

CAUTION

- To avoid damage, please take care when unplugging the connector from the USB charging port.
- Very high or very low temperatures (a common occurrence in a car's interior) can cause damage to mobile devices and/or impair their performance. Please do not leave your mobile devices in the vehicle when the temperature is very high or very low.

Note

- Please always observe the information ⇨ *page 65*.
- When you switch off the ignition, the USB charging ports will continue to be supplied with power as long as the energy management system does not intervene.
- Do not use any additional USB extension cables or adapters when connecting mobile devices which must be connected to the USB charging socket via a USB adapter; this could cause performance issues.
- USB hubs are not supported.
- Please refer to the operating instructions of your mobile device for important information on its operation.
- It cannot be guaranteed that all mobile devices will function without any problems.
- Using a mobile device with the engine switched off will drain the vehicle's battery.

Playing media

Calling up media



Fig. 170 Infotainment system: Possible sources in the media menu



Fig. 171 Infotainment system: Possible sources in the media menu

You can start and operate various types of media via the MMI control console.

Important: A media source must contain audio/video* files ⇨ *page 236*.

- ▸ Press the MEDIA button.
- ▸ Press the left control button repeatedly until the source overview is displayed.
- ▸ Select and confirm the desired source, or
- ▸ Press the MEDIA button repeatedly until the desired source is selected.

You can select the following sources in the **Media** menu, depending on the vehicle equipment:

① **Jukebox** 237
② **CD drive** 236
③ **SD card reader** 236
④ **Audi music interface** 241
e.g. iPod, USB stick
⑤ **External audio player** 243
e.g. an MP3 player connected to the AUX input
⑥ **Bluetooth audio player** 238
⑦ **Wi-Fi audio player** 238
⑧ **Online media** and **Internet radio** . . 240

– **To play audio/video* files**: Select a source in the **Media** menu > *category* (e.g. artist > *album* > *track/title*).
– **To access the next level up in the structure of folders**: Press the BACK button, or select and confirm **Go up**.
– **To select the previous/next track**: Briefly press the ON/OFF button on the MMI control console to the left/right (⏮/⏭).
– **To rewind/fast forward audio/video* files**: Press and hold the ON/OFF button to the left/right (⏮/⏭).
– **To pause/resume playback**: Briefly press the ON/OFF button on the MMI control console.

Note

– You can scroll rapidly through long lists by turning the rotary pushbutton quickly. The scrolling speed depends on the number of entries in the list.
– If the **Traffic announcements** ⇨ *page 230* or **DAB announcements*** function is switched on, playback is interrupted for announcements. You can cancel an announcement while it is being played by briefly pressing the ON/OFF button on the MMI control console.
– For safety reasons, the video* picture is not available while the vehicle is moving. While you are driving, only the sound of the video* is played.

Media centre



Fig. 172 Infotainment system: Categories for a USB stick



Fig. 173 Infotainment system: Categories for a USB stick

Several categories for selecting audio/video* files are available in the media centre.

- ▸ Press the MEDIA button.
- ▸ Press the left control button repeatedly until the source overview is displayed.
- ▸ Select and confirm the desired source.

① Active source

The active source is highlighted. The symbol for the active source ① may change depending on the device connected or the online media* or Internet radio* service in use. The device name may be displayed (e.g. MyPhone). A USB stick connected via the Audi music interface* is shown as an example.

Depending on the active source, you can select audio/video* files from the following categories and copy them into the playlist:

② Favourites

The category **Favourites** appears if at least one item has been stored as a favourite ⇨ *page 247*.

③ Artists

All available artists are displayed. Select and confirm an artist, an album and then a track.

④ Albums

All available albums are displayed. Select and confirm an album and then a track.

⑤ Genres

All available genres are displayed. Select and confirm a genre (e.g. **Pop**), an artist, an album and then a track.

⑥ Tracks

All available tracks are displayed. Select and confirm a track.

⑦ Folders

The folder structure or the track/title/chapter list is displayed. If necessary, select a folder. Select and confirm a track.

⑧ Playlists

All playlists on the source along with the intelligent playlists are displayed. Select and confirm a playlist and then a track.

Intelligent playlists

- **Last tracks played**: The most recently played tracks from the selected source are displayed.
- **Most played**: The tracks you have played most often from the selected source are displayed.
- **5 stars** to **1 star**: Tracks from the selected source are displayed according to their rating.
- **Not rated**: All files without rating information (e.g. ID3 tag) in the selected source are displayed.

⑨ Videos*

All available video files are displayed. Select and confirm a video file.

Note

- Only the categories supported by the medium used are available. For example, CD tracks cannot be selected via categories such as **Artists**, **Albums** or **Genres**. The additional categories **Podcasts**, **Audiobooks** and **Composers** are available when you are using an iPod/iPhone (source: Audi music interface* ⇨ *page 241*).

– For safety reasons, the video* picture is not available while the vehicle is moving. While you are driving, only the sound of the video* is played.
– If you synchronise a portable player with "cloud" services, the playlists may not be displayed correctly on the MMI. Use the device's local media library.

Search function

Applies to: vehicles with search function



Fig. 174 Infotainment system: Entry field and results list for the search function

You can search for e.g. tracks and video files* in the active source.

Depending on the selected source, you can call up the **search** function.

Important: The playlist ⇨ *page 247* or the media centre ⇨ *page 246* must be displayed.

Calling up the search function

- ▸ Turn the rotary pushbutton anti-clockwise until the entry field ① for the **search function** is displayed, or
- ▸ Push the rotary pushbutton upwards.

To use the search function: Refer to ⇨ *page 165, Search function*.

Entries containing the search terms entered will be displayed in the list of results ⑤. You can search by artist ②, album ③ or track ④. You can also search for genres and videos*.

Note

– The system will only search for files on the active source.
– If the search function is called up in the **Folders** category ⑦ ⇨ *page 246, Fig. 173*, the system will only search for files in the current folder. This is also the case in the **Composers**, **Podcasts** and **Audiobooks** categories.

Playlist



Fig. 175 Infotainment system: Playlist

The track, artist, album and, if available, the album cover are displayed in the playlist.

Options menu

Refer to ⇨ *page 248, Further settings*.

Favourites

You can store up to 50 items per media source in the list of favourites, in any order.

Storing a favourite

Important: The playlist or the media centre must be open.

- ▸ Select the desired item from the playlist or the media centre.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Store as favourite**, or:
- ▸ Press and hold the rotary pushbutton for several seconds.

When a track is stored as a favourite, the corresponding album is shown as a favourite in the favourites list.

Displaying the favourites list

Important: At least one item must be stored in the favourites list.

- ▸ Press the MEDIA button.
- ▸ Press the left control button repeatedly until the source overview ⇨ *page 245* is displayed. ▶

- ▸ Select a source which supports categories ⇨ *page 246* (e.g. an SD card).
- ▸ Select and confirm the **Favourites** category.

Listening to a favourite

Important: The favourites list must be displayed.

- ▸ Select an entry from the favourites list and confirm it.

Moving a favourite

Important: The favourites list must be displayed.

- ▸ Select *a favourite from the list* > right control button > **Move favourite**.
- ▸ Select and confirm the position of the favourite selected.

Deleting a favourite

Important: The favourites list must be displayed.

- ▸ Select *a favourite from the list* > right control button > **Delete favourite** > **Delete this favourite** or **Delete all favourites**.

Further settings

Options menu

Different context-specific functions and settings are available depending on the vehicle equipment and on which source is selected.

- ▸ Press the right control button.

Sound settings

Refer to ⇨ *page 260*.

Input level

Important: A mobile device must be connected via an AUX adapter cable or a USB adapter ⇨ *page 241*.

The volume of the mobile device will be adapted to the MMI system. Audi recommends setting the volume of the mobile device to about 70 percent of the maximum volume.

Bluetooth settings

Refer to ⇨ *page 259*.

Wi-Fi settings

Refer to ⇨ *page 205*.

Connection manager

Refer to ⇨ *page 257*.

Detailed track info

When this function is switched on ☑ and the playlist is open, information on the selected track (e.g. the artist, album, album cover*) as well as the total and remaining playing time will be displayed.

Jukebox memory capacity

Information on the jukebox memory capacity and the number of tracks stored on the jukebox will be displayed.

Change play position

Turn the rotary pushbutton to the left or right, or move your finger from left to right across the MMI touch pad*.

Random playback[1)]

When this function is switched on ☑, all the files in the playlist will be played and shown in random order.

Repeat track[1)]

When the function is switched on ☑, the current track will be repeated.

Back to 'Playback'

The options menu will be closed. The track currently playing will be shown in the playlist.

Play similar music

The track currently playing is briefly analysed (e.g. by artist, genre, mood, time) so that the system can display an intelligent playlist with similar tracks. ▶

1) This function is automatically deactivated if you change the source.

Play more...

An intelligent playlist is displayed based on the track currently playing. You can choose between a playlist with more tracks **by this artist**, **of this album** or **of this genre**.

Copy to jukebox

Refer to ⇨ *page 237, Filling the jukebox*.

Set as ring tone[1)]

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI and the track currently playing must be on the jukebox ⇨ *page 237*.

The selected track will be used as the ring tone for incoming calls.

Gracenote online database

Important: The MMI must be connected to the Internet.

When this function is switched on ☑, various information will be downloaded for the track currently playing, if any is available.

Favourites

Refer to ⇨ *page 247*.

Further options

Important: The vehicle must be stationary and a video file* must be playing.

Switch to full screen

The video picture will be displayed. To show the playlist, turn the rotary pushbutton, or press the BACK button.

Replay video[2)]

When this function is switched on ☑, the current video will be replayed.

Picture format

Audi recommends using the **automatic** setting for the picture format. Depending on the active file (e.g. video file), you may be able to adjust the picture format.

Picture format	Description
automatic	The MMI detects the picture format of the source and displays the picture using the best possible width-to-height ratio. Depending on the source format and the infotainment display installed, black bars may be displayed on the edges of the picture.
zoom	The picture is enlarged to fill the infotainment display. Switch this function off if the picture is distorted.
cinema-scope	Use this setting for films in the cinema format 21:9. Black bars will be shown on the upper and lower edges of the infotainment display.
original	The picture is displayed using the picture ratio of the source format. Select this option if the picture shown with **automatic** selected is distorted or partially cut off.
4:3	The picture is set to a width-to-height ratio of 4:3. Black bars will be shown on the edges of the infotainment display.
16:9	The picture is set to a width-to-height ratio of 16:9. Black bars will be shown on the upper and lower edges of the infotainment display.

1) This function is not available for all mobile phones.

2) This function is automatically deactivated if you change the source.

Supported media and file formats

Overview

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the following audio/video file specifications are supported by the CD drive, the jukebox, the SD card readers and the connection for the USB mass storage device:

	Audio files				Video files		
Supported media	**SD/SDHC/SDXC/MMC memory cards**: with a capacity of up to 128 GB **CD drive**: audio CDs (up to 80 min) with CD text (artist, album, track)*, CD-ROMs with a capacity of up to 700 MB; **Audi music interface**: mobile devices ⇨ *page 241* (e.g. iPod, MTP players, USB mass storage devices belonging to "USB Device Subclass 1 and 6" compatible with USB 2.0, USB sticks, USB MP3 players (plug-and-play capable), external USB flash memories and external USB hard drives)						
File system	**Memory cards**: exFAT, FAT, FAT32, NTFS **USB mass storage devices**: FAT, FAT32, NTFS **USB mass storage partitions (primary/logical*)**: 2 per USB connection **CD file systems:** ISO9660, Joliet, UDF						
Metadata	**Album covers**: GIF, JPG, PNG up to 800x800 px. Depending on availability, the album cover will be displayed using the corresponding medium or Gracenote*.						
Format	MPEG-1/-2 Layer 3	Windows Media Audio 9 and 10	MPEG-2/-4	FLAC	MPEG-1/-2	MPEG4 AVC (H.264)	Windows Media Video 9
File extension	.mp3	.wma	.m4a; .m4b; .aac	.flac	.mpg; .mpeg	.mp4; .m4v; .mov; .avi	.wmv; .asf
Playlists	.M3U; .PLS; .WPL; .M3U8; .ASX						
Specifications	Up to max. 320 kbit/sec and 48 kHz sampling frequency			48 kHz sampling frequency	Up to max. 2000 kbit/sec, 720x576 px and 25 fps		
Number of files	**CD drive**: max. 1000 files per medium **Jukebox**: memory approx. 10 GB; max. 3000 files can be copied **USB mass storage devices and memory cards**: max. 10000 files per medium; max. 1000 files per playlist/directory						

Note

- The format Windows Media Audio 9 Voice is not supported by the media sources.
- Audi recommends a compression rate of at least 160 kbit/sec for MP3 files. In the case of audio files with variable bit rate, the display of the remaining playing time may differ from the actual figure.
- The display of country-specific characters (e.g. for ID3 tag information) depends on the language set on the system; it cannot ▶

be ensured that these characters are always displayed correctly.
– The manufacturer will provide you with information on the "USB Device Subclass" of a USB memory device.
– Some functions of MTP players such as video playback and the rating of tracks are not supported.

CD drive

Applies to: vehicles with CD drive

The CD drive supports the following audio file specifications:

	Audio files			
Supported media	Audio CDs (up to 80 minutes) with CD text (artist, album, track)*, CD-ROMs with a capacity of up to 700 MB			
File system	**CD file systems**: ISO9660, Joliet, UDF			
Metadata	**Album covers**: GIF, JPG, PNG up to 800x800 px. Depending on availability, the album cover will be displayed using the corresponding medium.			
Format	MPEG-1/-2 Layer 3	Windows Media Audio 9 and 10	MPEG-2/-4	FLAC
File extension	.mp3	.wma	.m4a; .m4b; .aac	.flac
Playlists	.M3U; .PLS; .WPL; .M3U8; .ASX			
Specifications	Up to max. 320 kbit/sec and 48 kHz sampling frequency			48 kHz sampling frequency
Number of files	max. 1000 files per medium			

Note

– Audi recommends a compression rate of at least 160 kbit/sec for MP3 files. In the case of audio files with variable bit rate, the display of the remaining playing time may differ from the actual figure.
– The display of country-specific characters (e.g. for ID3 tag information) depends on the language set on the system; it cannot be ensured that these characters are always displayed correctly.

Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle's equipment. ▶

Subject	Advice
Audi music interface/Bluetooth audio player: The mobile device is not supported.	Please observe the notes in the chapter ⇨ *page 241, Multimedia connections*/⇨ *page 238, Bluetooth audio player*.
Audi music interface: The portable player is not recognised as a source.	On some mobile phones or mobile devices, playback is not possible if the battery charge is very low (less than 5 % of its capacity). After it has been plugged in, the mobile device will only be recognised as a media source in the MMI again when it has sufficient battery charge.
Audi music interface: Problems during audio playback via an iPod/iPhone.	The **Bluetooth audio player** function is switched on. Switch the function off ⇨ *page 259* when you are not using a **Bluetooth audio player**.
Audi music interface: No audio playback possible via a connected mobile device.	Make sure that the USB mode *MTP* is selected in your mobile device's settings.
Audi music interface: Content that has been changed on a mobile device[a)] connected to the Audi music interface is not shown in the media centre.	Reset the **Media settings** to the factory settings ⇨ *page 257*.
AUX input: When playback is started via the AUX input, the volume is too high/low.	Set the volume of the mobile device to about 70% of maximum ⇨ *page 248*, **Input level**.
AUX input: Interference audible when plugging in or unplugging the AUX adapter cable.	**External audio player** is selected as the source when the adapter cable is being connected. Activate the mute function (see ⇨ *page 261*) or another audio source (e.g. ⇨ *page 229, Calling up the radio menu*) before connecting/disconnecting your mobile device.
Bluetooth audio player/Wi-Fi audio player: Playback problems.	To ensure problem-free playback, only one interface should be in use at any one time.
Wi-Fi audio player: Playback problems.	Some mobile phones may experience audio playback problems if the Internet connection in the vehicle was not established via the SIM card reader* or embedded SIM card of the MMI control console while the **mobile data** option is activated on the mobile phone. Deactivate the **mobile data** option on your mobile phone.
Jukebox: The tracks in the imported playlists are greyed out.	When importing playlists, you must copy all files yourself.
Jukebox: Imported tracks cannot be played or cannot be found.	If you cannot find imported tracks via the media centre, this could mean that they are not supported. Please only copy supported files ⇨ *page 250* to the jukebox.
Wi-Fi audio player: More than one device is connected to the Wi-Fi hotspot. A media player (e.g. a smartphone) is shown as the source and cannot be changed.	Close the myAudi app on the connected devices (e.g. smartphones) that you do not want to use as the Wi-Fi audio player. Also close any UPnP server apps on the devices, or disable media sharing on any integrated UPnP/DLNA servers. Connect the desired device as a Wi-Fi audio player ⇨ *page 238*.

Subject	Advice
Online media: Failure of connection between the MMI and the myAudi app.	The MMI connection switch on the status screen of the myAudi app must be activated to establish a connection with the MMI.
Wi-Fi audio player/Online media and Internet radio: Playback problems.	Audio playback problems can occur if the **Connection to personal hotspot** function ⇨ *page 205* is activated and your personal hotspot ⇨ *page 200* is not in range. To avoid playback problems, switch the function off when you are not using a personal hotspot.
Bluetooth audio player: Problems with track display and playback.	Problems can occur if a third party music playback app is open when you are playing audio via the **Bluetooth audio player**. Audi recommends that you use the integrated media player on your Bluetooth device (e.g. smartphone).
Wi-Fi hotspot: Wi-Fi hotspot connection to your Wi-Fi device interrupted.	Make sure that the network optimisation function is switched off in the Wi-Fi settings or network settings of your Wi-Fi device. Please refer to the operating manual of your Wi-Fi device for further details.

a) Applies to MTP devices only. Does not apply to Apple devices or USB mass storage devices.

Audi smartphone interface

Setting up

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

You can connect your smartphone to the MMI system via the Audi smartphone interface. Some of the content on your smartphone is displayed in an optimised screen format on the infotainment display and can be operated via the MMI control console.

Important: The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on. Your iPhone 6 or later with Lightning connector must have the latest operating system, or your smartphone with Android Auto app must have operating system Android 5.0 Lollipop or higher.

- ▸ Connect your smartphone to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 241* via the corresponding USB adapter ⇨ *page 241, Fig. 169*.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Activate Apple CarPlay** or **Activate Android Auto now**.
- ▸ Follow the instructions given by the system.
- ▸ Please note any system queries on your smartphone.

If you decline the use of Apple CarPlay or Android Auto the first time you connect your smartphone, you can start the Audi smartphone interface at a later time via the **connection manager**.

- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi smartphone interface** > **Switch to connection manager**.
- ▸ Connect your smartphone to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 241* via the corresponding USB adapter ⇨ *page 241, Fig. 169*.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Audi smartphone interface** in **Connection manager** ⇨ *page 257*. You can select your smartphone from the list of devices already connected ⇨ *page 259*.
- ▸ Follow the instructions given by the system.

WARNING

Driving on the road always requires your full attention. As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. Never operate mobile devices while the vehicle is moving – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 198*.

Note

- The functions you can use depend on a number of factors including:
  - The brand of your smartphone
  - The operating system version of your smartphone
  - The software version of the app in use
  - The USB adapter/cable and the correct connection
  - Your mobile network/service provider
  - The individual settings on your smartphone
- One or several of the factors listed above can result in your smartphone being incompatible with the Audi smartphone interface. We regret that it is not possible to guarantee compatibility for all types of smartphone. For further information and support, please refer to the operating manual of your smartphone or contact its manufacturer.
- If the smartphone you have connected has a voice control feature, you can control your smartphone using the external voice control system* ⇨ *page 181*.
- The menu language displayed on the MMI is based on the setting on your smartphone.
- The time displayed on the MMI is based on the setting on your smartphone.
- Some of the MMI functions are not available when an Audi smartphone interface connection is active.
- You cannot use mobile devices via Bluetooth when the Audi smartphone interface connection is active.
- If you have inserted your own mini SIM card in the SIM card reader* for making phone calls, the SIM card will be used exclusively for a data connection when the Audi smartphone interface and the car phone function* ⇨ *page 183* are active.

How to use

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

Calling up the menu

- **Apple CarPlay**: To return to the main menu of Apple CarPlay from any other menu, press and hold the BACK button.
- **Android Auto**: To open the menu bar of Android Auto, push the rotary pushbutton downwards.

Calling up a menu item

- Use the MMI control console to select an item from the menu and confirm it.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

Subject	Advice
Audi smartphone interface cannot be called up.	Check the battery charge level on your smartphone. Check the USB cable and try using another one. Check whether Android Auto or Apple CarPlay is available in your country.
	Android Auto: Check that the Android Auto app is installed on your smartphone.
Connecting the smartphone to the MMI fails.	Check that you are using the correct USB adapter and that the USB adapter is connected correctly to your smartphone and to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 241*.
	Apple CarPlay: Check that Apple CarPlay is activated on your smartphone.
	Android Auto: Check in the Android Auto app whether Android Auto allows new cars.
Smartphone is not detected automatically.	Check that you are using the correct USB adapter and that the USB adapter is connected correctly to your smartphone and to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 241*. Check that the requirements for connecting a smartphone have been met.

System settings

Setting the time and date

The time can be set manually or via GPS*:

- Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Date & time**, or
- Select: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Date & time**.

Set automatically

The time and date are automatically updated when this function is switched on ☑.

Time

Important: The **Set automatically** function must be deactivated.

Press the rotary pushbutton. You can adjust the **time** manually by turning and pressing the rotary pushbutton.

Date

Important: The **Set automatically** function must be deactivated.

Press the rotary pushbutton. You can adjust the **date** manually by turning and pressing the rotary pushbutton.

Time zone

When selecting the correct time zone, a list of corresponding countries is displayed as an example.

Automatic time zone*

When this function is activated ☑, the time is automatically adjusted to the relevant time zone.

Automatic summer time*

When this function is activated ☑, the time is automatically adjusted from normal time to summer time.

Time format

When this option is set to **24h**, for example **13:00** will be displayed as the time. When it is set to **AM/PM**, for example **1:00 PM** will be displayed.

Date format

When this option is set to **DD.MM.YYYY**, for example **31.03.2023** will be displayed as the date. When it is set to **MM/DD/YYYY**, for example **03/31/2023** will be displayed. When it is set to **YYYY-MM-DD**, for example **2023-03-31** will be displayed.

MMI settings

- Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings**.

Language

You can change the language of the display along with the language of the navigation cues* and the speech dialogue system*.

The number of languages available depends on the country.

Measurement units

Where available, the following measurement units can be set: **Speed**, **Distance**, **Temperature**, **Consumption**, **Capacity** and **Pressure**.

Reminder signal

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box

Important: Your mobile phone must be Qi compatible[1)], or it must be connected to the Audi music interface ① ⇨ *page 186, Fig. 144* using a USB adapter cable.

When the reminder signal function is switched on, you will be notified that your mobile phone is still in the Audi phone box when you are leaving the vehicle. You can choose between **spoken**, **sound** and **off**. ▶

1) The Qi standard enables you to charge your mobile phone wirelessly.

Reminder signal volume: You can adjust the volume of the reminder signal by turning the rotary pushbutton.

Switch off pop-up: When this function is switched on ☑, the messages about the charging status of the mobile phone in the Audi phone box will not appear on the infotainment display. The reminder not to forget the mobile phone when leaving the vehicle will also be switched off.

Usage tips

Your MMI displays usage tips when this function is switched on ☑. They will appear less often as time goes by.

Speech dialogue system

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system

The following functions may be available depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Command display: The MMI displays possible voice commands in the corresponding menu when this function is switched on ☑.

Short dialogue: When this function is switched on ☑, the spoken cues are shortened.

Command during speech dialogue: This option is activated when the vehicle leaves the factory. When this option is activated ☑, you can say a new command while the system is giving a spoken cue, rather than waiting for the beep. When this option is deactivated ☐, wait until you hear the beep to say a command.

Volume: You can adjust the volume of the spoken cues by turning the rotary pushbutton.

Individual speech training (only possible when the vehicle is stationary): You can use the individual speech training to adapt the speech dialogue system to your voice or pronunciation so that the speech dialogue system can then better recognise what you are saying. The individual speech training prompts you to repeat 20 spoken phrases that consist of certain commands and blocks of digits. If you would like to delete the stored speech training setup, you can use the function **Reset individual speech training**.

Display brightness

You can adjust the brightness of the infotainment display by turning the rotary pushbutton.

Factory settings

The following functions can be reset to the factory settings, depending on the vehicle's equipment:

- **Sound settings**
- **Radio**
- **Media settings**
- **Jukebox**
- **Directory**
- **Telephone**
- **Bluetooth and Wi-Fi**
- **Navigation settings**
- **Navigation and online memory**
- **Speech dialogue system**
- **Message settings**
- **Apps**
- **Usage tips**
- **Audi connect**
- **Audi smartphone interface**

You can select the desired options individually or mark **Select all entries**. Select and confirm **Restore factory settings**.

Note

Please note that not only settings will be deleted when you do this; saved data may also be erased.

Connection manager

Introduction

The connection manager gives you an overview of your connected devices and their connection status:

- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Connection manager**.
- ▸ Select and confirm a menu option.

If a mobile device has already been connected and you then select and confirm the corresponding menu item, the device's name and connection status is displayed under this menu item. ▸

81B012720AJ

You can **connect** ☑ or **disconnect** ☐ a connected device individually.

Important: The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on. The Bluetooth settings must be open on your mobile device during the connection procedure. The Bluetooth function and the discoverability option of the MMI system ⇨ *page 259* and the mobile device must be activated. The mobile device you would like to connect must not be connected to any other Bluetooth device.

Primary phone

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

- **Connect new device**: You can search for and connect a mobile phone.
- **List of devices already bonded**: Select your mobile phone from the list of all devices which have already been bonded, or:
- Insert your own mini SIM card in the SIM card reader* ⇨ *page 185*.

Additional phone

Applies to: vehicles with telephone and Audi phone box

- **Connect new device**: You can search for and connect a mobile phone.
- **List of devices already bonded**: Select your mobile phone from the list of all devices which have already been bonded.

Data connection

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

Applies when using the embedded SIM card: The embedded SIM card[1)] will be used for the data connection ⇨ *page 199*. You do not need to adjust any other settings.

Applies to: option using your own SIM card

- **Connect new device**: You can search for and connect a mobile device (e.g. a smartphone).
- **List of devices already bonded**: Select your mobile phone from the list of all devices which have already been bonded, or:
- Insert your own mini SIM card in the SIM card reader* ⇨ *page 199*.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 198*.

myAudi app

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

Important: The myAudi app must be installed and started on your mobile device.

- **Connect new device**: You can search for and connect a mobile device (e.g. a smartphone).
- **List of devices already bonded**: Select your mobile device from the list of all devices which have already been bonded.

Note

– All services/apps may be changed, activated/deactivated, renamed or extended without further notice.
– In some countries a different app than the myAudi app may be available for your vehicle. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.

Audio players

Applies to: vehicles with Bluetooth audio player or Wi-Fi audio player

Bluetooth audio player

Important: The Bluetooth function and the discoverability option of both the MMI system ⇨ *page 259* and the Bluetooth audio player must be activated.

- **To connect a new device**: Press the rotary pushbutton.
- Select and confirm **Bluetooth audio player**.
- Search for and connect a mobile device.
- **List of devices already bonded**: Select a Bluetooth device from the list of all devices which have already been bonded. ▶

1) SIM card installed in vehicle at factory.

Wi-Fi audio player

Important: The Wi-Fi hotspot on the MMI system ⇨ *page 205* and your Wi-Fi audio player must be activated.

- **To connect a new device**: Press the rotary push-button. Search for and connect a Wi-Fi enabled device.
- **To disconnect a Wi-Fi audio player**: Deactivate Wi-Fi on your Wi-Fi enabled device. The device will be removed from the list automatically.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 198.*

Directory

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

You can display the contacts from (other) mobile phones.

Important: There must be no mobile phones connected to the MMI via the Bluetooth SIM Access Profile or the **Handsfree** profile.

- **Connect new device**: You can search for and connect a new mobile phone, or:
- Slide your own mini SIM card into the slot in the SIM card reader* until you feel it engage.
- **List of devices already bonded**: Select your mobile phone from the list of all mobile phones which have already been bonded.

Audi smartphone interface

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

- Connect your mobile phone to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 241* via a USB adapter ⇨ *page 241, Fig. 169.*
- Select your mobile phone from the list of mobile phones already connected.

Further options

Further options may be available in the connection manager via the right control button depending on the vehicle equipment and the function selected.

Delete Bluetooth device

The selected mobile phone/mobile device will be disconnected from the MMI system and removed from the list of devices already connected.

Display Bluetooth profiles

You can **Connect** or **Disconnect** the **Handsfree**, **Car phone**, **Messages**, **Directory/contacts** and **Bluetooth audio player** profiles individually.

Bluetooth settings

- **Bluetooth**: Select and confirm a discoverability setting for the Bluetooth connection. Select **visible** to make the MMI visible to other devices. Select **invisible** to make the MMI invisible to other devices. Devices which have already been bonded can connect via Bluetooth even when discoverability is deactivated. Select **off** to switch discoverability off. It is then not possible to establish a Bluetooth connection.
- **Bluetooth audio player**: When this function is switched on ☑, the Bluetooth audio player is available as a source in the **Media** menu.
- **Bluetooth name**: The Bluetooth name of the MMI system (e.g. "AUDI MMI") is displayed and can be changed.

Online settings

- **Data connection settings**: Refer to ⇨ *page 204, Mobile network.*
- **Data usage meter**: The amount of data sent/received via the MMI system is displayed. Select **Reset data meter** to reset the usage statistics to zero.
- **Connection status**: The mobile network provider for data services and the network status are displayed.

Wi-Fi settings

Refer to ⇨ *page 205.*

Store as default telephone

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 182.*

This mobile phone will be prioritised over other Bluetooth devices and connected as soon as it is within range. For this to occur, the Bluetooth ▶

function of both the mobile phone and the MMI must be switched on. The connected mobile phone is shown at the top of the device list.

SIM PIN settings

Applies to: option using your own SIM card

- **Automatic PIN entry**: When this function is switched on ☑, the SIM PIN is stored in the MMI after it has been entered for the first time. You can save the PIN codes of four different SIM cards on the MMI. If this function is switched off ☐, the PIN currently stored in the MMI will be deleted. If the automatic PIN entry function is activated, the system does not ask you to enter your SIM PIN.
- **Deactivate PIN query**: The system does not ask for the SIM PIN when you switch it on. The automatic PIN entry function is ignored in this case.
- **Change PIN**: You can change the PIN for your SIM card. First enter the existing PIN for your SIM card. The SIM PIN can only consist of numbers from 0 to 9. The new SIM PIN has to be entered twice, as a precautionary measure, and is stored on the SIM card.

Network settings

- **Registration**: To dial into your service provider's mobile network **automatic**ally or to select a network **manual**ly from the list of available networks.
- **Network selection**: You can use this function to select the available networks for the current position of the vehicle. This function is only available when the **manual** setting is activated for registration.

Apple CarPlay sound settings/Android Auto sound settings

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

Refer to ⇨ *page 260*.

About Apple CarPlay/About Android Auto

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

Here you will find legal information about using Apple CarPlay/Android Auto and information about data transfer for specific devices.

Delete Apple CarPlay device/Delete Android Auto device

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

Important: Your mobile phone must no longer be connected to the Audi music interface via a USB adapter.

Select: **Audi smartphone interface** > a device from the list > right control button.

To remove your mobile phone from the list, select and confirm **Delete Apple CarPlay device** or **Delete Android Auto device**.

Note

Applies to: option using your own SIM card

Some SIM cards do not allow the SIM PIN query to be deactivated.

System update

▸ Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **System maintenance**.

- **System update**: Insert the storage medium with the update data into the appropriate drive ⇨ *page 236*. Select and confirm: *the appropriate drive* > **Start update**. The duration of this process depends on the size of the update.
- **Reset driver installation**: The media driver package selected is reset to the factory defaults.
- **Version information**: Information on the software version of the MMI and the navigation database* is displayed. In addition, you can use the **Software information** function to display information on the MMI's software and licence conditions.

Sound settings

You can adjust the sound and volume of the MMI individually. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Sound** > left control button > **Entertainment**. ▶

Treble / Bass

You can adjust the settings for **Treble** and **Bass** by turning the rotary pushbutton. Any changes to the settings only apply to the audio source currently active. This allows you to set the sound for each audio source separately.

Balance/fader (sound focus)

- **To set the left/right volume ratio**: Press the rotary pushbutton. Turn the rotary pushbutton clockwise or anti-clockwise to the desired position.
- **To set the front/rear volume ratio**: Press the rotary pushbutton again. Turn the rotary pushbutton clockwise or anti-clockwise to the desired position.
- **To set the volume ratio using MMI touch**: Move your finger in the desired direction on the MMI touch pad.

Sound effects

Focus: You can optimise the sound playback for different positions in the passenger compartment.

Surround level

Turn the rotary pushbutton to adjust the surround sound.

Subwoofer

Turn the rotary pushbutton to adjust the subwoofer.

Speed-dependent volume control

Turn the rotary pushbutton to adjust the playback volume to the noise level inside the vehicle.

Volume settings

Adjusting the volume

Using the ON/OFF button, you can adjust the volume of an audio source or system message (e.g. during a speech dialogue*) directly while it is being played.

- **Volume up/down**: Turn the ON/OFF button (1) ⇨ *page 156, Fig. 123* clockwise or anti-clockwise.
- **Mute/pause**: Briefly press the ON/OFF button, or:
- Turn the ON/OFF button anti-clockwise until the symbol (12) ⇨ *page 166, Fig. 138* appears. Any active audio/video* source will then be paused.
- **Unmute/resume**: Briefly press the ON/OFF button, or:
- Turn the ON/OFF button clockwise.

WARNING

The audio system volume should be set at a level which enables you to hear external signals (such as the sirens of police and emergency vehicles) clearly – failure to do so could result in an accident.

Note

The volume is automatically adjusted to a preset level when you switch on the MMI.

Setting the system volume

- Select: MENU button > **Sound** > left control button.

Telephone

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Mute telephone: Message and ring tones are silenced.

Ring tone: Refer to ⇨ *page 196,* **Ring tone and volume settings**.

Ring tone volume: You can adjust the volume of the ring tone currently selected by turning the rotary pushbutton.

Message volume: You can adjust the volume of the tone informing you of a new message by turning the rotary pushbutton.

Microphone input level: You can adjust the telephone volume during a call by turning the rotary pushbutton.

Navigation

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Voice guidance: Refer to ⇨ *page 220.* ▶

Voice guidance during calls: Refer to ⇨ *page 220*.

Volume of spoken cues: You can adjust the volume of the spoken cues by turning the rotary pushbutton or you can adjust the volume of the spoken cues by turning the ON/OFF button while route guidance is active.

Entertainment fader: This option allows the volume of the current audio source to be temporarily reduced when the parking aid is active or while a navigation cue is being played.

Announcements*

Traffic announcements*: Refer to ⇨ *page 230*.

DAB announcements*: Refer to ⇨ *page 230*.

Volume of announcements: You can adjust the volume of traffic announcements by turning the rotary pushbutton.

Speech dialogue system

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system

Command display: Refer to ⇨ *page 257*.

Short dialogue: Refer to ⇨ *page 257*.

Speech dialogue system volume: Refer to ⇨ *page 257*.

Individual speech training: Refer to ⇨ *page 257*.

Parking aid*

You can adjust the volume of the sounds by turning the rotary pushbutton.

– **To adjust the front volume**: Select and confirm **high**, **medium** or **low**.
– **To adjust the rear volume**: Select and confirm **high**, **medium** or **low**.

MMI touch*

Turn the rotary pushbutton to adjust the volume of the spoken cues for the MMI touch pad*.

Restarting the MMI system

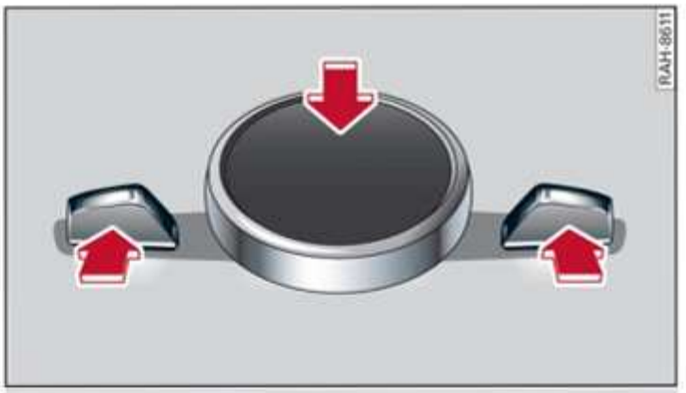


Fig. 176 MMI control console: Combination of buttons for restart

▸ Briefly press the rotary pushbutton and *simultaneously* press the two buttons for directly calling up menus upwards ⇨ *Fig. 176*.

Notes on software licences

Information on the MMI system's software and its licence conditions

▸ Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **System maintenance** > **Version information**, or:
▸ On the Internet at www.audi.com/softwareinfo.

Information on the instrument cluster's software and its licence conditions

▸ Press the reset button 0.0 twice in the first five seconds after switching on the ignition.

Checking and topping up fluids

Fuel

Identification of fuels[1)]

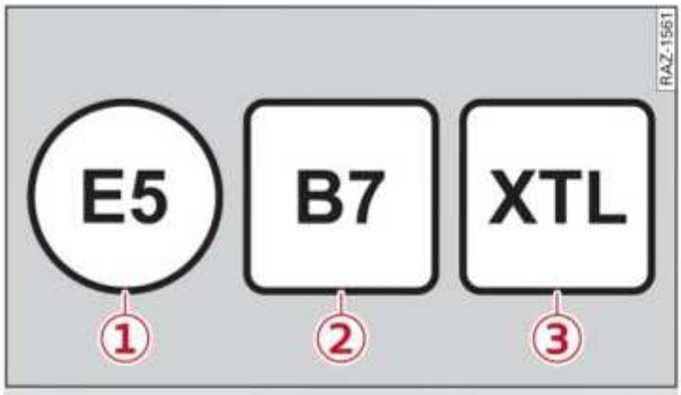


Fig. 177 Tank flap sticker: Identification of fuels (examples)

The symbols signify different fuels. Depending on the fuel, there may be individual symbols on the fuel pump and in the vehicle's tank flap. This is intended to help prevent incorrect fuel from being used. Fill the tank only with the fuel types shown on the fuel tank flap.

- ① **Petrol** with ethanol: "E" stands for **e**thanol. The number refers to the proportion of ethanol in the petrol. For example, "E5" means that the fuel contains a maximum of 5% ethanol.
- ② **Diesel** with biodiesel: "B" stands for **b**iodiesel. The number refers to the proportion of biodiesel in the diesel. For example, "B7" means that the fuel has a maximum of 7% biodiesel content.
- ③ **Diesel** with biodiesel: "XTL" stands for paraffin-based diesel fuel.

Petrol grade

Applies to: vehicles with petrol engine

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is listed inside the fuel tank flap.

The vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter and must only be run on **unleaded petrol**. Petrol must be **sulphur-free** and must comply with the EN 228 fuel quality standard or equivalent. The petrol grades have different **octane (RON)** or **Anti-Knock Index (AKI)** ratings.

The following headings relate to the sticker on the inside of your vehicle's tank flap (example):

Unleaded fuel only RON/ROZ 95 Super, Premium or min. RON/ROZ 91 Normal

The use of premium petrol (95 RON / 91 AKI) is recommended. If that type of fuel is not available, regular petrol (at least 91 RON / 87 AKI) can be used with a slight loss of power.

Unleaded fuel only, min. RON/ROZ 95 Super, Premium

Premium petrol (at least 95 RON / 91 AKI) must be used.

If premium petrol is not available, the engine can be run on regular petrol with 91 RON / 87 AKI as an *emergency measure*. In this case only use moderate engine speeds and a light throttle. Fill up with premium or Super Plus petrol as soon as possible.

Unleaded fuel only RON/ROZ 98 Super Plus or min. RON/ROZ 95 Super, Premium

The use of Super Plus petrol (98 RON / 93 AKI) is recommended. If that type of fuel is not available, premium petrol (at least 95 RON / 91 AKI) can be used with a slight loss of power.

If premium petrol is not available, the engine can be run on regular petrol with 91 RON / 87 AKI as an *emergency measure*. In this case only use moderate engine speeds and a light throttle. Fill up with premium or Super Plus petrol as soon as possible.

CAUTION

- Do **NOT** fuel your vehicle with high-ethanol fuel blends (e.g. E30 – E100). This will damage the fuel system.
- Do **NOT** fuel your vehicle with high-methanol fuel blends (e.g. M15 – M100), because this will damage the fuel system and the engine.

1) Depending on country

– Even one tankful of leaded fuel would permanently impair the efficiency of the catalytic converter.
– You should use only petrol additives which have been approved by Audi. Additives with so-called octane boosters or antiknock additives can contain metallic additives that cause significant damage to the engine and the catalytic converter. Do not use such additives.
– Metal-based fuels, which can be identified from the marking on the fuel dispenser, must not be used. LRP fuel (lead replacement petrol) also contains high concentrations of metallic additive. Risk of engine damage!
– High engine speed and full throttle can damage the engine when using petrol with an octane rating lower than the correct grade for the engine.

Note

– You can use higher octane fuel than your engine requires.
– In countries where sulphur-free fuel is not available, you may use low-sulphur fuel instead.

Diesel fuel

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is listed inside the fuel tank flap.

The use of **sulphur-free diesel** complying with the EN 590 standard is recommended.

Diesel can thicken at very low temperatures, which can result in problems starting the engine or prevent the engine from running smoothly. For this reason, filling stations in some countries offer winter-grade diesel fuel during the cold months so that you can continue to operate your vehicle reliably. Ask at your filling station whether the diesel fuel available there is suitable for the current conditions and for the temperatures which could potentially occur.

CAUTION

– Never use FAME fuels (biodiesel), petrol, heating oil, thinners or any other fuels or additives, as these could cause serious damage to the fuel system and the engine.
– Never start the engine if you fill up with the wrong type of fuel, as this could damage the fuel system and the engine. Seek professional assistance.

Paraffin-based diesel fuel[1)]

Applies to: vehicles suitable for paraffin-based diesel fuel

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is listed inside the fuel tank flap.

You can use **sulphur-free paraffin-based diesel fuel** that complies with the EN 15940 standard if the "XTL" symbol is on the sticker inside your vehicle's tank flap. You must not use this fuel if the symbol is not on the sticker.

Please also refer to the description of diesel fuel ⇨ *page 264*.

1) This fuel is available in certain countries only.

Filling the tank

Procedure for filling the tank



Fig. 178 Vehicle as seen from the rear right: Opening fuel tank flap



Fig. 179 Fuel tank flap with tank cap attached

The fuel tank flap is unlocked/locked automatically by the central locking system.

- If necessary, unlock the vehicle.
- Press the left side of the flap to open it ⇨ *Fig. 178*.
- Unscrew the tank cap anti-clockwise.
- Hook the cap onto the open flap ⇨ *Fig. 179*.
- Insert the filler nozzle into the fuel filler neck as far as the stop.
- Start refuelling. The filler nozzle cuts out as soon as the tank is full. Do not try to put in more fuel after the nozzle cuts out, as this will fill the expansion chamber in the fuel tank.
- When the fuel filler pump switches itself off, wait for 5 seconds before pulling out the filler nozzle so that any remaining fuel can flow into the tank opening.
- Screw on the tank cap clockwise until it clicks audibly.
- Press the left side of the flap to close it (you should hear it click into place).

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is given on a sticker on the inside of the tank flap. Further notes on fuel ⇨ *page 263*.

The tank capacity of your vehicle is given in the Technical data section ⇨ *page 324*.

To prevent fuel and vapours from escaping, make sure that the fuel tank is properly sealed; otherwise the indicator lamp [1] will light up.

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

If the indicator lamp lights up and a corresponding message appears, you should add fuel to the vehicle's tank.

Tank system malfunction! Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the tank system. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

Improper refuelling and improper handling of fuel can cause explosions, fire, serious burns and other injuries.

- Do not smoke. Keep naked flames away from the vehicle.
- The ignition must be switched off when refuelling.
- Mobile phones and radio equipment must always be switched off when refuelling. Electromagnetic radiation can cause sparks which could start a fire.
- The auxiliary heating* must be switched off when refuelling.
- Fuel can escape if you do not insert the filler nozzle all the way into the filler neck. Escaping fuel can ignite and cause a fire.
- Never get into the vehicle while refuelling. If you do have to get into the vehicle in ▶

[1] Depends on engine and country

exceptional circumstances, close the door and touch a metal surface before handling the filler nozzle again. This will discharge any static electricity which could generate sparks. Sparks can start a fire when refuelling.

WARNING

Audi recommends you NOT to carry a spare fuel canister in the vehicle. Fuel could escape from the canister and catch fire, particularly in the event of an accident. Fire, explosions and injuries could result.

- If, in exceptional circumstances, you have to carry a spare fuel canister, please observe the following warnings:
  - Always place the spare fuel canister on the ground before filling it. Never fill fuel into the spare fuel canister with the canister placed in or on top of the vehicle. Electrostatic electricity can build up while filling the canister and ignite the fuel vapours.
  - When using metal fuel canisters, always keep the filler nozzle in contact with the canister to prevent the build-up of static electricity.
  - Keep the filler nozzle inserted as far as possible into the filler opening while filling the canister.
  - Observe all relevant local regulations on using, storing and transporting spare fuel canisters.

CAUTION

- If fuel overflows onto the vehicle, remove it completely straight away to prevent damage to the vehicle.
- Never run the tank completely dry. If there is an irregular fuel supply, misfiring can occur. As a result unburnt fuel can enter the exhaust system and cause damage to the catalytic converter(s).
- Vehicles with diesel engine: When filling the fuel tank after having run it completely dry, the ignition must be switched on for at least 30 seconds without starting the engine. When you then start the engine it may take longer than normal (up to one minute) for the engine to start firing. This is because air needs to be bled from the fuel system while starting.

For the sake of the environment

- Do not try to put in more fuel after the automatic filler nozzle has switched off; this may cause the fuel to overflow if it becomes warm.
- Never pour fuel down drains or into the ground.

Note

The tank flap is not locked when you lock the vehicle from the inside by pressing the central locking switch.

Note

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine

Diesel vehicles are equipped with an incorrect fuelling protection system[1]. This system ensures that the tank can only be fuelled from a diesel filler nozzle.

- If the filler nozzle is old, damaged or too small, it may not be able to open the protection mechanism on the fuel tank. In this case, try turning the filler nozzle before inserting it in the fuel filler neck, use a different filling pump or seek professional assistance.
- The protection mechanism will not open if you try to add fuel from a spare fuel canister. You can get round this simply by adding the diesel fuel slowly.

Releasing the tank flap manually

- ▸ If you cannot open the tank flap, seek professional assistance.
- ▸ Then drive carefully to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

1) Depending on country

Selective catalytic reduction (AdBlue/DEF)

General information

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

On vehicles with selective catalytic reduction, a urea solution (AdBlue/DEF) is injected into the exhaust system upstream of a NOx catalytic converter in order to reduce nitrogen oxide emissions. The catalytic converter changes nitrogen oxides into nitrogen and water with the help of the urea solution AdBlue/DEF. The urea solution is known as AdBlue or DEF (Diesel Exhaust Fluid). The term AdBlue is used below.

The AdBlue is held in a separate tank in the vehicle. AdBlue consumption is normally between 1.0 ltr. - 2.5 ltr./1000 km. In individual cases, the consumption may be different as a result of how the vehicle is driven along with the operating and ambient temperature.

It is not sufficient to simply have AdBlue refilled when the vehicle is serviced because this may be necessary more often than services are due or between service intervals.

As soon as a message appears in the instrument cluster display reminding you to refill AdBlue, you must refill the AdBlue tank or have this done by a qualified workshop ⇨ *page 268*.

Checking range

Applies to: vehicles with range check

The AdBlue consumption depends on the ambient and operating temperature and on how the vehicle is driven. The approximate remaining range and quantity to be added can be checked on the instrument cluster display[1].

- Vehicles with analogue instrument cluster ⇨ *page 22*.
- Vehicles with virtual cockpit* ⇨ *page 21*.

Legal information

- It is not permitted to make technical changes to the emission control system which have an effect on the exhaust gas treatment using AdBlue.
- Audi has approved this vehicle for use only with AdBlue corresponding to ISO-22241-1, for which the Certificate of Conformity for this type of vehicle has been issued.
- It may be a crime to operate the vehicle without the AdBlue which corresponds to ISO-22241-1.
- If the emission control system is not operated as intended, the exhaust emissions may worsen.
- The use of AdBlue for the operation of this vehicle is required by law.

Note

- The instrument cluster display will tell you how far you can drive before the tank runs dry ⇨ *page 267*. If the AdBlue tank runs dry, the engine cannot be started again after you switch off the ignition. Never run the AdBlue tank completely dry.
- Restrictions may be encountered when refilling in very cold temperatures, because the freezing point of AdBlue is -11 °C.
- The system is heated when the vehicle is running to ensure that the exhaust gas treatment operates even at very low temperatures.

Instrument cluster display

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

The display informs you if the AdBlue level is too low or if a system malfunction occurs.

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Low AdBlue level

A series of warnings will inform you if the amount of AdBlue in the tank falls below a certain level. You should always fill up with AdBlue when requested to do so on the instrument cluster display. ▶

[1] On some versions, the figures can be checked before the refill message appears.

Please refill x ltr. AdBlue/DEF at next fuel stop. Range x km

This message tells you the maximum distance that you can drive with the remaining amount of AdBlue. Refill AdBlue.

Refill x ltr. of AdBlue/DEF! No restart in x km. See owner's manual

This message tells you the maximum distance that you can drive with the remaining amount of AdBlue. Refill AdBlue. Otherwise, after driving the maximum distance and switching off the engine, you will not be able to restart the car. You can also call up the remaining distance on the on-board computer.

Refill x ltr. AdBlue/DEF! No restart. See owner's manual

This message appears when there is no more AdBlue left in the tank. Refill AdBlue. Otherwise, you will not be able to restart the car after you switch off the engine.

When the AdBlue in the tank reaches the minimum level, you must add AdBlue ⇨ *page 268, Before refilling AdBlue*.

Filling the wrong fluid / system fault

If you fill the AdBlue tank with a fluid other than AdBlue and the system detects that the wrong fluid has been added or there is a system fault, a driver message will appear.

Please check AdBlue/DEF. See owner's manual

This message appears if the system detects that the tank has been filled with the wrong fluid or with non-standard AdBlue or if there is a system fault. Drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

AdBlue/DEF: fault. No restart in x km. See owner's manual

This message appears if the system detects that the tank has been filled with the wrong fluid or with non-standard AdBlue or if there is a system fault and the vehicle can only be driven as far as indicated in the instrument cluster. Drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified. Otherwise, after driving the maximum distance and switching off the engine, you will not be able to restart the car.

AdBlue/DEF: fault. Engine cannot be restarted. See owner's manual

This message appears if the system detects that the tank has been filled with the wrong fluid or with non-standard AdBlue or if there is a system fault. Drive to the nearest qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified. You will not be able to restart the car after you switch off the engine.

Before refilling AdBlue

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction



Fig. 180 Vehicle as seen from the rear right: Unscrewing the AdBlue cap

The AdBlue filler neck is located immediately beside the diesel filler neck.

The AdBlue tank capacity on your vehicle is given in the Technical data section ⇨ *page 324*.

When the instrument cluster displays the request to fill up AdBlue, fill up at least the amount of AdBlue displayed. If you do not refill this amount of fluid, the system may not detect that the tank has been refilled and it may not be possible to restart the engine.

- ▸ Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- ▸ Switch off the ignition.
- ▸ Open the tank flap ⇨ *page 265*.
- ▸ Unscrew the cap on the filler neck anti-clockwise ⇨ *Fig. 180*.
- ▸ Refill AdBlue from a filler nozzle ⇨ *page 269*, canister ⇨ *page 269* or bottle ⇨ *page 270*. ▶

WARNING

AdBlue can cause irritation to the skin, eyes, and respiratory organs. Wash thoroughly with clean water should you come into contact with this fluid. Seek medical assistance if necessary.

CAUTION

- Improper handling of AdBlue can cause damage to the vehicle not covered by the warranty.
- Use only AdBlue that complies with the ISO 22241-1 standard. Do not mix AdBlue with additives and do not dilute it with water.
- AdBlue must not be added to the diesel tank, and diesel must not be added to the AdBlue tank. Never start the engine if you fill up with the wrong type of fuel, as this could damage the tank system and the engine. Seek professional assistance.
- AdBlue attacks surfaces such as paintwork, plastic veneer and carpets. Remove spilt fluid as soon as possible with a damp cloth and plenty of water. If the AdBlue has already solidified, use warm water and a sponge. Residues of AdBlue solidify after a while if they are not removed and can damage the affected surface.
- Do not keep refill bottles or canisters in the vehicle, as AdBlue can leak and damage the vehicle interior.
- Keep AdBlue away from clothing. Wash thoroughly with clean water should you come into contact with this fluid.

Note

Please follow the AdBlue manufacturer's instructions for storage and use.

Refilling AdBlue from a filler nozzle

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

- Fill up with AdBlue until the first time the filler nozzle cuts off the supply ⇨ (!).
- Put the tank cap back on ⇨ *page 270, After refilling AdBlue.*

CAUTION

- The handle of the filler nozzle must point downwards when filling the tank. Otherwise the filler nozzle will not cut off the supply automatically ⇨ (!) *in Before refilling AdBlue on page 269.*
- Do not use a damaged filler nozzle in case it does not cut off the supply properly.
- You should stop refilling the first time the filler nozzle automatically cuts off the supply. Otherwise the level of AdBlue in the tank may be too high and AdBlue could overflow ⇨ (!) *in Before refilling AdBlue on page 269.*

Note

You can fill AdBlue from pumps for either light passenger vehicles or heavy goods vehicles.

Refilling AdBlue from a canister

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

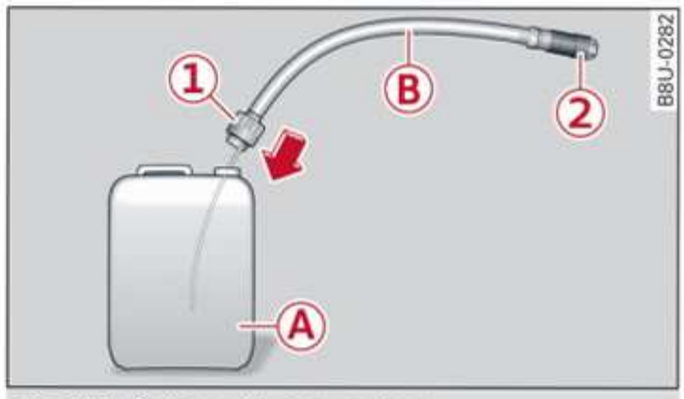


Fig. 181 Canister with screw-on hose

- Take the cap off the refill canister ⇨ ⚠ *in Before refilling AdBlue on page 269,* ⇨ (!) *in Before refilling AdBlue on page 269.*
- Screw the end of the hose (1) clockwise onto the opening on the canister (A).
- Remove the cap (2) from the other end of the hose (B).
- Fit the end of the hose (2) onto the filler neck on the vehicle and turn clockwise as far as the stop to secure.
- Lift the canister and then tilt it. Keep it tilted until empty or until no more fluid runs into the tank.
- Turn the hose anti-clockwise to remove it. ▶

▸ Remove the canister and screw the tank cap back on ⇨ *page 270, After refilling AdBlue.*

CAUTION

Use only refill canisters of the correct type approved for your vehicle. AdBlue may leak out if you use another system.

Note

– Your qualified workshop can tell you which refill canisters are approved for your vehicle.
– Approved refill canisters contain about 5 litres of AdBlue.

Refilling AdBlue from a bottle

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

▸ Take the cap off the refill bottle ⇨ ⚠ *in Before refilling AdBlue on page 269,* ⇨ (!) *in Before refilling AdBlue on page 269.*
▸ Screw the bottle clockwise onto the filler neck as far as it will go.
▸ To empty the bottle, lightly press the bottom of the bottle. Keep pressing the bottom of the bottle until the bottle is empty, or until no more fluid runs into the tank.
▸ Unscrew the bottle anti-clockwise without applying pressure.
▸ Remove the bottle and screw the tank cap back on ⇨ *page 270, After refilling AdBlue.*

CAUTION

Use only refill bottles of the correct type approved for your vehicle. AdBlue may leak out if you use another system.

Note

– Refill bottles are available from qualified workshops.
– Approved refill bottles contain about 1.9 litres of AdBlue.

After refilling AdBlue

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

Closing the filler neck

▸ Screw the AdBlue cap clockwise onto the filler neck until the AdBlue cap clicks audibly ⇨ ⚠ *in Before refilling AdBlue on page 269,* ⇨ (!) *in Before refilling AdBlue on page 269.*
▸ Press the left side of the flap to close it (you should hear it click into place).

After refilling

▸ Switch the ignition on for approximately 30 seconds to allow the system to register that fluid has been added.
▸ You should wait until this has happened before starting the engine.

Note

AdBlue can freeze at very low temperatures. Restrictions may therefore be encountered when refilling. In this case, the system may not detect AdBlue when you refill and will continue to indicate a low AdBlue level. The message will disappear as soon as the tank has thawed.

Emission control system

General information

WARNING

The exhaust system is very hot when the vehicle is being driven and after the engine has been switched off.
– Never touch the tailpipes when they are hot – risk of burns!
– Because of the high temperatures which can occur in the exhaust system, do not park the vehicle where the exhaust can come into contact with flammable materials under the car (e.g. on grass or at the forest edge) – risk of fire!
– Do not apply any underseal agents in the area around the exhaust system – risk of fire!

Catalytic converter

Applies to: vehicles with petrol engine

Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ *page 270, General information*.

The vehicle must only be used with unleaded petrol, otherwise the catalytic converter will be irreparably damaged.

Never allow the fuel tank to run completely dry, as the irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. This allows unburnt fuel to enter the exhaust system, which can cause overheating and damage to the catalytic converter.

Particulate filter

Applies to: vehicles with particulate filter

Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ *page 270, General information*.

The particulate filter can filter out almost all soot particles contained in the exhaust gas. In normal driving conditions the filter is self-cleaning. Should the self-cleaning function of the filter not be able to operate, e.g. when the vehicle is continuously used only for short trips, the filter becomes obstructed with soot and the driver message **Particulate filter: can be cleaned by driving vehicle. See owner's manual** appears. The particulate filter requires cleaning (regeneration).

Different regeneration procedures are required, depending on the type of engine (petrol or diesel) and the engine capacity.

Determine which engine is installed in your vehicle (there may be a badge on the boot lid or you can consult the vehicle data sticker ⇨ *page 323* or vehicle registration documents).

Regenerating the particulate filter by driving at a constant speed

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine or petrol engine (25 TFSI - 35 TFSI / 1.0 ltr., 1.4 ltr. or 1.5 ltr.)

Before starting the regeneration trip, check whether regenerating the particulate filter by **driving at a constant speed** is the correct method for your vehicle (based on the engine) ⇨ (!).

The engine must be warmed up prior to the regeneration trip.

On vehicles with manual gearbox, follow the gear shift indicator in the instrument cluster.

- ▸ Drive at a speed of between 50 km/h and 120 km/h ⇨ ⚠. As a result of the increase in temperature, the soot in the filter will be burned off.
- ▸ Do not stop the regeneration trip until the indicator lamp goes out.

This procedure causes the particulate filter to regenerate itself and may take some time (approx. 30 minutes).

If the indicator lamp does **not** go out, drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Regenerating the particulate filter by driving and coasting

Applies to: vehicles with petrol engine (40 TFSI and 45 TFSI / S models / 2.0 ltr)

Before starting the regeneration trip, check whether regenerating the particulate filter by **driving and coasting** is the correct method for your vehicle (based on the engine) ⇨ (!).

The engine must be warmed up prior to the regeneration trip.

On vehicles with manual gearbox, follow the gear shift indicator in the instrument cluster.

- ▸ Drive at a speed of at least 80 km/h ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Then take your foot off the accelerator completely for a few seconds and let the vehicle coast in gear.
- ▸ Repeat this procedure (accelerate to at least 80 km/h and coast again) until the indicator lamp goes out.

This procedure causes the particulate filter to regenerate itself and may take some time.

If the indicator lamp does **not** disappear after a while, drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

⚠ WARNING

It is essential, when regenerating the particulate filter, that you adjust your speed to suit ▸

81B012720AJ

the weather, road, terrain and traffic conditions. The recommendation must never lead to the driver disregarding local traffic regulations.

CAUTION

Before starting the regeneration trip, check which method (driving at a constant speed or driving and coasting) is required for your vehicle (based on the engine). If you do not use the correct method, the regeneration trip may have no effect and the particulate filter may be damaged.

Note

- As a result of the high temperatures which occur during the regeneration of the particulate filter, the radiator fan may continue to run after the engine is switched off, even if the engine has not yet reached operating temperature.
- Noises, odours and increased engine speeds when idling may be noticed during regeneration.
- Applies to vehicles with diesel engine: If the indicator lamp requesting you to refuel the vehicle also appears in the instrument cluster during the regeneration trip, the particulate filter regeneration process may be interrupted. Drive to a filling station and then resume the regeneration trip after refuelling the vehicle.
- To maximise the service life of the particulate filter, always use suitable engine oil and the correct fuel. You should also avoid driving the vehicle continuously on short trips.

Emission control system

If the indicator lamp lights up or flashes, malfunctions have occurred which are relevant for emissions. These malfunctions may reduce the quality of the exhaust gas and damage the catalytic converter, for example. Drive slowly to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

The indicator lamp may also light up if the fuel tank flap has not been closed properly ⇨ *page 265*[1)].

Engine compartment

General information

Extra caution is necessary when working on components in the engine compartment.

Always be aware of the danger of injury and scalding as well as the risk of accident or fire when working in the engine compartment (e.g. when checking and refilling fluids). Always observe the warnings listed below and follow all normal safety precautions. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area. ⇨ ⚠

Explanation of warning symbols:

	Observe all warnings – risk of injury!
	Hot engine parts! Rotating parts!
	Fan can switch on at any time!
	High voltage! Switch off engine before any part of ignition system is touched!
	The catalytic converter can be damaged if the engine oil level is too high!
	Hot coolant – risk of scalding!
	Always read the instructions in the Owner's Manual.

WARNING

- Switch off the engine.
- Switch off the ignition.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Put the gear lever in neutral (manual gearbox) or put the selector lever in the parking position P (automatic gearbox).
- Wait for the engine to cool down.
- Keep children away from the engine compartment. ▶

[1)] Depends on engine and country

- Never spill fluids on a hot engine. These fluids can cause a fire (e.g. radiator antifreeze).
- Take care not to cause short circuits in the electrical system.
- Never touch the radiator fan. The fan is temperature-controlled and may switch on suddenly even if the ignition is switched off.
- To avoid the risk of being scalded, never open the bonnet if you see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen before opening the bonnet.
- The cap on the coolant expansion tank must not be opened if the coolant is hot. The cooling system is under pressure; there is a risk of being scalded.
- Protect face, hands and arms by covering the cap with a large, thick cloth to protect against escaping coolant and steam.
- Never remove the engine cover panel – risk of burns!
- Never touch ignition cables or other components of the electronic high-voltage ignition system while the engine is running or being started – risk of electrocution!
- Automatic gearbox: The accelerator pedal must on no account be pressed inadvertently when a gear is engaged and the engine is running with the vehicle stationary. The vehicle will otherwise start moving immediately and could cause an accident.
- If any tests or repairs have to be performed with the engine running, there is an extra safety risk from the rotating parts, such as the drive belts, alternator and radiator fan, etc:
  - First apply the parking brake and put the gear lever in neutral (manual gearbox) or put the selector lever in the parking position P (automatic gearbox).
  - Always make sure that no parts of the body, jewellery, ties, loose items of clothing or long hair can become caught up in rotating engine parts. Before commencing any work, always remove ties and jewellery, tie back long hair and wear tight clothing to prevent these from becoming caught up in the engine parts.
- Observe the following additional warnings if work on the fuel system or the electrical system is necessary:
  - Do not smoke.
  - Never work near naked flames.
  - Always keep an approved fire extinguisher immediately available.
- Any work on the batteries and electrical system in your vehicle entails a risk of injury and chemical burns in addition to danger of accident or fire. For this reason, you **must** have the work carried out by a qualified workshop.
- Do not expose yourself to exhaust gases or chemical substances for any longer than necessary.

CAUTION

When topping up fluids make sure the correct fluid is put into the correct filler opening. This can otherwise cause serious malfunctions or engine damage.

For the sake of the environment

Inspect the ground underneath your vehicle regularly so that any leaks are detected at an early stage. If you find spots of oil or other fluids, have your vehicle inspected by a qualified workshop.

81B012720AJ

Opening/closing bonnet

The bonnet is released from inside the vehicle.



Fig. 182 Footwell: Release lever



Fig. 183 Unlocked bonnet: Lever

Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ *page 272, General information*.

The wiper arms should be resting on the windscreen: make sure they are not in a raised position. Otherwise the paint may get damaged.

Opening the bonnet

- ▸ With the door open, pull the lever [1] under the dashboard in the direction indicated by the arrow ⇨ *Fig. 182*.
- ▸ Lift the bonnet slightly ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Press the lever under the bonnet in the direction indicated by the arrow ⇨ *Fig. 183*. This will release the arrester hooks.
- ▸ Open the bonnet.

Closing the bonnet

- ▸ To close the bonnet, pull it down to overcome the spring pressure.
- ▸ Then let it drop into the catches; *do not press down*. ⇨ ⚠

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Warning! Bonnet not locked. Stop vehicle and check bonnet lock

The bonnet lock is not correctly engaged. Stop your vehicle without delay and close the bonnet.

⚠ WARNING

- To avoid the risk of being scalded, never open the bonnet if you see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen before opening the bonnet.
- For safety reasons the bonnet must always be completely closed when the vehicle is moving. After closing it always check that it is properly secured. It should not be possible to lift the front edges of the bonnet.
- Should you notice that the bonnet is not safely secured when the vehicle is moving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet properly, otherwise it could cause an accident.

[1] Symbol not available in all countries.

Engine compartment layout

Main components for checking and refilling

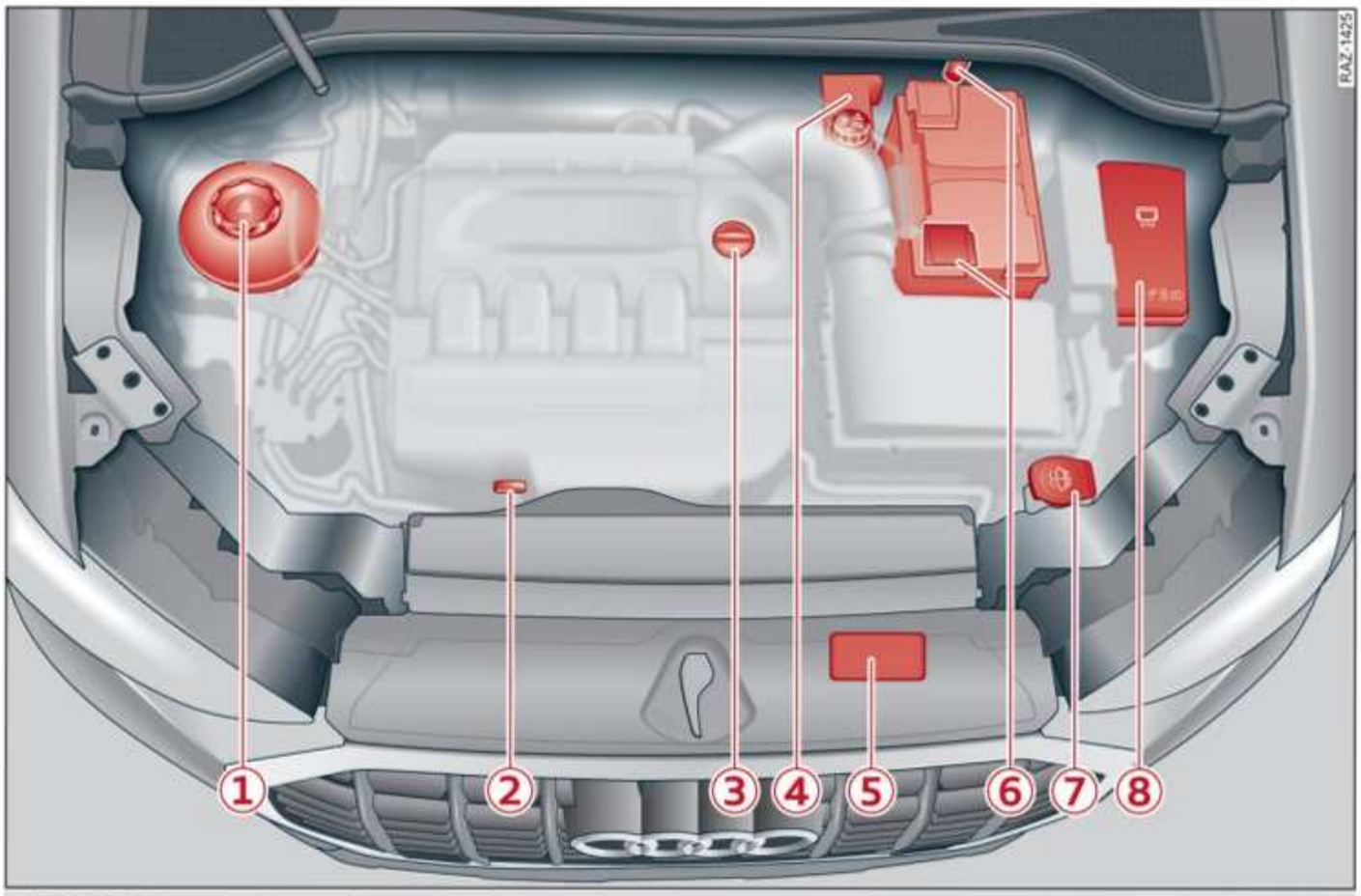


Fig. 184 Engine compartment layout: Example

Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ *page 272, General information*.

① Coolant expansion tank (⚠) ⇨ *page 279*
② Engine oil dipstick ⇨ *page 277*
③ Engine oil filler cap (🛢) ⇨ *page 277, Checking the engine oil level*
④ Brake fluid reservoir (⭘) ⇨ *page 280*
⑤ Sticker for engine oil specification ⇨ *page 275*
⑥ Vehicle battery (+) and earth point (–) ⇨ *page 283, Charging the 12 Volt vehicle battery*, ⇨ *page 306, Jump-starting*
⑦ Windscreen washer container (🚿) ⇨ *page 284*
⑧ Fuse box ⇨ *page 312*

The positions of the brake fluid reservoir, the engine oil dipstick and the engine oil filler cap may be different on some engine and country versions. The appearance of the coolant expansion tank may differ on some engine versions.

Engine oil

If the engine oil level is too low

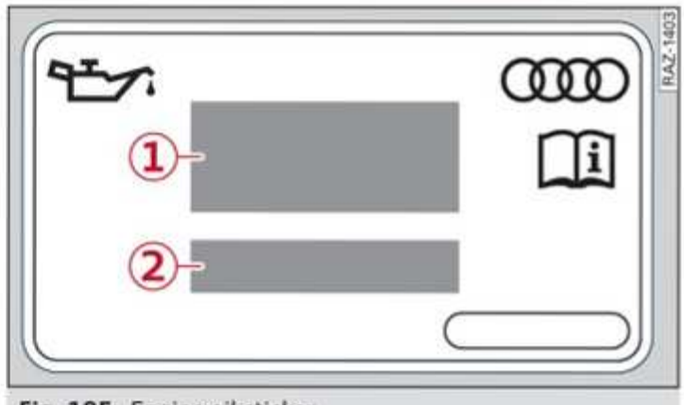


Fig. 185 Engine oil sticker

– ① Engine oil standard
– ② Engine oil viscosity

If you have to top up the engine oil, use one of the oils that meet the engine oil standard specified on the sticker ⇨ *Fig. 185*. The sticker with the specified standard is located at the front of the engine compartment ⇨ *page 275, Fig. 184*. If ▶

you use this oil, you can top up the engine oil level as often as necessary.

If the specified engine oil is not available, you can add a maximum of 0.5 litres of oil corresponding to the following standards **once** between oil changes. You should do this **in emergencies only**.

- Applies to petrol engines: Standards: VW 504 00, ACEA C3, ACEA C4, API SP or ILSAC GF-6A. All viscosity classes of these standards are allowed.
- Applies to diesel engines: Standards: VW 507 00, ACEA C3, ACEA C4 or API CK-4. All viscosity classes of these standards are allowed.

Audi recommends having the oil changed by a qualified workshop.

CAUTION

Audi recommends that you use the types of engine oil that have been formulated to conform to the corresponding VW standard. Using engine oil that does not meet these quality requirements may cause damage to the engine. In an emergency, 0.5 ltr. of engine oil corresponding to the standards specified above may be used as an exception.

Note

Audi recommends engine oil from Audi Genuine Parts.

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Switch off engine. Oil pressure too low

Switch off the engine and do not drive on. Check the engine oil level ⇨ *page 277*.

- If the engine oil level is too low, add more oil ⇨ *page 278*. Do not drive on until the warning lamp has gone out.
- If the engine oil level is OK but the warning lamp still lights up, switch off the engine and do not drive on. Seek professional assistance.

Applies to vehicles with oil level warning:

Please check oil level

- You can continue driving for the time being but you should check the engine oil level as soon as possible ⇨ *page 277, Checking the engine oil level*.
- If the engine oil level is normal but the indicator lamp stays on, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and avoid high engine speeds.

Oil level sensor: engine oil change required. Please contact workshop

The engine oil has become contaminated with fuel. In this case, the oil level gradually rises and the quality of the engine oil decreases. Do not attempt to correct the level by extracting engine oil – risk of engine damage. Drive to a qualified workshop soon to have the engine oil changed.

Oil level sensor system: fault. Please contact workshop

The sensor for checking the engine oil level has failed. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Oil pressure sensor: fault. Please contact workshop

The sensor for checking the engine oil pressure has failed. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Please warm up engine

It is possible for fuel to enter the engine oil, especially at low outside temperatures. The temperature of the engine oil needs to be high enough so that the fuel in it can evaporate.

Applies to automatic gearbox: Drive in transmission position S.

Run the engine at high rpm speeds but avoid using full throttle.

You should drive for at least 30 minutes; however it is possible that the indicator lamp may not go out during this period. Repeat the procedure at your convenience. ▶

If the indicator lamp does not disappear after several runs, drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

When responding to the message **Please warm up engine**, it is essential that you adjust your speed to suit the weather, road, terrain and traffic conditions. The recommendation must never lead to the driver disregarding local traffic regulations.

Note

The oil pressure warning lamp is not an indicator for the oil level. The oil level should therefore be checked regularly.

Checking the engine oil level

The oil dipstick differs depending on the type of engine.

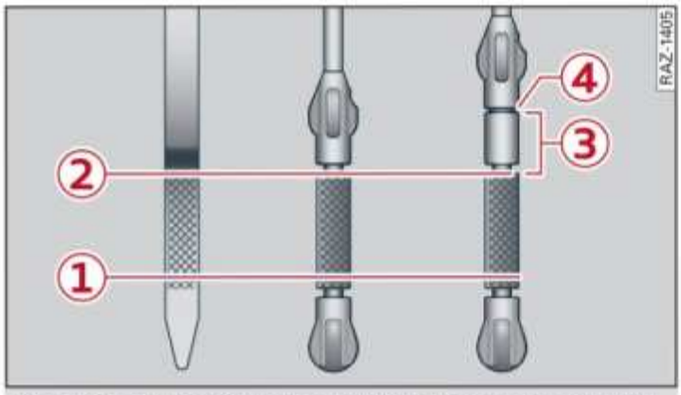


Fig. 186 Oil dipstick (examples): Checking engine oil level

Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ *page 272, General information*.

- ▸ Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- ▸ Switch off the warm engine.
- ▸ Wait for about five minutes for the engine oil to drain back into the sump.
- ▸ Open the bonnet ⇨ *page 274*.
- ▸ Pull out the oil dipstick ⇨ *page 275, Fig. 184*, wipe it with a clean cloth and insert it again, pushing it in as far as it will go.
- ▸ Then pull the dipstick out again and check the oil level ⇨ *table on page 277*.
- ▸ Push the dipstick all the way in.
- ▸ If the oil level is too low, add more engine oil ⇨ *page 278*.

Markings on oil dipstick ⇨ *Fig. 186*	
①	When the oil level is just above the marking ① you must top up the engine oil. Please refer to ⇨ ⓘ.
② ③	Do NOT add engine oil.
④	Do NOT add engine oil. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the engine oil changed ⇨ ⓘ.

CAUTION

- – The engine oil must never drop below the marking ① – risk of engine damage!
- – When topping up the engine oil, make sure that the oil level is not above the marking ② ⇨ *Fig. 186*, as this may result in damage to the catalytic converter or to the engine. If the oil level is above the marking ②, drive to a qualified workshop without delay to have the excess oil extracted. Avoid high engine speeds, full acceleration and heavy engine loads.
- – Applies to vehicles which have an oil dipstick with area ③ ⇨ *Fig. 186*: If you run your vehicle on diesel fuel of poorer quality than EN 590 standard fuel, the fuel can get into the engine oil. In this case, the oil level gradually rises and the quality of the engine oil decreases. Once the oil level has reached the marking ④ or the indicator lamp has come on, the engine oil level must not be corrected by extracting the surplus oil – risk of engine damage! The engine oil must be changed ⇨ *page 276*.

Note

Depending on how you drive and the conditions in which the car is used, oil consumption can be up to 0.5 ltr./1000 km. Oil consumption is likely to be higher for the first 5,000 km. The engine oil level must be checked at regular intervals, preferably when refuelling and before a journey.

Topping up the engine oil



Fig. 187 Engine compartment: Engine oil filler cap (example)

Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ *page 272, General information*.

- ▸ Switch off the engine.
- ▸ Open the bonnet ⇨ *page 274*.
- ▸ Unscrew cap from oil filler opening ⇨ *Fig. 187*.
- ▸ Carefully add 0.5 litres of suitable engine oil ⇨ *page 275*.
- ▸ After two minutes check the oil level once again ⇨ *page 277, Checking the engine oil level.*
- ▸ Applies when using engine oil that corresponds to the specified standard: Add a little more engine oil if necessary.
- ▸ Screw the oil filler cap back on and push the dipstick all the way in.
- ▸ Close the bonnet ⇨ *page 274*.

WARNING

- Ensure that no oil comes into contact with hot engine components when topping up: this could cause a fire.
- The oil filler cap must be properly closed to prevent oil from squirting onto the hot engine or exhaust system while the engine is running – risk of fire!
- Wash your skin thoroughly if it comes into contact with engine oil.
- Engine oil is poisonous and must be kept out of the reach of children.
- Store the engine oil safely in the original container.

CAUTION

No additives should be used with engine oil. These could cause engine damage.

For the sake of the environment

- Never pour oil down drains or into the ground.
- Always observe local regulations when disposing of empty oil canisters.

Cooling system

Coolant

The engine cooling system is filled at the factory with a mixture of conditioned water and coolant additive. This coolant must not be changed.

The coolant level is monitored by a warning lamp . However, it is advisable to check it occasionally.

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Switch off engine and check coolant level. See owner's manual

Stop vehicle and check coolant. See owner's manual

The coolant level is too low.

Switch off the ignition and do not drive on. Check the coolant level ⇨ *page 279*.

– If the coolant level is too low, add more coolant ⇨ *page 279*. Do not drive on until the warning lamp has gone out.

Coolant temperature too high! Please let engine run with vehicle stationary

Let the engine cool down by running it at idling speed for a few minutes until the warning lamp goes out.

– Do not drive on if the warning lamp does not disappear. Seek professional assistance. ▶

Cooling system: fault. Please switch off power unit

Do not drive on. Stop the engine and switch off the ignition. Seek professional assistance.

Coolant additive

The coolant additive contains anti-freeze and corrosion protection agent. When topping up, use only the type of coolant additive specified below, in combination with distilled water.

Coolant additive	Specification
G12evo	TL 774 L

The amount of coolant additive which needs to be mixed with the water depends on the temperatures to be expected in the winter season. If the anti-freeze concentration is too low, the coolant can freeze and cause engine damage.

	Coolant additive	Frost protection
Hot regions	min. 40 % max. 45 %	min. -25 °C (-13 °F)
Cold regions	min. 50 % max. 55 %	max. -40 °C (-40 °F)

CAUTION

- Have your qualified workshop check the cooling system before the winter season to make sure that the anti-freeze concentration is adequate for the conditions to be expected. This applies particularly if you drive into a colder climate zone.
- To prevent damage to the engine, do not use a different type of coolant additive if G12evo is not available. In this case use only distilled water and bring the coolant concentration back up to the correct level as soon as possible by putting in the specified additive.
- Always top up with fresh, unused coolant.
- Radiator sealants must not be added to the coolant.
- If the coolant system has been topped up with a coolant additive other than the approved type (G12evo), you can continue driving initially; however you should take the vehicle to a qualified workshop without delay and have the coolant changed – risk of engine damage!
- The cooling system must be refilled by a qualified workshop only – risk of engine damage! You can obtain important information about recommended anti-freeze additives from your qualified workshop.

Checking the coolant level

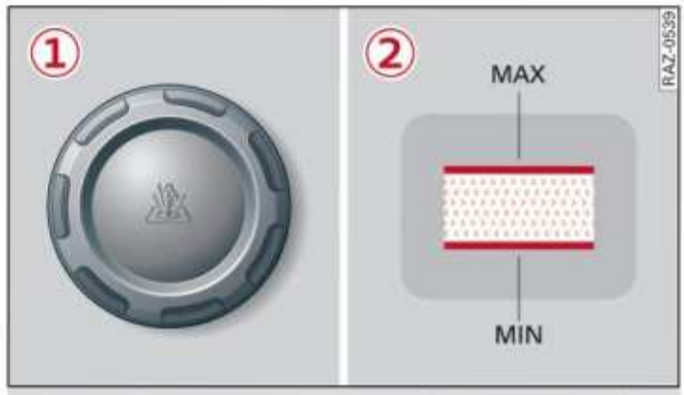


Fig. 188 Engine compartment – coolant expansion tank (example): ① Cap, ② Marks

Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ *page 272, General information*.

Checking the coolant level

- Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- Switch off the ignition.
- Open the bonnet ⇨ *page 274*.
- Check the coolant level in the expansion tank ⇨ *page 275, Fig. 184* using the external markings ② ⇨ *Fig. 188* as a guide. When the engine is cold, the coolant level should be between the marks ②. When the engine is warm, it may be slightly above the top mark.

Topping up the coolant

Important: The coolant expansion tank must not be empty ⇨ ⓘ.

If you do need to top up the coolant, use a mixture of water and coolant additive. Audi recommends mixing coolant additive with distilled water.

- Wait for the engine to cool down.
- Cover the cap on the expansion tank with a large, thick cloth. ▶

- Carefully unscrew the cap ① ⇨ *Fig. 188* anticlockwise ⇨ ⚠.
- Add coolant in the correct concentration ⇨ *page 279* up to the top mark ② ⇨ *Fig. 188*.
- You should make sure that the fluid level remains stable. If necessary, add more coolant.
- Screw the cap on again tightly in the clockwise direction.

⚠ WARNING

- The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a dangerous place. Before carrying out any work in the engine compartment, stop the engine, switch off the ignition and allow the engine to cool down. Please observe the important safety warnings ⇨ *page 272, General information*.
- Never open the bonnet if you can see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment; there is a risk of being scalded. The cooling system is under pressure. Wait until you can no longer see or hear escaping steam or coolant.
- When working in the engine compartment be aware that the radiator fan may start running suddenly, even if the ignition is switched off – risk of injury!
- The coolant and coolant additive can be a health hazard. Store the coolant additive in the original container in a safe place out of reach of children – risk of poisoning.

! CAUTION

Coolant loss which leads to the coolant expansion tank being virtually empty normally indicates significant leaks in the cooling system which could result in further damage.

- Do not add coolant if the expansion tank is empty. Air could have got into the cooling system – risk of damage! In this case, do NOT drive on. Seek professional assistance.
- If there is coolant remaining in the tank, add more coolant. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified. If the warning lamp comes on again, stop the vehicle and switch off the ignition. Seek professional assistance.
- If too much coolant has been added to the coolant expansion tank, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the coolant level corrected.

Brake fluid



Fig. 189 Engine compartment: Cap of brake fluid reservoir

Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ *page 272, General information*.

Checking brake fluid level

- Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- Read off the brake fluid level on the brake fluid reservoir ⇨ *page 275, Fig. 184*. The brake fluid level must be between the MIN and MAX marks ⇨ ⚠.

The brake fluid level is also automatically monitored.

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Brakes: stop vehicle and check brake fluid level

Stop the vehicle and check the brake fluid level. Seek professional assistance.

Having brake fluid changed

The brake fluid must be changed at regular intervals by a qualified workshop. The workshop can inform you about the service intervals for the brake fluid change. ▶

WARNING

- If the brake fluid level is under the MIN mark, the effectiveness of the brakes and therefore the safety of the vehicle may be impaired – risk of accident! Do not drive on. Seek professional assistance.
- Heavy use of the brakes may cause a vapour lock if old brake fluid is left in the system. This would seriously impair the effectiveness of the brakes and the safety of the car – risk of accident!
- The brake fluid in your vehicle must comply with the VW 501 14 standard. If this brake fluid is not available, it is permissible to use an alternative high-quality brake fluid complying with the U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Standard (FMVSS) 116 DOT 4, Class 6 (ISO 4925).
- If used brake fluid or brake fluid not approved for your vehicle is used, the effectiveness of the brakes will be seriously impaired and the brake system could even fail completely. The vehicle manufacturer will accept no liability for faults or damage which occur as a result. In addition, no warranty claims will be accepted.

CAUTION

- If the brake fluid level is above the MAX mark, brake fluid may escape via the cap on the reservoir in certain circumstances and cause damage to the vehicle.
- Brake fluid must not be allowed to come into contact with the vehicle's body, otherwise it will attack the paintwork.

Electrical system

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

If the warning/indicator lamp / lights up, there is an alternator or battery fault or a fault in the vehicle's electrical system.

Electrical system: fault. Safely stop vehicle

or

Electrical system: fault. Battery is not being charged

Stop the vehicle safely and do not drive on. You should also switch off the ignition ⇨ ⚠. Seek professional assistance.

Electrical system: fault. No restart possible. Please contact workshop

When you switch off the ignition it will not be possible to restart the vehicle. The performance of certain vehicle functions may be limited and the vehicle's handling may be impaired. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay.

Electrical system: fault. Please contact workshop

Switch off any electrical equipment which is not required (some equipment may be switched off automatically). The performance of certain vehicle functions may be limited and the vehicle's handling may be impaired. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay.

Electrical system: low battery charge. Battery will be charged while driving

Starting reliability may be impaired.

- If this message disappears after a while, the vehicle battery will have been sufficiently charged while driving.
- If the message does not disappear again, drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

An electrical system fault can cause vehicle functions to fail, thus impairing the vehicle's stability – risk of accident! Switch off the ignition and do not drive on. Seek professional assistance.

Battery

General information on batteries

Because of the complexity of the power supply, any battery work, such as disconnection, replacement, etc. **must** be carried out by a qualified workshop ⇨ ⚠. ▶

Several batteries using different technologies may be fitted in your vehicle:

– Vehicle battery (e.g. for starting the engine and the basic supply) ⇨ *page 283, Safety precautions*
– Additional battery (e.g. for recuperation and extra equipment) ⇨ *page 283, Safety precautions*

If the vehicle is not used for long periods

The battery gradually becomes discharged if the vehicle is left standing for long periods. To ensure that the vehicle can be started, the electrical equipment is powered back or switched off. Certain convenience features, such as interior lighting or electric seat adjustment, may not be available. These functions will be restored when you start the engine.

Even though some systems are deactivated automatically, certain electrical equipment continues to draw current even when the ignition is off. If the vehicle is left standing for long periods, this can result in total battery discharge. If the vehicle battery is allowed to discharge completely, an internal chemical reaction damages the battery irreparably. To avoid this, the battery should be recharged at least once a month ⇨ *page 283*. Please seek advice from a qualified workshop.

Winter conditions

Cold weather is very hard on the 12 Volt vehicle battery. The starting capacity may be reduced as a result. For this reason, you should have the battery checked by a qualified workshop before the start of winter.

Replacing battery

Applies to: 12 Volt vehicle battery

Any work on the battery **must** always be carried out by a qualified workshop.

The 12 Volt vehicle battery has been developed for use in its installation location and is equipped with safety features. If a 12 Volt vehicle battery has to be replaced, please inquire about the electromagnetic compatibility, capacity and the required maintenance, performance and safety features of the new 12 Volt vehicle battery before purchasing it from your qualified workshop. The degassing opening on the 12 Volt vehicle battery must always be located on the side of the negative terminal. The degassing opening on the side of the positive terminal must always be sealed.

When replacing the 12 Volt lead battery, use only maintenance-free 12 Volt lead batteries to standards TL 825 06 and VW 7 50 73. These standards must be from October 2014 or later.

WARNING

– Any work on the batteries and electrical system in your vehicle entails a risk of injury and chemical burns in addition to danger of accident or fire. For this reason, you **must** have the work carried out by a qualified workshop.
– Always have the 12 Volt vehicle battery replaced by a qualified workshop because the vehicle electronics must be calibrated as part of the replacement procedure. Only qualified workshops have the equipment required in order to perform the calibration correctly. If the correct equipment is not used, safety-related functions may fail – risk of accident!

CAUTION

– If the car is left standing for long periods, protect the battery from frost. The battery will be damaged irreparably if it is allowed to freeze ⇨ *page 283, Charging the 12 Volt vehicle battery*.
– Always have the 12 Volt vehicle battery replaced by a qualified workshop because the vehicle electronics must be calibrated as part of the replacement procedure. Only qualified workshops have the equipment required in order to perform the calibration correctly.
– The use of unsuitable batteries can void the vehicle's type approval.

For the sake of the environment

Batteries and electric/electronic equipment must be disposed of appropriately ⇨ *page 326, Information on waste disposal*.

Safety precautions

Explanation of warning symbols:

	Observe all warnings – risk of injury!
	Always read the instructions in the Owner's Manual.
	Electrolyte is extremely corrosive. Always wear protective gloves and safety glasses. **First aid**: If electrolyte comes into contact with the eye, rinse the eye immediately with fresh water for several minutes. Seek medical assistance without delay. Neutralise any electrolyte spilt on skin or clothing immediately with soapy water and rinse with plenty of fresh water. If electrolyte is drunk by accident, seek the assistance of a doctor immediately.
	Always wear safety glasses.
	If electrolyte comes into contact with the eye, rinse the eye immediately with fresh water for several minutes. Seek medical assistance without delay.
	Keep open flames, sparks, uncovered lights and lit cigarettes away from the battery! Avoid sparks and short-circuits when handling cables and electrical equipment.
	Always keep children away from batteries and electrolyte.
	A highly explosive mixture of gases may be given off when the battery is under charge!

WARNING

Any work on the batteries **must** always be carried out by a qualified workshop.

- Any gases escaping from batteries may be toxic or flammable.
- The substances contained in batteries can be corrosive. If the contents of the battery come into contact with your skin, rinse the affected area with clean water for at least 15 minutes and then wash with soap. Have the affected area examined by a doctor.

Charging the 12 Volt vehicle battery

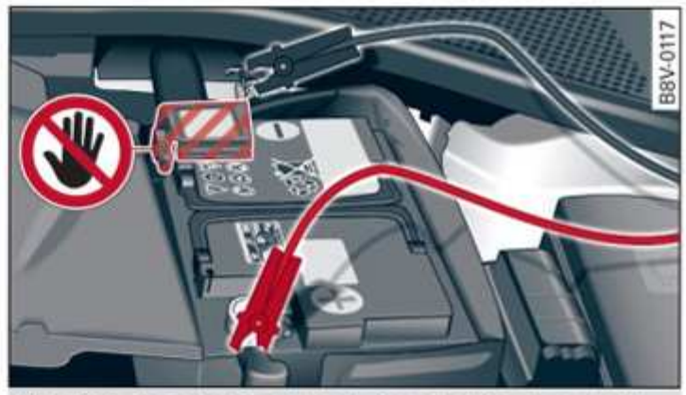


Fig. 190 Engine compartment: Terminals for jump leads or battery charger

Please read the safety information ⇨ *page 272, General information*, ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on batteries on page 282* and ⇨ ⚠.

Important: Only use chargers with a **maximum charge voltage of 14.8 V** (the battery cables do not have to be disconnected).

The battery is located in the engine compartment. The earth point ⊖ is always on the vehicle's body.

- ▸ Switch off all electrical equipment and the ignition.
- ▸ Open the bonnet ⇨ *page 274*.
- ▸ Open the cap on the positive terminal ⇨ *Fig. 190*.
- ▸ Connect the charger cables correctly to the positive terminal ⊕ and the earth point ⊖.
- ▸ Connect the battery charger to the mains and switch it on.
- ▸ Keep the bonnet fully open while charging ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ After charging the battery: switch off the battery charger and disconnect the mains cable.
- ▸ Now disconnect the charger cables.
- ▸ Close the cap on the positive terminal.
- ▸ Close the bonnet ⇨ *page 274*.

WARNING

- Never use unsuitable charging equipment or charging equipment which is visibly damaged and/or dirty. Always check the charging equipment for damage before use.
- A highly explosive mixture of gases may be given off when the battery is under charge.

▶

Only charge the battery in a well ventilated area.
- When it is discharged the battery can freeze at temperatures around 0°C. You must not use a battery which has frozen, even after it has thawed, because the ice may have cracked the battery casing and allowed the electrolyte to escape – risk of explosion and chemical burns! Please seek advice from a qualified workshop.
- Do not connect or disconnect the charging cables during the charging process – risk of explosion!
- Leave the bonnet open while the 12 Volt vehicle battery is charging. Closing the bonnet could cause an electrical short circuit – risk of fire!

Note

Important: Before you charge the battery make sure you read the manufacturer's instructions for using the battery charger.

Windscreen washer system



Fig. 191 Engine compartment: Cap of windscreen washer container

Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ *page 272, General information*.

The container for the windscreen washer contains the cleaning fluid for the windscreen/rear window and the headlight washer system* ⇨ *page 275, Fig. 184*. For the container capacity, please refer to ⇨ *page 324*.

Clean water should be used when topping up. If possible, use soft water to prevent scaling on the washer jets. Always add washer fluid to the water. In cold weather you should add anti-freeze to the water to prevent it from freezing.

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Please add washer fluid

With the ignition switched off, top up the fluid for the windscreen washer and headlight washer system*.

CAUTION

- The anti-freeze concentration must be matched to the climate of the country in which you are driving. If the concentration is too high, damage to the car may result.
- Never put in radiator anti-freeze or other additives.
- Never use washer fluid which contains paint thinners or solvents as it can damage the paintwork.

Service interval display

The service interval display detects when the next service is due for your vehicle.

There are two service interval display levels:

- **Inspection or oil change reminder**: After a certain mileage, a service reminder will appear in the instrument cluster display each time the ignition is switched on/off. The distance or time remaining will be shown briefly.
- **Inspection or oil change due:** When your vehicle is due for an inspection, oil change or both, the corresponding reminder **Inspection due!**, **Oil change due!** or **Oil change and inspection due!** will appear briefly after you switch the ignition on/off.

Checking the service intervals

On the infotainment system, you can look up the distance and time remaining until the next oil ▶

change or next service inspection. Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Service intervals**.

Applies to: vehicles with flexible oil change service

You cannot check the service interval on a new vehicle until it has been driven for about 500 km.

Qualified workshops reset the service interval after the oil is changed. The distance to the next oil change is initially displayed based on the driving profile prior to the oil change. Your own personal driving profile is used subsequently to calculate the remaining distance. Frequent cold starts or short trips place extra demands on the engine oil with the result that the oil has to be changed more often.

Resetting the display

Your qualified workshop resets the service interval display after each service.

It is very important that you reset the oil change display if you change the oil yourself. The next oil change will be due after a fixed service interval.

To reset the display, select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Service intervals** > **Reset oil change interval**.

WARNING

If you neglect to have the vehicle serviced promptly at the specified intervals, or if the scope of the servicing work is insufficient, this can lead to a breakdown in road traffic resulting in a potential accident with serious injury.

CAUTION

- Do not reset the oil change interval display unless you have changed the oil.
- Regular servicing of the vehicle not only sustains its service life and preserves its value, but also helps to maintain operational and road safety. Service work should therefore always be carried out according to the Audi guidelines.
- Services must always be carried out promptly, even if the mileage is low.
- Audi is not responsible for damage to the vehicle resulting from insufficient servicing or a lack of availability of parts.

Wheels

Tyres and rims

General information

In this Owner's Manual, the term "wheel" refers to the combination of rim and tyre. If only one of the above components is meant, the term tyre or rim is used.

- ▸ Inspect the tyres regularly for damage (cuts, cracks or blisters, etc.). Remove any foreign bodies embedded in the treads.
- ▸ If you have to drive over a kerb or similar obstacle, drive very slowly and as near as possible at a right angle to the kerb.
- ▸ Damaged rims or tyres must be replaced immediately.
- ▸ Keep grease, oil and fuel off the tyres.
- ▸ Mark the wheels before taking them off so that they rotate in the same direction when refitted.
- ▸ When removed, the wheels should be stored flat in a cool, dry and preferably dark place.

⚠ WARNING

- Never exceed the maximum approved speed for your tyres. This causes the tyres to overheat and can even result in a blow-out – risk of accident!
- Always adapt your driving style to the prevailing road and traffic conditions. Drive carefully and reduce your speed on icy or slippery roads. Even winter tyres lose their grip on black ice.

! CAUTION

- Please note that summer and winter tyres are optimised for the prevailing road conditions at different times of year. Audi recommends that you use winter tyres during the winter months. At low temperatures, summer tyres lose their elasticity and grip, and braking performance also suffers as a result. Cracks can form in the tread block on summer tyres if they are used at very cold temperatures, and this can cause permanent damage to the tyres. An increase in rolling noise and tyre imbalance may result from this damage.
- Machined, polished or chrome-plated rims must not be used in winter conditions. The process used to manufacture these types of wheel rim does not provide adequate surface protection against corrosion, and the rims can be permanently damaged by road salt or similar. This does not apply to rims which are supplied from the factory as complete winter wheels.

Tyre designations

The following example explains certain specifications on the tyre's sidewall:

205/60 R 16 92 H

205 Tyre width in mm
60 Height/width ratio in %
R Code for tyre type: radial
16 Rim diameter in inches
92 Load index
H Speed rating

Manufacturing date

The manufacturing date may possibly only be indicated on the inner side of the wheel:

DOT ... 2223 ...

means, for example, that the tyre was produced in the 22nd week of 2023.

AO or RO

Tyres with the marking "AO" or "RO" which are specially matched to your Audi are supplied with your vehicle. Provided that they are used properly, these tyres fulfil very high standards in safety and handling. Your specialist retailer will be glad to provide more information.

New wheels or tyres

Audi recommends having all servicing of wheels and tyres performed by a qualified workshop, since they have the necessary special tools and replacement parts in addition to trained personnel. ▸

- New tyres do not yet give maximum grip. When driving with new tyres, drive at moderate speeds and be especially careful during the first 500 km.
- All four wheels must be fitted with tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and preferably the same tread pattern.
- Tyres should be replaced in pairs and not individually (i.e. both front tyres or both rear tyres together).
- Audi recommends the use of Audi Genuine Tyres. If you wish to use other tyres, please note that the actual size can differ from the nominal size marked on the tyre ⇨ ⚠.
- If you wish to purchase a different combination of rims and tyres than the ones fitted on the vehicle during production, it is advisable to consult a qualified workshop beforehand ⇨ ⚠.

The specifications for the rim/tyre combinations approved for your vehicle are listed in the vehicle's documents (e.g. EC Certificate of Conformity or COC document [1]). The vehicle documents vary depending on the country in which the vehicle is registered.

If the spare wheel* is not the same type as the tyres fitted on the car (for example if the car has winter tyres or wide-section tyres) you should only use the spare wheel* if a puncture occurs, and then only for a short period of time. In this case, please drive with extra care. Refit a normal road wheel as soon as possible.

Applies to vehicles with four-wheel drive: All four wheels must always be fitted with tyres of the same type, make and tread pattern, as the driveline could otherwise be damaged by variations in the wheel speeds. For the same reason, only use a spare wheel* which has the same rolling circumference as the normal road wheels.

⚠ WARNING

- Use only tyre/rim combinations and matching wheel bolts approved by Audi. Otherwise damage to the vehicle and an accident could result.
- For technical reasons, it is not possible to use wheels from other vehicles. In certain cases, it is not even possible to use wheels from another vehicle of the same model.
- It is very important to ensure that the tyres you have chosen have adequate clearance. When selecting replacement tyres, do not rely entirely on the nominal tyre size marked on the tyre; with some makes of tyre the effective tyre size can differ significantly from the nominal dimensions, even though the tyres have the same size designation. Inadequate tyre clearance can result in damage to the tyres or the vehicle, causing a serious safety risk.
- Avoid running the car on tyres that are more than 6 years old. If you have no alternative, you should drive slowly and with extra care at all times.
- The use of run-flat tyres on your vehicle is NOT authorised! Unauthorised use can cause an accident or damage your vehicle.
- If wheel trims are fitted after the car is purchased, ensure that there is an adequate flow of air for cooling the brakes – risk of accident!
- If any of the tyres are incorrectly mounted on the rims, the tyres may be damaged or a blow-out may occur. The tyres must be mounted on the rims by trained personnel – risk of accident!

Tyre wear / damage



Fig. 192 Tyre tread: Tread wear indicators

[1] COC = Certificate of conformity

Tyre wear

Inspect the tyres regularly for damage.

- The wear on under or over-inflated tyres is significantly higher.
- Fast cornering, heavy acceleration and hard braking all increase tyre wear. If the vehicle is driven in this way, check the tread depth every 5,000 km - 10,000 km.
- If you notice excessive tyre wear, have the wheel alignment checked by a qualified workshop.
- Have your tyres rebalanced if steering wheel vibrations indicate an imbalance. Otherwise, the tyres and other parts of the vehicle may wear faster.

Tread wear indicators

The original tyres on your vehicle have 1.6 mm high tread wear indicators ⇨ *Fig. 192* running across the tread at regular intervals. The letters "TWI" or triangles on the sidewall indicate the positions of the tread wear indicators.

When checking the tread depth, you must check the tread wear indicators across the entire width of all four tyres.

The minimum tread depth[1)] is reached at the latest when the tread is worn down to the tread wear indicators. Replace the tyres with new ones ⇨ ⚠.

Changing wheels round

Wheels should be changed round regularly to ensure that the wear is equal on all tyres. Fit the wheels from the rear axle on the front axle and vice-versa. All the tyres will then last for about the same time.

On tyres with a directional tread pattern, note the direction of rotation indicated on the sidewall ⇨ *page 305*.

Concealed damage

Damage to tyres and rims is often not readily visible. If you notice unusual vibrations or the car pulling to one side, this may indicate that one of the tyres is damaged. Reduce your speed immediately. Inspect the tyres for damage. If no external damage is visible, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest qualified workshop and have the car inspected.

⚠ WARNING

Insufficient tread depth or different tread depths on different wheels reduce safety. This is particularly evident in vehicle handling, when there is a risk of aquaplaning in deep puddles of water and when driving through corners. Braking is also adversely affected – risk of accident!

Tyre pressure

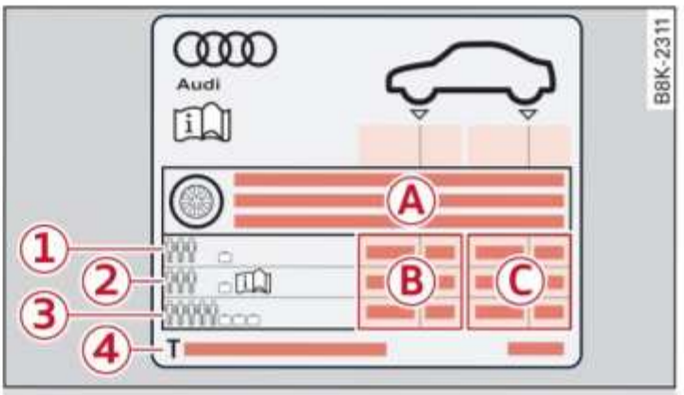


Fig. 193 B-pillar on driver's side: tyre pressure sticker

The correct inflation pressures for tyres fitted at the factory and for the compact temporary spare wheel* are specified on a sticker. The sticker ⇨ *Fig. 193* is on the B-pillar (driver's side).

Ⓐ Tyre size

Ⓑ Tyre pressure for the front wheels

Ⓒ Tyre pressure for the rear wheels

① Tyre pressure if vehicle is partially loaded

② Tyre pressure (comfort setting)* if vehicle is partially loaded (not available on all vehicles) If a maximum speed is given, it must not be exceeded.

③ Tyre pressure if vehicle is fully loaded ▶

1) Please observe the applicable regulations in the country in which you are travelling.

④ Tyre pressure for the compact temporary spare wheel*

If you intend to drive the vehicle with a partial load, adjust the tyre pressures to the specified setting ①. However, if you prefer an extra-smooth ride you can select the comfort setting* ②. Should you wish to drive with a full load, you must increase the tyre pressure to the specified maximum ③ ⇨ ⚠.

Checking / adjusting the tyre pressures

- ▸ Check the tyre pressures at least once a month and, in addition, before starting a long journey.
- ▸ The tyre pressures should only be checked when the tyres are *cold*. The slightly raised pressures of warm tyres must not be reduced.
- ▸ Refer to the sticker ⇨ *Fig. 193* for the correct tyre pressures.
- ▸ If necessary, adjust the tyre pressures.
- ▸ Then store the new tyre pressures ⇨ *page 292*.
- ▸ Check the pressure of the spare wheel*/ compact temporary spare wheel*. Keep the spare tyre inflated to the highest pressure approved for the tyre.

⚠ WARNING

Always adjust the tyre pressures to match your driving style and the load the vehicle is carrying.

- Excessive loads can cause you to lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident!
- Under-inflated tyres flex more and can overheat at high speeds or when the vehicle is carrying a heavy load. This could cause a tyre blow-out and you could lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident!
- Incorrect tyre pressures increase tyre wear and adversely affect vehicle braking and handling – risk of accident!

! CAUTION

Replace any lost valve caps to prevent damage to the tyre valves.

For the sake of the environment

- Under-inflated tyres will increase the fuel consumption.
- Driving with the tyre pressures adjusted to the comfort setting* may also result in increased fuel consumption.

Note

Audi recommends always using the tyre pressure setting ① for partial loads and the setting ③ for full loads.

Wheel bolts and rims

Wheel bolts

The wheel bolts should be clean and turn easily.

Rims

Rims with a bolted rim flange* or bolted trim parts* consist of several components. A special technique is applied to bolt these components together. Never attempt to repair or dismantle them ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

If the wheel bolts have not been tightened or serviced correctly, they can come loose, and you could lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident! For the correct tightening torque, refer to ⇨ *page 305, After changing a wheel*.

- Make sure that the wheel bolts and threads in the wheel hubs are always clean and free from grease.
- Only use wheel bolts that are designed to match the rims on your car.
- Always have damaged rims repaired by a qualified workshop. Never attempt to repair or dismantle rims yourself – risk of accident!

Winter tyres

In winter road conditions winter tyres will considerably improve the car's handling. Due to their type of construction (width, rubber compound, tread pattern), summer tyres give less grip on ice and snow.

- ▸ Winter tyres must be fitted on all four wheels.
- ▸ Only use winter tyres of the correct type approved for your vehicle. ▶

- Please note that the maximum permissible speed for winter tyres may be lower than for summer tyres ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 286*. Your specialist retailer can advise you of the maximum speed for your tyres.
- After fitting the wheels you must always check the tyre pressures ⇨ *page 288*.

Winter tyres lose their effectiveness when the tread is worn down to a depth of 4 mm. The performance of winter tyres is also severely impaired by ageing, even if the tread is still much deeper than 4 mm.

For the sake of the environment

Summer tyres should be fitted again as soon as possible; they give better handling on roads which are free of snow and ice. They are quieter, do not wear so quickly and reduce fuel consumption.

Note

All-weather tyres can also be used instead of winter tyres. Please note that winter tyres with the ❄ symbol are required by law during the winter season in some countries.

Snow chains

Snow chains will improve braking ability as well as traction in winter conditions.

- Snow chains can be used on the front wheels only.
- Check that the snow chains are correctly seated after driving for a few yards; follow the instructions given by the manufacturer.
- Keep your speed below 50 km/h. Please observe the applicable local regulations.

For technical reasons, snow chains may only be used on tyres with certain wheel rim/tyre combinations (depending on model version):

Rim size	Rim offset	Tyre size
6.0Jx16 (steel)	43 mm	205/60 R16
6.5Jx17	39 mm	215/55 R17

Only use snow chains with **fine-pitch links**. The links must not protrude more than 10.5 mm from the tyres (including tensioner).

You must remove the snow chains on roads which are free of snow; otherwise the vehicle's handling may be impaired and the tyres may be damaged.

WARNING

Unsuitable or incorrectly mounted snow chains can cause you to lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Snow chains can damage the rim/hubcap* if they make direct contact with it. Remove the hubcaps* beforehand. Use snow chains which have a protective coating.

Note

When driving with snow chains, it may help to restrict the ESC ⇨ *page 101*.

Low-profile tyres

Applies to: vehicles with low-profile tyres

Low-profile tyres have a lower sidewall and provide a wider tread surface and rim diameter than other wheel/tyre combinations. This makes the car's handling more agile. However, the ride may be less comfortable on poor-quality roads and tracks, and rolling noise may be louder.

Low-profile tyres can be damaged more quickly than standard tyres, for example by heavy jolts, potholes, manhole covers and kerbs. It is therefore particularly important to ensure that they are inflated to the correct pressure ⇨ *page 288*.

Drive with particular care on poor-quality roads to ensure that you do not damage the rims and tyres.

Make sure to check your wheels regularly (every 3,000 km) for damage such as blisters/tears on the tyre sidewalls or deformations/cracks on the rims.

After a heavy jolt, or if any damage occurs, you should have the rims and tyres checked and if necessary replaced by a qualified workshop. ▶

Tyre wear occurs more quickly on low-profile tyres than on standard tyres.

Tyre pressure loss indicator

Tyre pressure loss indicator in instrument cluster

Applies to: vehicles with tyre pressure loss indicator

The tyre pressure loss indicator in the instrument cluster informs the driver if the tyre pressure is too low or a system malfunction has occurred.

The tyre pressure loss indicator makes use of the ABS sensors to compare the rolling circumference and the vibration of the tyres. If changes in the inflation pressure are detected on one or more tyres, the driver is alerted by an indicator lamp and a message in the instrument cluster display. If only one tyre is affected, the display will indicate its position.

Each time you change a tyre, change the wheels round or change the tyre pressures on your vehicle (e.g. when switching from partial load to full load and vice-versa), you must store the new tyre pressures ⇨ *page 292*. Monitoring of the tyre pressures is based on the tyre pressures you have stored. The inflation pressures recommended for your vehicle are given on the tyre pressure sticker ⇨ *page 288, Fig. 193*.

The rolling circumference and vibration can change and cause a tyre pressure warning if:

- The inflation pressure in one or more tyres is too low.
- The tyres have suffered structural damage.
- The wheels were changed or the tyre pressures were changed and the new tyre pressures were not stored ⇨ *page 292*.
- Only some of the worn tyres have been replaced.

Indicator lamps

If the indicator lamp lights up, there is a loss of pressure on one or more tyres ⇨ ⚠. Check the tyre(s) and change them if necessary. Check and adjust the inflation pressures of all four tyres again and store the new tyre pressures ⇨ *page 292*.

If the indicator lamp flashes and an acoustic signal is issued although you have not yet stored the new tyre pressures, drive to an authorised workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

TPMS Tyre pressure: fault. See owner's manual

If TPMS appears and the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster display flashes for approx. one minute and then remains lit after you have switched on the ignition or while you are driving, there is a fault in the system. Try to store the correct tyre pressures ⇨ *page 292*. In some cases the indicator lamp may not go out until you have driven the vehicle for a few minutes after storing the pressures. If the indicator lamp does not go out or if it comes on again after a short time, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

- If the tyre pressure loss indicator appears on the display, slow down immediately and avoid any severe braking or steering manoeuvres. As soon as you can do so safely, stop and check the tyres and the tyre pressures.
- It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the tyre pressures are correct. For this reason you must check the tyre pressures regularly.
- Under certain conditions (e.g. driving at high speeds, on ice and snow or on poor road surfaces) the tyre pressure loss indicator may not appear immediately.

Note

- If a malfunction occurs in the ESC system, the tyre pressure loss indicator may also be out of action.
- When driving with snow chains, a system malfunction can occur.
- The tyre pressure loss indicator on your Audi is specially matched to "Audi Genuine Tyres" ▶

⇨ *page 286*. Audi recommends that you use these tyres.

Storing tyre pressure settings

Applies to: vehicles with tyre pressure loss indicator

When you change a tyre or the tyre pressure on your vehicle, you must confirm the change on the system.

- Before storing the new tyre pressures, check that the current pressures on all four wheels correspond to the specified values and adapt the pressures to the current load ⇨ *page 288*.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button **Servicing & checks** > **Tyre pressure loss indicator** > **Store tyre pressures** > **Yes, store now**.

Note

Do not store the tyre pressures if you are driving with snow chains.

Care of vehicle and cleaning

General information

Regular and careful care helps to maintain the value of the vehicle. This may also be one of the requirements for upholding any warranty claims in the event of corrosion or paint defects.

The required car care products are available from Audi dealers or specialist retailers. Please follow the instructions for use on the packaging.

WARNING

- Cleaning products and other materials used for car care can damage health if misused.
- Car care products can contain toxic substances and must always be kept in a safe place out of reach of children.

Washing the vehicle

The longer residues like insects, bird droppings, resinous tree sap or road salt are allowed to remain on the vehicle, the more damage they can do to the paintwork. High temperatures (for instance in direct sunlight) further intensify the damage.

Before washing, soak heavy dirt with plenty of water.

Stubborn dirt, such as bird droppings or resinous tree sap, is best removed with plenty of water and a micro-fibre cloth.

After the period when salt is put on the roads, have the underside of the vehicle washed thoroughly.

High-pressure cleaners

When cleaning the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, always follow the operating instructions for the equipment. This applies particularly to the operating pressure and the spraying distance. Do not point the spray jet directly at the seals on the windows, doors, boot lid, bonnet or panorama sun roof*, or at the tyres, rubber hoses, insulating material, sensors* or camera lenses*. Maintain a distance of at least 40 cm.

Do not use a high-pressure cleaner to remove snow and ice.

Never use high-pressure cleaners with a round-jet nozzle or "dirt blasters".

The water must not be hotter than 60 °C.

Automatic car washes

Spray the vehicle with water before washing.

Ensure that the windows and panorama sun roof* are closed and that the windscreen wipers are switched off. Ensure that the car is free to roll while it is being washed in a tunnel car wash. Follow the car wash operator's rules and recommendations, especially if any accessories are attached to your vehicle.

If possible use a brushless car wash.

Washing by hand

Clean the car with a soft sponge or brush, starting on the roof and working down. Use solvent-free cleaning agents.

Washing matt-painted vehicles by hand

To avoid damaging the paintwork when washing the car, first remove any dust, sand and grit. Insects, grease stains and fingerprints are best removed using a special cleaning agent for matt-painted surfaces.

Apply the product with a micro-fibre cloth. Do not apply too much pressure to avoid damaging the paintwork.

Rinse the car thoroughly with water. Then clean the car with a neutral shampoo and a soft micro-fibre cloth.

Rinse the car with lots of water again and then let it dry in the air. Remove any water stains with a chamois.

WARNING

- Follow the rules and recommendations of the car wash operator and do not wash the vehicle with the ignition switched on – risk of accident!
- To avoid cutting yourself on sharp metal parts, always wear suitable protection when ▶

cleaning the underside of the car or inside the wheel arches.
- After the car has been washed, the full braking effect can be delayed by moisture (or in winter by ice) on the discs and brake pads – risk of accident! The brakes should be dried by pressing the pedal to restore full braking effect.

CAUTION

- Before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, please make sure to retract the exterior mirrors to prevent damage. Always use the electrical power control to fold the mirrors in/out on vehicles with electrically retractable exterior mirrors*.
- Compare the track width of your vehicle with the distance between the guide rails for the wheels in the car wash. Otherwise there may be a risk of damaging the wheel rims and tyres.
- Compare the height and width of your vehicle with the available height and width when entering and driving through the car wash. Otherwise there may be a risk of damaging the vehicle.
- Please ensure that there is sufficient ground clearance in tunnel car washes ⇨ *page 99*. The vehicle could otherwise become lodged on the guide rails – risk of damage!
- Improper use of high-pressure cleaners can cause damage to the vehicle. Never point a water jet at electric/electronic components when cleaning the engine compartment. These could be seriously damaged by the pressure or by exposure to water and could fail as a result.
- Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight – otherwise the paint can be damaged.
- The decals* must not be washed with a high-pressure cleaner – risk of damage!
- Do not use insect sponges or abrasive household sponges, etc. – they can damage the surfaces.
- Matt-painted vehicle parts:
  - Do not use polish or wax – otherwise the paintwork can be damaged.
  - Never use car-wash programmes that include wax coatings. This could spoil the matt finish.
  - Do not attach any stickers or magnet labels to matt-painted parts as these could damage the paintwork when they are removed.

For the sake of the environment

The car should only be washed in special wash bays. This prevents oily water from getting into the public drains.

Notes on cleaning and care

For cleaning and care of individual components on the vehicle, please refer to the tables below. These are recommendations only. If you have special questions or certain components are not listed, please ask your qualified workshop. Please also refer to the notes ⇨ ⚠.

Cleaning the exterior

Component(s)	Situation	Remedy
Wiper blades	Dirt/deposits	Soft cloth with glass cleaner ⇨ *page 46*
Headlights/ rear lights	Dirt/deposits	Soft sponge with mild detergent[a)]
Sensors/ camera lenses	Dirt/deposits	Sensors: soft cloth with solvent-free cleaning agent Camera lenses: soft cloth with alcohol-free cleaning agent
	Snow/ice	Small brush/solvent-free de-icer spray
Wheels	Road salt	Water
	Brake dust	Acid-free cleaning agent

Component(s)	Situation	Remedy
Tailpipes	Road salt	Water; suitable stainless steel cleaning product if necessary
Trim/ mouldings	Dirt/deposits	Mild detergent[a]; suitable stainless steel cleaning product if necessary
Rubber seals	Dirt/deposits	Micro-fibre cloth with mild detergent[a]
	Frost	Protect the seals on the doors/bonnet/boot lid/flaps, etc. against freezing with suitable care products
Paintwork	Fuel overflow	Rinse with water without delay
	Surface rust	Surface rust remover, apply wax afterwards; contact your qualified workshop with any questions
	Corrosion	Have it removed by your qualified workshop
	Water no longer pearls off clean paintwork	Apply wax (at least twice a year)
	Paint has lost its shine, gloss cannot be restored by waxing	Treat with a suitable polish; finish with wax coating if polish does not contain wax compounds
	Residues, e.g. insects, bird droppings, resinous tree sap, road salt	Remove immediately using water and a micro-fibre cloth
	Fat-based stains, e.g. cosmetics or sun lotion	Remove immediately using mild detergent[a] and a soft cloth
Carbon parts	Dirt/deposits	Same treatment as painted parts ⇨ *page 293*
Decals	Dirt/deposits	Soft sponge with mild detergent[a]
	Residues, e.g. insects, bird droppings, resinous tree sap, road salt	Remove immediately using water and a micro-fibre cloth
	Fat-based stains, e.g. cosmetics or sun lotion	Remove immediately using mild detergent[a] and a soft cloth
	Fuel overflow	Remove immediately using a soft cloth and then with mild detergent[a] and a soft cloth

[a] Mild detergent: not more than two tablespoons of pH-neutral detergent to one litre of water

Cleaning the interior

Component(s)	Situation	Remedy
Windows	Dirt/deposits	Glass cleaning agent, then wipe dry
Trim/ mouldings	Dirt/deposits	Mild detergent[a]

Component(s)	Situation	Remedy
Plastic parts	Dirt/deposits	Damp cloth
	Heavier dirt/deposits	Mild detergent[a]; solvent-free plastic cleaning agent if necessary
Displays/instrument cluster	Dirt/deposits	Soft cloth with LCD cleaner; dust deposits in the lower area of the instrument cluster can be removed with a soft brush
Controls and displays	Dirt/deposits	Soft brush, then soft sponge with mild detergent[a]
Seat belts	Dirt/deposits	Mild detergent[a] (allow to dry before retracting)
Fabrics, leatherette, microfibre	Surface dirt	Vacuum cleaner
	Water-based stains, e.g. coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Absorbent cloth and mild detergent[a]
	Fat-based stains, e.g. oil, make-up, etc.	Apply mild detergent[a], dab off dissolved grease or colour particles with absorbent cloth; if necessary treat with water
	Special dirt/stains, e.g. ballpoint pen, nail varnish, dispersion paint, shoe cream, etc.	Special stain remover (dab off with absorbent fabric); if necessary treat with mild detergent[a]
Natural leather	Fresh dirt/stains	Cotton cloth with mild detergent[a]
	Water-based stains, e.g. coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth Dried stains: stain remover suitable for leather
	Fat-based stains, e.g. oil, make-up, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth and suitable stain remover for leather Dried stains: grease removal spray
	Special dirt/stains, e.g. ballpoint pen, nail varnish, dispersion paint, shoe cream, etc.	Stain remover suitable for leather
	Care of vehicle	Regularly apply leather-care cream with ultra-violet protection and impregnating compound; if necessary use special colour leather cream
Carbon parts	Dirt/deposits	Same treatment as plastic parts

a) Mild detergent: not more than two tablespoons of pH-neutral detergent to one litre of water

WARNING

Do not use water-repellent coatings on the windscreen. In bad visibility conditions such as light rain, low sun or when driving at night these coatings can cause increased dazzle, which is a serious safety hazard. Such coatings can also cause the wiper blades to judder.

CAUTION

– Headlights/rear lights ▶

- Never clean the headlights/rear lights with a dry cloth or sponge – risk of damage!
- Do not use cleaning agents containing alcohol. This could cause the glass to crack!

– **Wheels**

- Do not use paint polish or other abrasive agents.
- If the protective paint coating on the wheel rim is scratched or damaged by stone chips etc., the damaged area should be touched up without delay.

– **Camera lenses**

- Never remove snow and ice from the camera lens using warm or hot water – danger of cracks appearing on the lens.
- Never clean the camera lens with cleaning agents which are abrasive or contain alcohol – danger of scratches and cracks.

– **Windows and windscreen**

- Remove snow and ice from windows and exterior mirrors with a plastic scraper only. To avoid scratches, the scraper should only be pushed in one direction and not moved to and fro.
- Never use warm or hot water to remove snow and ice from windows and mirrors. This could cause the glass to crack!
- To avoid damaging the heating element, do not put stickers on the inner side of the rear window.

– **Ornamental trim/mouldings**

- Do not use chrome cleaning agents.

– **Rubber seals**

- Do not use solvent based cleaning products – risk of damage!

– **Paintwork**

- The vehicle must be free of dirt and dust before applying polish/wax – otherwise the paintwork may be damaged.
- Do not polish/wax the vehicle in direct sunlight – this can damage the paint!
- Do not attempt to polish out surface rust deposits – this can damage the paint!
- Remove cosmetics and sun lotion immediately – otherwise the paintwork may be damaged.

– **Decals**

- Do not clean the decals with a high-pressure cleaner as this could cause them to come loose.
- Do not use any powder-based or abrasive cleaning products – risk of damage!
- Do not polish decals – risk of damage!
- Do not use an ice scraper to remove snow and ice from windows to which decals have been applied – this could damage the decals.

– **Displays/instrument cluster**

- Before cleaning, ensure that the displays and the instrument cluster are switched off and cool.
- The displays/instrument cluster and the surrounding trim must not be cleaned with a dry cloth – this can scratch the surfaces!
- Do not let any liquid get between the instrument cluster and the trim – risk of damage!

– **Control consoles**

- Do not let any liquid get inside the control consoles – risk of damage!

– **Seat belts**

- Do not remove the seat belts to clean them.
- Do not use chemical cleaning agents, corrosive liquids, solvents or sharp instruments to clean the seat belts or their components – this can damage the belt webbing!
- If you find any damage to the belt webbing, the belt fittings, the belt retractor or the buckle, have the belt in question replaced by a qualified workshop.

– **Fabrics/leatherette/microfibre**

- Do not use leather care products, solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, stain removers, or any similar products on leatherette/microfibre fabrics.
- To avoid damage, stubborn stains should be removed by a qualified workshop.
- Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges or similar utensils. ▶

- Do not use the seat heating* to dry the seats.
- Sharp-edged objects on clothing, such as zip fasteners, rivets or belts, can also damage the surface of the fabric.
- Please make sure you close any velcro fasteners, e.g. on your clothing, as these could otherwise damage the upholstery.

– **Natural leather**

- Do not use solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, stain removers, or any similar products on leather fabrics.
- Sharp-edged objects on clothing, such as zip fasteners, rivets or belts, can also damage the surface of the fabric.
- Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges or similar utensils.
- Do not use the seat heating* to dry the seats.
- Avoid exposing leather to direct sunlight for long periods, otherwise it may tend to lose some of its colour. If the car is left for a prolonged period in the bright sun, it is best to cover the leather.

Note

- It is much easier to remove dead insects if the car has been waxed recently.
- Regular waxing can help protect against surface rust.
- The decals undergo an ageing process (e.g. becoming brittle) due to various environmental factors. Excessive exposure to sunlight may cause irregularities in the colouring of the decals.

Taking the vehicle out of service

If you wish to take your vehicle out of service for a long period of time, contact an Audi dealer or other qualified workshop. They can give you advice on the measures necessary, depending on where and for how long the vehicle is to be kept out of service.

Mobility

General information

- If your vehicle experiences technical problems, stop the car well away from moving traffic. If you have a flat tyre, you should park the car on a level surface. Be particularly careful if you are on a slope.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Switch the hazard warning lights on.
- Put on your high-visibility vest.
- Place the warning triangle in a visible location.
- Instruct all passengers to leave the car when it is safe to do so. They should wait in a safe place (for instance behind the roadside crash barrier).

WARNING

You should note the procedure described above for your own safety and that of other road users.

Equipment

High-visibility vest

Applies to: vehicles with high-visibility vest

The factory-supplied high-visibility vests are located in the storage compartment in the driver's door.

In some countries, the high-visibility vests may be stowed elsewhere.

Warning triangle

Applies to: vehicles with warning triangle

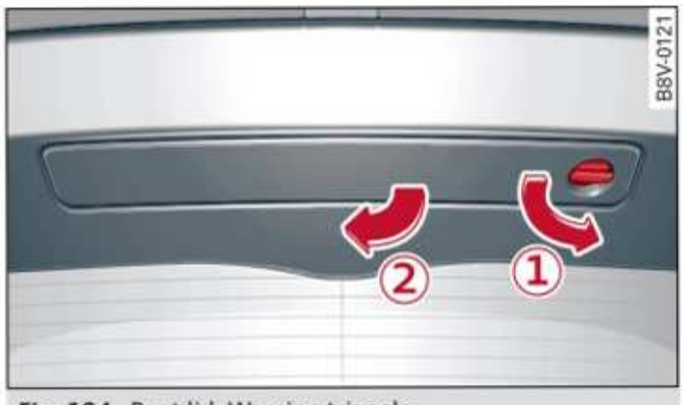


Fig. 194 Boot lid: Warning triangle

The factory-supplied warning triangle is attached to the inside of the boot lid.

- To open the cover, turn the catch ① and swivel the cover downwards ②.
- Pull the warning triangle out of the retainer.

The retainer on the boot lid is specifically designed to hold the warning triangle supplied as an Audi Genuine Accessory.

WARNING

Always stow the warning triangle safely in the plastic case after use and secure it in the holder. Otherwise it could be catapulted through the vehicle during driving and braking manoeuvres or in the event of an accident. This poses a risk of injury to occupants.

First-aid kit

Applies to: vehicles with first-aid kit



Fig. 195 Right rear door: Stowing the first-aid kit

Make sure that you know where the first-aid kit is stowed before beginning your journey.

Fire extinguisher

Applies to: vehicles with fire extinguisher

The factory-fitted fire extinguisher is accommodated in the front passenger's footwell.

In some countries, the fire extinguisher may be stowed elsewhere.

- Open the strap to remove the fire extinguisher.
- To secure the fire extinguisher, put it in the holder and fasten the strap.

Check how the fire extinguisher works before you need to use it. The instructions for use are shown on the fire extinguisher. ▶

WARNING

If the fire extinguisher is not secured properly it could be catapulted through the vehicle during driving and braking manoeuvres or in the event of an accident. This poses a risk of injury to occupants.

Note

– The fire extinguisher must be replaced with a new one after use or once it has reached its expiry date.
– The fire extinguisher must comply with legal requirements.

Tool kit / tyre repair kit / jack

Applies to: vehicles with tool kit, tyre repair kit and jack



Fig. 196 Luggage compartment: Floor panel

The tool kit, jack*, tyre repair kit* and compressor* are stored under the floor panel in the luggage compartment.

▸ Lift up the floor panel by the plastic handle until it is fixed in position behind the retaining tabs on the two side sections.

Applies to: vehicles with spare wheel/bass box

▸ Turn the plastic knob anti-clockwise.
▸ Remove the bass box* ⇨ *page 305*.
▸ Take out the spare wheel*.

Note

The jack* in your vehicle is maintenance-free.

Tyre repair kit

Preparations

Applies to: vehicles with tyre repair kit

▸ Please refer to the important safety notes ⇨ *page 299*.
▸ Apply the parking brake.
▸ Manual gearbox: Engage first gear.
▸ Automatic gearbox: Select transmission position P.
▸ Check whether a repair is possible using the tyre repair kit ⇨ *page 300*.

Using the tyre repair kit

Applies to: vehicles with tyre repair kit



Fig. 197 Tyres: Irreparable tyre damage

Repaired tyres are only suitable for temporary use. Replace the damaged tyre as quickly as possible ⇨ ⚠.

If the tyre was damaged by an object, such as a nail, do not remove it from the tyre.

The tyre repair kit can be used at outside temperatures down to – 20 °C.

The tyre repair kit must NOT be used:

– On cuts and punctures larger than 4 mm ① ⇨ *Fig. 197*.
– If the wheel rim has been damaged ②.
– if you have been driving with very low pressure or a completely flat tyre ③.

In this case, you should seek professional assistance.

WARNING

– Please note that the tyre repair kit is not suitable for use in every situation and ▸

should only be used as a temporary measure.
- Do not allow the sealant to come into contact with your eyes, skin or clothing.
- If you do come into contact with the sealant immediately rinse the eyes or skin affected with clean water.
- Make sure you do not breathe in the fumes.
- If you accidentally swallow tyre sealant, immediately rinse your mouth thoroughly and drink a large amount of water. Do not induce vomiting. Seek medical assistance immediately.
- Change clothing immediately if it becomes soiled with the tyre sealant.
- If any allergic reactions should occur, seek medical assistance immediately.
- Keep the sealant away from children.

For the sake of the environment

Batteries and electric/electronic equipment must be disposed of appropriately ⇨ *page 326, Information on waste disposal.*

Note

- If sealant should leak out, leave it to dry. When it has dried, you can pull it off like a piece of foil.
- Observe the expiry date stated on the sealing compound can. Have the sealing compound exchanged by a qualified workshop.
- Interference to the radio reception may occur when using the compressor.
- Always adhere to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

Tyre repairs

Applies to: vehicles with tyre repair kit



Fig. 198 Tyres: Filling the tyre

Important: The tyre repair kit must be at hand and ready for use ⇨ *page 300.*

Filling the tyre

- Shake the tyre sealant can well.
- Screw the enclosed filling hose onto the sealant can as far as it will go. This will automatically pierce the foil sealing the can.
- Take the valve cap off the tyre valve and use the enclosed valve insert tool to unscrew the valve insert ⇨ *Fig. 198*.
- Place the valve insert onto a clean surface.
- Remove the sealing plug from the filling hose and insert the hose into the tyre valve.
- Hold the tyre sealant can upside down and fill the complete contents into the tyre.
- Then disconnect the filling hose and screw the valve insert firmly back into the tyre valve.

Inflating the tyre

- Screw the compressor hose (from the tyre repair kit) onto the tyre valve and plug the connector into an electrical socket in the vehicle.
- Pump the tyre up to 2.0 to 2.5 bar and monitor the pressure shown on the pressure gauge.
- If the tyre pressure remains lower than the value specified above, remove the hose and drive 10 m forwards or backwards at a low speed so that the sealant can spread evenly in the tyre. Now pump the tyre up again ⇨ ⚠. ▶

WARNING

- Please observe the manufacturers' safety notes on the compressor and the instructions supplied with the tyre sealant can.
- If it was not possible to build up a tyre pressure of 2.0 bar within 10 minutes this means that the tyre is too badly damaged. Do not drive on.
- Seek professional assistance if the repair of a tyre puncture is not possible with the sealing compound.

Note

Do not use the compressor for longer than 10 minutes at a time, as it could overheat. When the compressor has cooled down, you can use it again.

After repairing a tyre

Applies to: vehicles with tyre repair kit

- Affix the sticker "max. 80 km/h", which is included in the tyre repair kit, to the dashboard where the driver will see it.
- After about 10 minutes, stop to check the tyre pressure.
- If tyre pressure is less than 1.3 bar, the tyre is too badly damaged. Do not drive on.

WARNING

After repairing a tyre please note the following points:

- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h.
- Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering.
- Vehicle handling could be impaired.
- If the tyre is too badly damaged, you should seek professional assistance.

For the sake of the environment

A used can of sealing compound can be returned to your qualified workshop for disposal.

Note

After repairing a tyre, remember to buy a new tyre sealant can at a qualified workshop.

Changing a wheel

Preparations

Certain preparations must be made before you change the wheel.

- Please refer to the important safety notes ⇨ *page 299*.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Manual gearbox: Engage first gear.
- Automatic gearbox: Select transmission position P.
- If you are towing a trailer, unhitch it from your vehicle.
- Take out the tools ⇨ *page 300* and spare wheel ⇨ *page 306*.
- Switch off the ignition.

WARNING

When using the jack*, block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed by placing suitable objects underneath both the front and rear of the wheel to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

Removing covers



Fig. 199 Wheel: Wheel bolts with caps

Applies to: vehicles with wheel bolt caps

- Slide the plastic clip (provided in the vehicle's tool kit) onto the wheel bolt cap until it engages ⇨ *Fig. 199*.
- Pull off the cap using the plastic clip.

Applies to: vehicles with wheel covers

- Pull off the wheel cover by hand.

Anti-theft wheel bolts

Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft wheel bolts

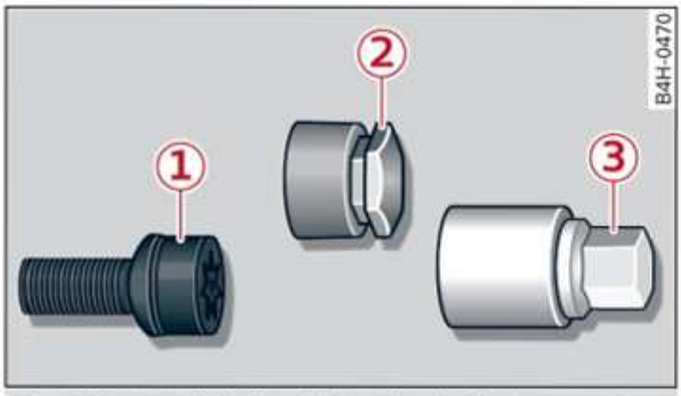


Fig. 200 Anti-theft wheel bolt with wheel bolt cap and adapter

To release the anti-theft wheel bolts, you need a special adapter (provided in the vehicle's tool kit).

- ▸ Remove the cap ②.
- ▸ Slide the adapter ③ all the way onto the anti-theft wheel bolt ①.
- ▸ Fit the box spanner* (provided in the vehicle's tool kit) as far as it will go over the adapter ③.
- ▸ Loosen the wheel bolt ⇨ *page 303*.

Note

Note the code number of the anti-theft wheel bolt and keep it in a safe place – not in your vehicle. If you need a replacement adapter, give the code number to your Audi dealer.

Loosening wheel bolts



Fig. 201 Wheel: Loosening the wheel bolts

- ▸ Fit the box spanner* (provided in the vehicle's tool kit) as far as it will go over the wheel bolt[1)].
- ▸ Turn the wheel bolt approx. one turn anti-clockwise. To apply the necessary torque, hold the box spanner* near the end. If the wheel bolt is very tight, you may be able to loosen it by pushing down the end of the spanner* carefully with your foot. Hold on to the car for support and take care not to slip.

WARNING

To avoid accidents, the wheel bolts should only be loosened slightly (one turn) before raising the vehicle with the jack*.

Raising the vehicle

Applies to: vehicles with jack

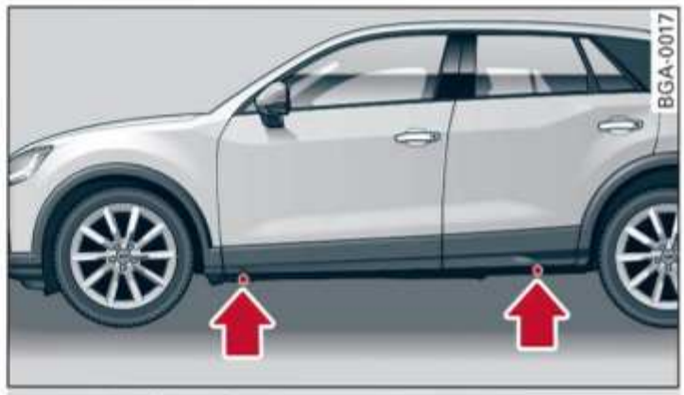


Fig. 202 Sills: markings

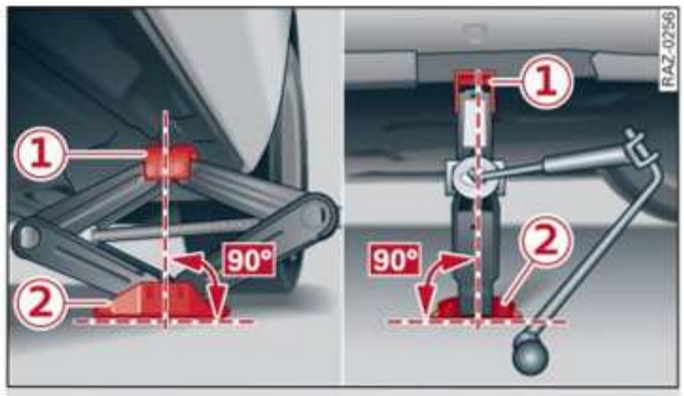


Fig. 203 Door sill: Applying the jack under the door sill

- ▸ Always provide a firm base for the jack on the ground (the jack can be found in the vehicle's tool kit). If necessary use a large, strong board or similar support. On a hard, slippery surface ▶

[1)] An adapter is required to unscrew or tighten the anti-theft wheel bolts* ⇨ *page 303*.

(such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping ⇨ ⚠.

- ▸ Locate the marking on the door sill closest to the wheel being changed ⇨ *Fig. 202*. The jacking point is located behind the marking on the door sill.
- ▸ Wind up the jack underneath the jacking point on the door sill until the claw of the jack ① completely surrounds the seam on your vehicle.
- ▸ Align the jack so that its claw ① fits around the seam and the base plate of the jack ② is flat on the ground. The base plate ② must be positioned vertically underneath the jacking point ①.
- ▸ Now fit the crank handle onto the jack by inserting it in the opening on the knob. Turn the crank handle clockwise or anti-clockwise to secure it in place.
- ▸ Raise the vehicle by winding the crank handle until the defective wheel is clear of the ground.

⚠ WARNING

- Ensure that no one is in the vehicle before you lift it – risk of injury!
- Make sure the jack is stable. If the ground underneath the jack is slippery or soft, the jack can slip or sink in – risk of injury!
- Use only the jack supplied with your vehicle to raise the vehicle. If you use a jack from a different vehicle, your vehicle may slip off the jack – risk of injury!
- Apply the jack only at the jacking points located behind the markings on the door sill and align it properly. Otherwise there is a risk of injury since the jack can slip off suddenly if it is not properly engaged.
- Do not use the jack provided with the vehicle to lift any other vehicles or loads – risk of injury!
- Never start the engine when the vehicle is on the jack – risk of accident!
- Do not work under the vehicle when it is on the jack – risk of injury!

! CAUTION

The vehicle must not be lifted up on its sills. Only apply the jack at the jacking points located behind the markings on the door sill. Otherwise your vehicle could be damaged.

Taking off / putting on the wheel

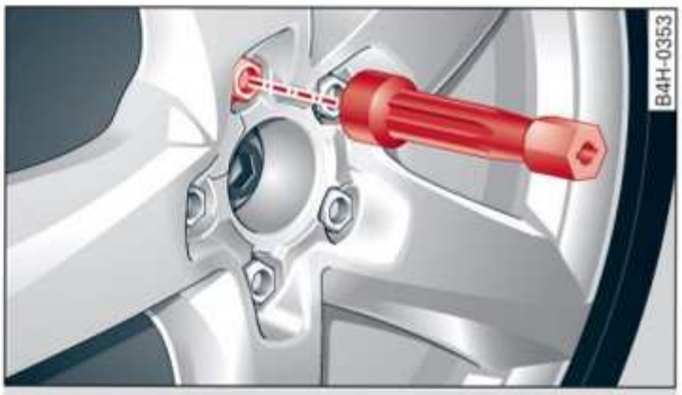


Fig. 204 Wheel: Hexagonal socket for turning wheel bolts

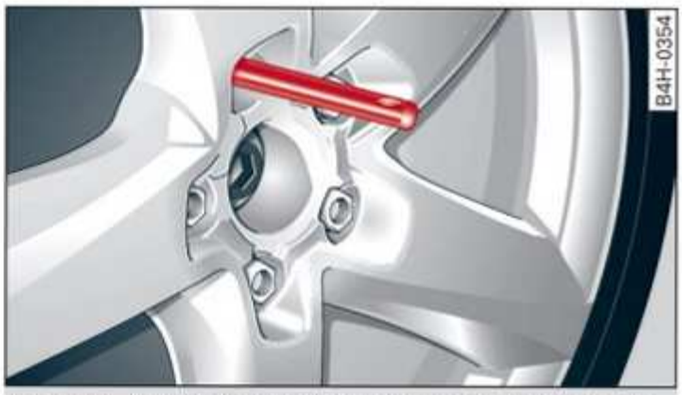


Fig. 205 Wheel: Mounting pin in wheel bolt hole nearest to the top

Taking off the wheel

- ▸ Using the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle (provided in the vehicle's tool kit), unscrew the top wheel bolt and place it on a clean surface ⇨ *Fig. 204*.
- ▸ Screw in the mounting pin (provided in the vehicle's tool kit) by hand in place of the wheel bolt ⇨ *Fig. 205*.
- ▸ Then unscrew the other wheel bolts.
- ▸ Take off the wheel ⇨ ①. The mounting pin stays where it is.

Putting on the wheel

When putting on a tyre with directional tread pattern, refer to ⇨ *page 305*.

- ▸ Put on the wheel, using the mounting pin to guide it into place ⇨ ①.
- ▸ Screw in the wheel bolts and tighten them lightly using the hexagonal socket.
- ▸ Then unscrew the mounting pin and tighten the remaining wheel bolt lightly. ▶

- Carefully lower the car with the jack*.
- Tighten the wheel bolts in diagonal sequence with the box spanner*.

The wheel bolts should be clean and turn easily. Before putting on the wheel, inspect the condition of the wheel and hub mounting surfaces. These surfaces must be clean before mounting the wheel.

WARNING

- Please observe the important safety information and notes on ⇨ *page 286*.
- Do not use the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle to tighten the wheel bolts. It is not possible to tighten the bolts to the required torque using the hexagonal socket – risk of accident!

CAUTION

When removing/fitting the wheel the rim may hit and damage the brake disc. For this reason, please take care and get a second person to assist you.

Tyres with directional tread pattern

A directional tread pattern can be identified by arrows on the sidewall that point in the direction of rotation. Always note the direction of rotation indicated when mounting the wheel. This is important so that these tyres can give maximum grip and avoid excessive noise, tread wear and aquaplaning.

To benefit from the advantages of tyres with this type of tread pattern, the defective tyre should be replaced and refitted as soon as possible so that all tyres again rotate in the correct direction.

After changing a wheel

- Fit the hubcap or wheel bolt caps back on, as required.
- Put the tools and jack back in their correct storage location.
- If the replaced wheel will not fit into the spare wheel well, stow it safely in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 66*.
- Check the tyre pressure of the fitted wheel as soon as possible.
- Adjust the tyre pressure and store it ⇨ *page 292*.
- The wheel bolts should be tightened to 140 Nm. Have this checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench. Until then, drive with caution.
- Have the flat tyre replaced as quickly as possible.

Spare wheel

Removing the bass box

Applies to: vehicles with bass box

You must remove the bass box before you can take out the spare wheel/temporary spare wheel**.

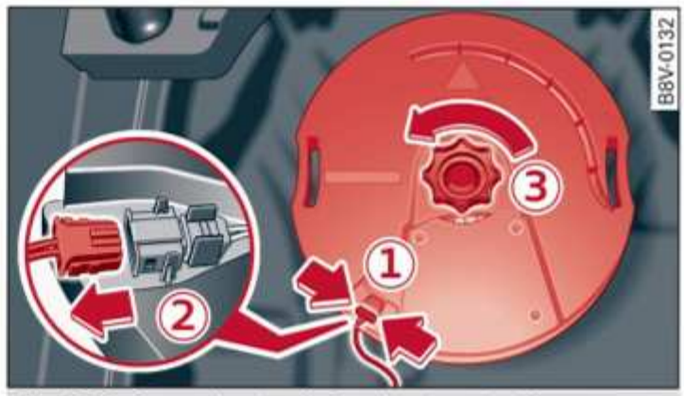


Fig. 206 Spare wheel well: Bass box (version 1)

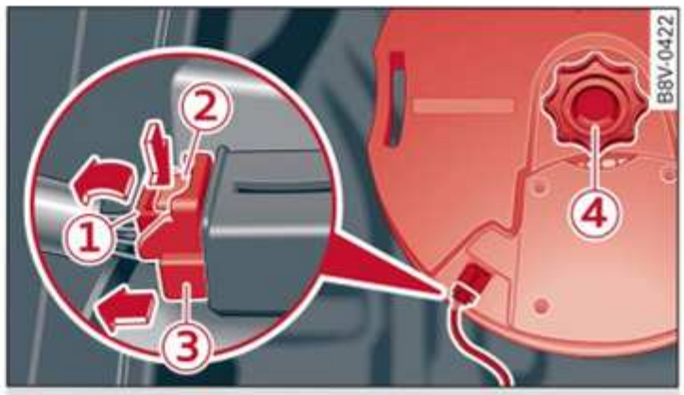


Fig. 207 Spare wheel well: Bass box (version 2)

Removing the bass box (version 1)

- Lift the floor panel ⇨ *page 300, Fig. 196*.
- Compress the retaining tabs ① ⇨ *Fig. 206* on the connector.
- Unplug the connector ② and move the disconnected cable clear to one side.
- Unscrew the knob ③.
- Carefully take out the bass box. ▶

Removing the bass box (version 2)

- Lift the floor panel ⇨ *page 300, Fig. 196*.
- Pull the catch ① ⇨ *Fig. 207* towards the cable.
- Press the retaining tab ② down.
- Unplug the connector ③ and move the disconnected cable clear to one side.
- Unscrew the knob ④.
- Carefully take out the bass box.

Installing the bass box

- Carefully place the bass box in the well of the rim. Make sure that the inscription "FRONT" on the bass box points to the front of the vehicle.
- Plug the connector back in again.
- Applies to vehicles with bass box (version 2): Push the catch ① back towards the bass box.
- Secure the bass box with the knob.
- Fold the floor panel back down.

Note

The bass box can be fitted even if there is no wheel in the spare wheel well.

Compact temporary spare wheel

Applies to: vehicles with compact temporary spare wheel

The compact temporary spare wheel is only intended for temporary use over short distances. After use, have it checked as soon as possible by a qualified workshop and, if necessary, replaced.

Please note the following restrictions when using the compact temporary spare wheel. The compact temporary spare wheel is designed specifically for this model. For this reason, do not use a spare wheel from a different type of vehicle.

The compact temporary spare wheel is stowed under the floor panel in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 300*.

The tyre pressure must be adjusted to the value listed on the tyre pressure sticker ⇨ *page 288, Fig. 193*.

Snow chains

For technical reasons, snow chains must not be used on the compact temporary spare wheel.

Should you have a puncture on one of the front wheels when using snow chains, fit the compact temporary spare wheel in place of one of the rear wheels. You can then attach the snow chains to the wheel taken from the rear and use this wheel to replace the punctured front wheel.

WARNING

- The tyre pressure must be checked as soon as possible after fitting the spare wheel – an incorrectly inflated tyre can increase the risk of accident.
- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h when the compact temporary spare wheel is fitted – higher speeds can cause an accident.
- Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering when the temporary spare wheel is fitted – risk of accident!
- Never use two or more compact spare tyres at the same time – risk of accident!
- No other type of tyre (normal summer or winter tyres) may be fitted on the compact temporary spare wheel.

Jump-starting

Preparations

You should not attempt the following steps unless you are in possession of the necessary equipment and have the skills required.

If the engine fails to start because of a discharged battery, you can use another vehicle to start the engine. Suitable jump leads are required.

Both vehicle batteries must be rated at 12 Volts. The capacity (Ah) of the booster battery should not be significantly lower than that of the discharged battery.

Jump leads

The jump leads must be heavy enough to carry the starter current. Refer to the details given by the manufacturer.

Only use jump leads with insulated battery clamps.

Positive cable – usually red. ▶

Negative cable – usually black.

WARNING

- When it is discharged the vehicle battery can freeze at temperatures around 0°C. A frozen vehicle battery must first be thawed out before connecting the jump leads – risk of explosion and chemical burns! After jump-starting the vehicle, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the vehicle battery checked.
- Note the safety warnings referring to working in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 272*.
- Incorrect handling of the jump leads may result in the vehicle battery exploding (risk of serious injury).
- Do not lean over the vehicle battery – risk of chemical burns!

CAUTION

If the jump leads are not connected correctly this can result in serious damage to the electrical system of the vehicle.

Note

- There must be no contact between the two vehicles as otherwise current could flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected. This would discharge the boosting battery.
- The discharged vehicle battery must be properly connected to the vehicle's electrical system.
- Switch off any electrical equipment you do not need.

Jump-starting the vehicle

The two jump leads must be connected in the correct sequence.

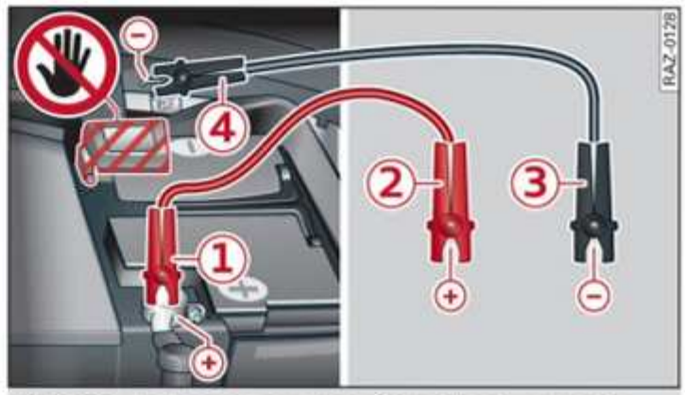


Fig. 208 Engine compartment: Connecting jump leads

The terminals for the jump leads are located in the engine compartment.

Please observe the general information on the vehicle battery ⇨ *page 281*.

Connecting the positive terminals with the positive lead (red)

▸ Open the cap on the positive terminal.

1. Connect one end of the positive lead (red) to the positive terminal ① on your vehicle's battery ⇨ *Fig. 208*.
2. Connect the other end of the positive lead (red) to the positive terminal ② on the power source.

Connecting the negative terminals with the negative lead (black)

3. Connect one end of the negative lead (black) to the negative terminal ③ on the power source.
4. Connect the other end of the negative lead (black) to the jump-start connection ④ on your vehicle.

Starting the engine

▸ Start the engine of the vehicle providing the electricity and let it run at idling speed.

▸ Now start the engine of your vehicle with the discharged battery.

▸ If the engine fails to start: do not operate the starter for longer than 10 seconds. Wait for about 30 seconds and try again. ▶

- ▸ Switch on the rear window heating on your vehicle (this will dissipate any voltage peaks which may occur when you disconnect the jump leads). The headlights must be switched off.
- ▸ With the engines running, disconnect the leads in the opposite sequence to how they were connected.
- ▸ Close the cap on the positive terminal.

WARNING

- The non-insulated parts of the battery clamps must not be allowed to touch. The jump lead attached to the positive battery terminal must not touch metal parts of the vehicle: this can cause short circuits.
- The sealing caps on the battery cells must not be opened.
- Keep sparks, flames and lit cigarettes away from vehicle batteries: the gases given off can cause an explosion.
- Position the jump leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment of the other vehicle.

CAUTION

- Do not use the negative battery terminal when jump-starting (this could cause a malfunction in the onboard electrical system).
- Please note that the above method of connecting the leads is intended for jump-starting your vehicle.

Note

Connect the jump leads so they have good metal-to-metal contact with the battery terminals.

Towing away

General information

You should not attempt the following steps unless you are in possession of the necessary equipment and have the skills required.

Towing requires some experience. Audi recommends contacting a towing service to have the vehicle taken away.

You should only have your broken-down vehicle towed away by another vehicle in exceptional circumstances. Inexperienced drivers should not attempt to tow another vehicle.

Notes on towing vehicles

When the engine is not running, the gearbox will not be adequately lubricated if the following speed/distance restrictions are not observed:

- The vehicle must not be towed faster than 50 km/h.
- The vehicle must not be towed further than 50 km.

Additional notes on towing by breakdown truck

If one of the axles has to be raised in order to tow the vehicle, please refer to the following table to determine the appropriate axle for your gearbox/drive combination. Do not wrap any kind of chain or rope around the brake lines.

	Front-wheel drive	Four-wheel drive
Manual gearbox	Front or rear axle	Front or rear axle
Automatic gearbox	Front axle	Front axle

Four-wheel drive: If the vehicle is to be towed with one of the axles raised, the ignition must be switched off; otherwise the drive train can be damaged.

Tow-bar / tow-rope

The vehicle can be towed with a tow-bar or tow-rope. Both drivers should be familiar with the ▸

technique required for towing, particularly if a tow-rope is used.

Do not pull too hard with the towing vehicle and take care to avoid jerking the tow-rope. When towing off-road, there is always a risk that the anchorage points may be overloaded.

It is easier and safer to tow the vehicle with a tow-bar. You should only use a tow-rope if you do not have a tow-bar. It is advisable to use a tow-rope made of elastic synthetic fibre or similarly elastic material.

Notes on tow-starting

Automatic gearbox: For technical reasons, your vehicle must not be tow-started.

Manual gearbox: As a general rule, tow-starting is not recommended. If the engine will not start, it is best to try starting it using the battery of another vehicle ⇨ *page 306* before attempting to tow-start the vehicle. If this is not possible, you can try to push-start or tow-start the vehicle ⇨ *page 310, Tow-starting*.

WARNING

- There is a high risk of accidents when towing, as the towed vehicle can easily be driven into the towing vehicle.
- There must not be anyone in the vehicle if it vehicle is taken away by a breakdown truck or a special car transporter – risk of accident!
- Never secure the tow-bar or tow-rope to any part of the vehicle's axles or suspension as these could be damaged and lead to accidents and severe injuries.

CAUTION

- If it is not possible to tow the vehicle as described above (e.g. due to a gearbox failure or if the vehicle has to be towed further than 50 km), it must be transported on a special car transporter or trailer.
- Towing a vehicle with the wrong axle raised can cause serious damage to the gearbox.

Note

- Automatic gearbox: It is not possible to move the selector lever out of transmission position P if the electrical power supply fails. Before the vehicle can be recovered/manoeuvred you must manually release the parking lock ⇨ *page 95*.
- Switch Audi pre sense* off ⇨ *page 140* if the vehicle is being loaded onto a car transporter, train or ferry, etc. or being towed away. This prevents the pre sense* system from taking action in an inappropriate situation.
- Please observe the relevant local regulations when towing away.

Towing away

Please observe the important safety warnings on ⇨ *page 308*.

Preparations

- Attach the tow-rope or the tow-bar only to the towing anchorages provided for this purpose ⇨ *page 310*, ⇨ *page 310*.
- Please ensure that the tow-rope is not twisted as it could otherwise unscrew the towline anchorage while the vehicle is being towed.
- The hazard warning lights of both vehicles must normally be switched on ⇨ *page 42*. However, observe any regulations to the contrary.

Towing vehicle (front)

- Ensure that the tow-rope is taut before you drive off.
- Manual gearbox: Engage the clutch very slowly when starting to move.
- Accelerate with particular care.
- Avoid unnecessary braking and manoeuvres.

Vehicle being towed (rear)

- Ensure that the ignition is switched on, the steering wheel is not locked, and that you can operate the turn signals, horn or windscreen wipers if necessary ⇨ ⚠.
- Otherwise you may not have the full benefit of the brake servo and power steering. You may need more strength to steer and brake the vehicle than you normally would. ▶

- Release the parking brake ⇨ *page 93*.
- Manual gearbox: Put the gear lever in neutral.
- Automatic gearbox: Select transmission position N.
- Ensure that the tow-rope remains taut at all times when towing.

WARNING

– If the vehicle has no electrical power, do NOT use a tow-bar or tow-rope to tow the vehicle.
– If the power supply should fail while the vehicle is being towed, stop towing immediately and seek professional assistance.

Tow-starting

Applies to: vehicles with manual gearbox

Please observe the important safety warnings on ⇨ *page 308*.

Important: Your vehicle must be fitted with a manual gearbox. If your vehicle has a petrol engine, it must not be towed further than 50 metres ⇨ (!).

- Attach the tow-rope or the tow-bar only to the towing anchorage provided for this purpose ⇨ *page 310*.
- Engage second or third gear before moving off.
- Press the clutch and hold the pedal down.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Once both vehicles are moving, release the clutch.
- As soon as the engine starts, press the clutch pedal and put the gear lever in neutral.

CAUTION

When tow-starting the vehicle, do not tow it further than 50 metres; otherwise the catalytic converter could be damaged.

Front towline anchorage

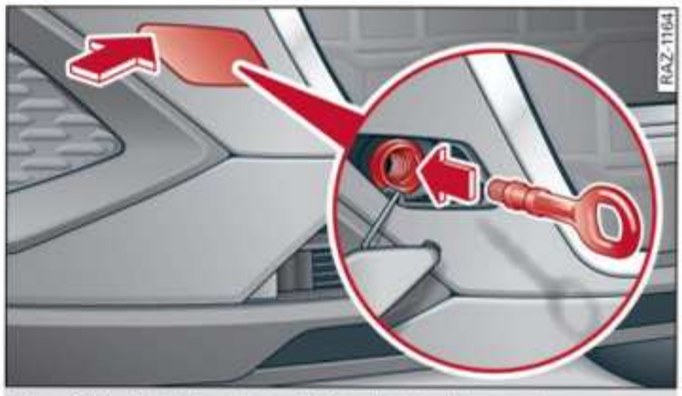


Fig. 209 Front bumper: Fitting the towline anchorage

The screw connection for the towline anchorage is located on the right side of the front bumper.

- Take the towline anchorage out of the vehicle's tool kit ⇨ *page 300*.
- Firmly press the cap inwards briefly ⇨ *Fig. 209*. The cap will be released from the bumper.
- Screw the towline anchorage as tightly as possible into the mounting. To do so, use a suitable tool that enables the towline anchorage to be screwed tightly all the way into the mounting.
- Put the towline anchorage back in the tool kit after use.

WARNING

If the towline anchorage is not screwed in as far as the stop, there is a risk of the screw connection shearing off during towing – risk of accident!

Note

On some models, the shape of the cap can vary.

Rear towline anchorage



Fig. 210 Rear bumper: Fitting the towline anchorage ▶

Vehicles with towline anchorage

Vehicles which do not have a factory-fitted towing bracket* have a connection for a towline anchorage on the right side of the rear bumper.

- ▸ Take the towline anchorage out of the vehicle's tool kit ⇨ *page 300*.
- ▸ Firmly press the cap inwards briefly ⇨ *Fig. 210*. The cap will be released from the bumper.
- ▸ Screw the towline anchorage as tightly as possible into the mounting. To do so, use a suitable tool that enables the towline anchorage to be screwed tightly all the way into the mounting.
- ▸ Put the towline anchorage back in the tool kit after use.

Vehicles with towing bracket*

- ▸ Fit the ball joint on the towing bracket ⇨ *page 105*.
- ▸ Attach the tow-bar or the tow-rope to the towing bracket.

Vehicles which have a factory-fitted towing bracket* do **not** have a screw connection at the rear for the towline anchorage.

WARNING

If the towline anchorage is not screwed in as far as the stop, there is a risk of the screw connection shearing off during towing – risk of accident!

CAUTION

To avoid damaging the towing bracket*, only use tow-bars with suitable attachments. If a tow-bar is not available, a tow-rope may be used.

Note

On some models, the shape of the cap can vary.

Fuses and bulbs

Fuses

Changing fuses



Fig. 211 Steering column area (LHD vehicles): cover, ① Glove box (RHD vehicles): cover ②

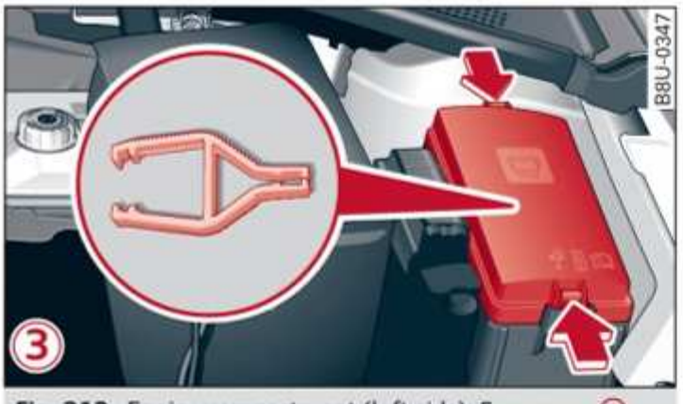


Fig. 212 Engine compartment (left side): Fuse cover ③

There are fuses fitted in various locations in your vehicle. The information below includes only those fuses that you can replace yourself. Should any other fuses need to be replaced, please contact a qualified workshop. Free fuse locations are not shown in the tables below.

To see whether a fuse has blown, check whether the metal strip has melted.

The fuses are located behind a cover in the steering column area (on LHD vehicles) ① or behind a cover in the glove box (on RHD vehicles) ②. Further fuses are located beneath a cover in the engine compartment (left side) ③.

- ▸ Switch off the ignition and all electrical equipment.
- ▸ Refer to the following tables to identify the fuse for the affected component.
- ▸ Remove the appropriate cover.
- ▸ Take the clip from inside the fuse cover in the engine compartment ③.
- ▸ Use the clip to pull out the fuse.
- ▸ Blown fuses should always be replaced with a fuse of the same ampere rating.
- ▸ Replace the cover again.

Colour coding for fuses

Colour	Rating in amperes
black	1
grey	2
purple	3
pink	4
light brown	5
brown	7.5
red (narrow)	10
light blue	15
yellow	20
white or transparent	25
light green	30
blue-green	35
orange	40
red (wide)	50

WARNING

Never attempt to repair a fuse or replace a blown fuse by fitting a fuse with a different ampere rating. This could damage the electrical system – risk of fire!

CAUTION

If a newly replaced fuse blows again after a short time, the electrical system must be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible. ▸

Note

Some of the items of equipment listed in the tables below are only fitted on certain models or are optional extras.

Fuses in vehicle interior

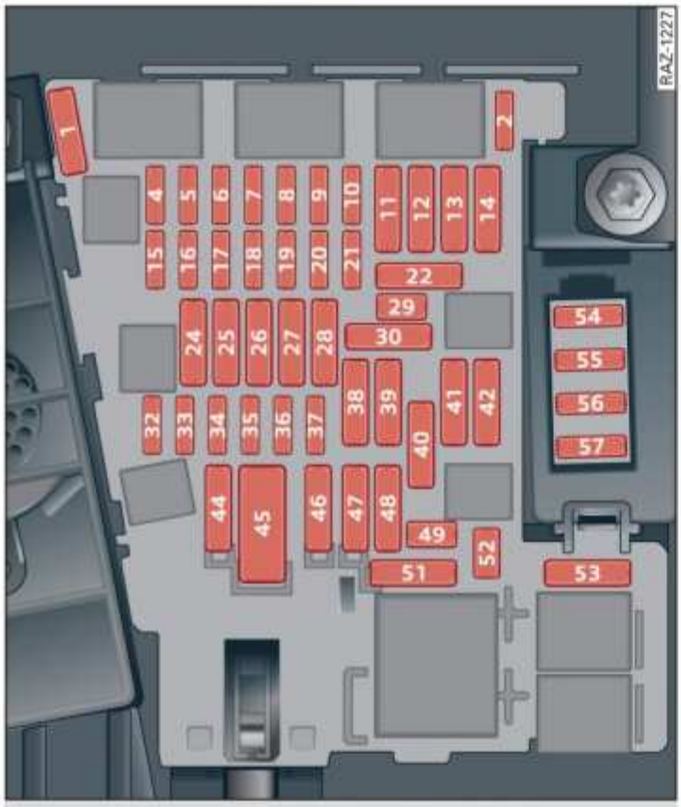


Fig. 213 Interior: Fuse layout

No.	Electrical equipment
1	Engine components, emission control system
2	Seat electronics (front), lumbar support
4	Infotainment system, anti-theft alarm system
5	Diagnostic interface
6	Gearbox selector lever, ignition key lock, electric drive system
7	Air conditioner/heater console, auxiliary heating, rear window heating, tyre pressure loss indicator
8	Parking brake switch, light switch, rain/light sensor, anti-theft alarm system, diagnostic connection, control unit for roof electronics, headlight range control, emergency call and communication control unit, fuel consumption monitoring
9	Steering column electronics, starter
10	Infotainment display, volume control
11	Control unit for vehicle electrical system
12	Infotainment system
13	Belt tensioners (driver's side)
14	Air conditioner blowers
15	Steering column lock, control unit for convenience access and start authorisation
16	Infotainment system, Audi phone box
17	Instrument cluster, emergency call and communication control unit
18	Reversing camera
20	Emission control, high-voltage charging system
21	Heating for steering wheel
24	Control unit for vehicle electrical system (right side)
25	Rear window regulators, door control unit (front left)
26	Seat heating
27	Control unit for vehicle electrical system
29	Control unit for vehicle electrical system, glove box lighting
30	High-voltage battery
32	Front camera, parking aid, adaptive cruise assist, lane change assist
33	Airbag, seat electronics (passenger's seat), control unit for roof electronics
34	Button for hold assist, parking brake, engine sound control unit, reversing light switch, pressure sensor for air conditioner, 12 V socket
35	Air quality sensor, interior mirror, diagnostic connection, dash panel switch module, headlight range control
36	Right headlight
37	Left headlight
39	Rear window regulators, door control unit (front right)
40	12 Volt socket
41	Belt tensioners (front passenger's side)

▶

No.	Electrical equipment
42	Control unit for vehicle electrical system, central locking system
44	Control unit for four-wheel drive
45	Seat adjustment (driver's seat)
47	Rear window wiper
48	Electric drive system
49	Clutch position sensor, engine start
52	Suspension control
53	Rear window heating
54	Towing bracket (left lights)
55	Trailer recognition control unit
56	Towing bracket (right lights)
57	Towing bracket (electrical socket)

The seats with electric adjustment* are protected by **circuit breakers** which trip if an overload occurs and reset automatically after a few seconds when the overload has been corrected.

Fuses in engine compartment

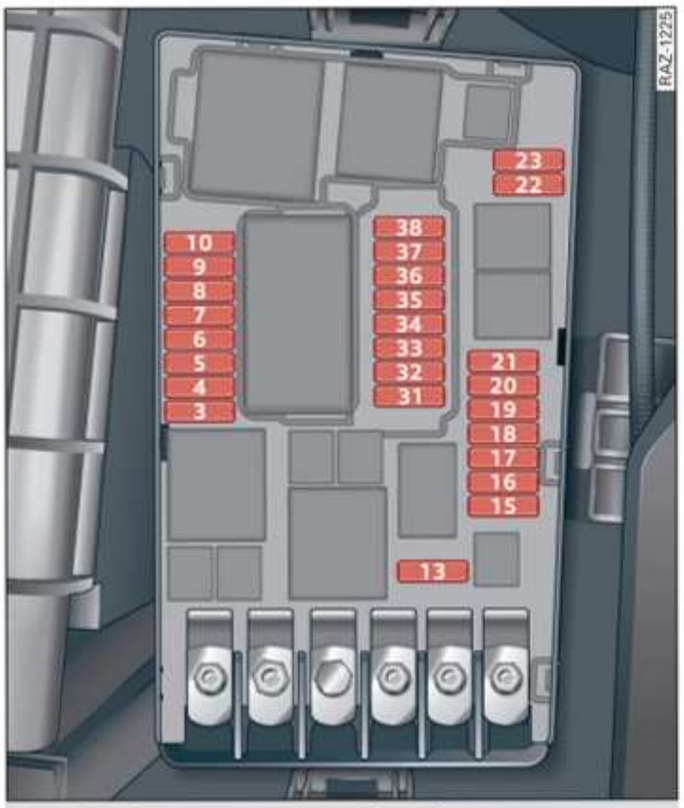


Fig. 214 Engine compartment: Fuse layout

No.	Electrical equipment
3	Drive system control unit
4	Engine components, engine cooling, oil temperature/level sensor
5	Exhaust gas temperature sender
6	Brake light sensor
7	Oil pressure regulation, engine cooling, emission control, electric drive system
8	Lambda probe
9	Power supply, engine cooling
10	Fuel pump
13	Gearbox oil pump
15	Horn
16	Engine components, high-voltage charging system, electric drive system
17	Electronic stabilisation control (ESC), drive system control unit, electric drive system
18	Battery monitoring, diagnostic interface
19	Windscreen wipers
21	Automatic gearbox
22	Drive system control unit
23	Engine start
31	Vacuum pump, injectors
33	Brake servo
34	Brake servo
35	Control unit for vehicle electrical system, A/C components, A/C control console, air quality sensor
36	Left headlight
37	Auxiliary heating
38	Right headlight

Bulbs

General information

LED lights are maintenance-free and cannot be changed. For repairs, please contact a qualified workshop.

You should only change bulbs yourself if you have the skills required. ▶

WARNING

- Bulbs are sensitive to pressure. The glass can break when you touch the bulb, causing injury.
- When changing bulbs, please take care not to injure yourself on sharp edges.

CAUTION

- Always switch off the ignition before carrying out any work on the electrical system – danger of short circuiting!
- Switch off the lights or parking lights before you change a bulb.
- Take good care when changing bulbs to avoid damaging any components.
- Make sure that the covers are correctly seated on the rear lights. This will ensure that water cannot enter the housings and cause the lights to malfunction.
- Do not touch the glass part of the bulb with your bare hands; use a cloth or paper towel instead. Otherwise, the fingerprints left on the glass will vaporise as a result of the heat generated by the bulb, be deposited on the reflector and impair its surface.
- Removing the rear light can lead to the paintwork or rear light becoming damaged. This is another reason why Audi recommends having the bulbs changed by a qualified workshop.
- Never use metal tools (e.g. a screwdriver) or sharp or pointed plastic tools to lever out the rear light – risk of damaging the paint.
- Make sure you have a soft cloth ready to place under the glass on the rear light, to avoid any scratches.

For the sake of the environment

A qualified workshop can advise you how to dispose of used bulbs in the proper manner.

Note

- Please check at regular intervals that all lighting (especially the exterior lighting) on your vehicle is functioning properly. This is not only in the interest of your own safety, but also in that of all other road users.
- Before changing a bulb, make sure you have the correct new bulb.

Bulbs at rear of vehicle

Applies to: vehicles with bulbs

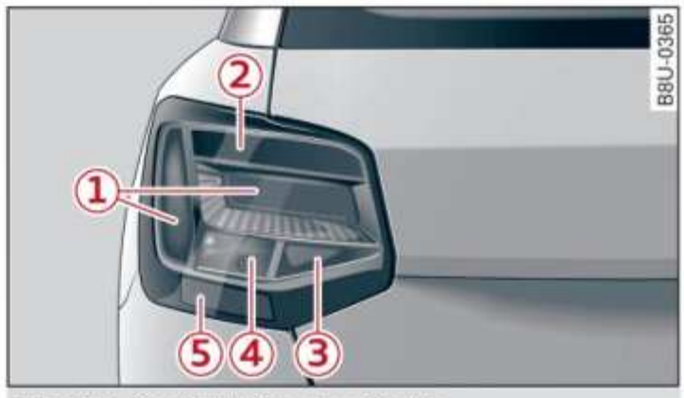


Fig. 215 Rear light: Overview of bulbs

You must only replace a bulb with a bulb of the same type. Information regarding e.g. the wattage can be found on the bulb.

The description for changing the bulb refers to the left rear light unit; the procedure for the right rear light unit is similar.

You can change the following bulbs yourself:

Bulb (12 V)	Version
① Tail light	W16W
② Brake light	P21W
③ Reversing light	W16W
④ Turn signals	PY21W
⑤ Rear fog light[a)]	W16W

a) On right or left, depending on country

Changing bulbs for rear lights

Removing and installing rear light

Applies to: vehicles with bulbs

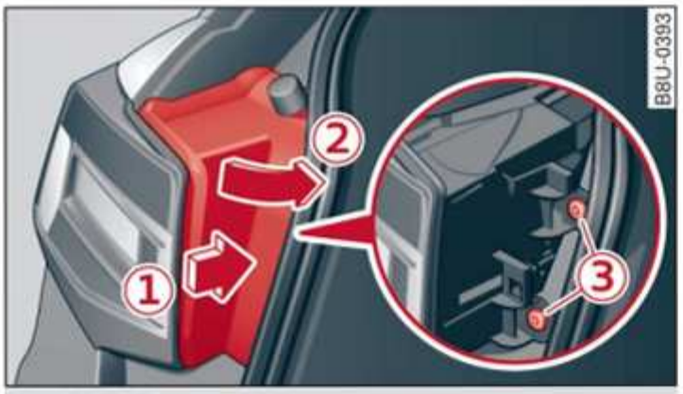


Fig. 216 Side panel: Removing cover



Fig. 217 Side panel: Removing rear light

- ▸ Check which of the bulbs is defective.
- ▸ Switch off the ignition and the lights.
- ▸ Open the boot lid.
- ▸ Take the screwdriver, the interchangeable Torx bit and the removal wedge out of the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 300*.
- ▸ To remove the cover, press it in the direction of the arrow ① and then swivel it away to the side with your hand ②.
- ▸ Remove the securing screws ③ using the Torx screwdriver.
- ▸ Carefully slide the removal wedge ④ into the gap between the body and rear light ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 315*.
- ▸ Gradually ease out the rear light by pulling alternately in direction of arrows ⑤ and ⑥.
- ▸ Unplug the electrical connector.
- ▸ Change the defective bulb ⇨ *page 316*.
- ▸ Re-install all the parts in the reverse sequence.
- ▸ Check whether the new bulb is working.

Changing a bulb

Applies to: vehicles with bulbs

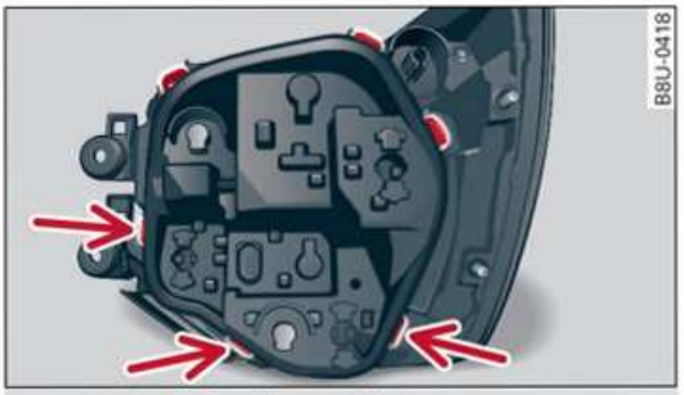


Fig. 218 Rear light: Clips on bulb carrier

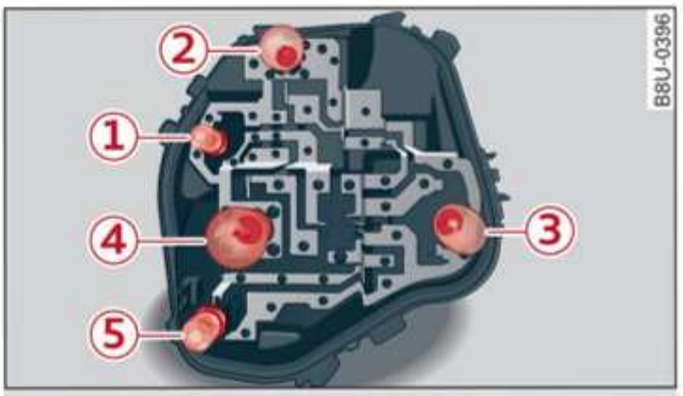


Fig. 219 Bulb carrier: Position of the bulbs

Removing

- ▸ Remove the clips securing the bulb carrier. Start with the three clips at the bottom ⇨ *Fig. 218*.
- ▸ Detach the bulb carrier ⇨ *Fig. 219*.
- ▸ Pull the defective bulb out of the plug-in holder or turn it to remove it from the bayonet holder.

Installing

- ▸ Insert the new bulb so that it is secure or turn it to secure it in the bayonet holder ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 315*.
- ▸ Attach the bulb carrier.

Position of bulbs

Position	Bulb function
①	Tail light
②	Brake light
③	Reversing light
④	Turn signal
⑤	Rear fog light

Data protection

Information on data protection

Information on who is responsible for data protection can be found on the MMI.

Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > right control button > **About Audi connect**.

Image recording

Monitoring of surroundings

Applies to: vehicles with monitoring of surroundings

Certain vehicle functions require the detection and evaluation of the path travelled by the vehicle. For this purpose, permanently installed cameras detect objects in the area in which the vehicle is moving (e.g. obstacles, barriers). The live images from the cameras are transmitted to the relevant control unit to do this.

The images from the camera are not recorded or stored. They are immediately transmitted to the relevant control unit in the vehicle for processing. The control unit analyses the current image from the camera using image evaluation software. This image evaluation software determines anonymous technical dimensions, such as the distance to objects. This control unit evaluates these technical dimensions and may allow the supporting systems to control the vehicle.

Note

The live images from the cameras and the anonymous technical dimensions are stored for a few seconds in the short-term memory. They do not allow any conclusions to be drawn on the identity of persons or vehicles.

Data recorders

Vehicle control units

Your vehicle is equipped with electronic control units for various vehicle systems such as the airbags. During normal driving, these vehicle control units store data which workshops require for diagnosis and repairs. This involves only certain data which are collected or stored for a very limited time when a control unit registers a system event. No sounds, conversations or images from the vehicle are stored.

The data may be related e.g. to the vehicle's speed, direction of travel and brake system, or to the behaviour of the restraint systems in the event of an accident. Reading out and downloading the stored data requires special devices that must be connected directly to the vehicle.

Onboard diagnostic system (OBD)

There is a diagnostic connection for reading out various control units and the event memory located in the driver's footwell. Information regarding the operation and status of the vehicle's electronic control units is stored in the event memory. The event memory should only be read out and erased by a qualified workshop.

WARNING

- Improper use of the connection socket for the onboard diagnostic system can lead to malfunctions which could result in accidents and serious injuries.
- Only have the data read out by a qualified workshop.

Event data recorder

Event data recorder

Your vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of the EDR is to make it possible to reconstruct how the systems in the vehicle behave in accident situations. To this end, the EDR stores relevant data (e.g. seat belt status, speed, airbag parameters, time of accident etc.) pertaining to a period of a few seconds before an accident. This only occurs in accident or near-accident situations.

These data can help to better understand the circumstances in which accidents and injury occur. Please note that data from your vehicle will only be stored in the event of an accident or a near-accident situation. No data are stored in normal driving conditions. Furthermore, no personal data on the occupants or the accident location are ▶

stored. It is possible, however, that third parties, e.g. law enforcement agencies, may correlate the stored data with personal data as part of an accident investigation.

Reading out data from the EDR memory requires special devices and access to the vehicle or the EDR. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third parties such as law enforcement agencies can also read out and analyse the stored data, provided that they have access to the vehicle or the EDR. Audi will not access the recorder remotely.

Assist system monitor

This vehicle is equipped with an assist system monitor (ASM) which collects data not stored by the EDR in the event of an accident. The main purpose of the ASM is to make it possible to reconstruct the role and behaviour of driver assist systems in accident situations. In addition to the data stored by the EDR, the ASM stores data related to the driver assist systems from a period of a few seconds before an accident or near-accident situation. The data recorded by the ASM will depend on the vehicle's equipment and may comprise information such as: status information from the driver assist systems (e.g. switched on/off, system events etc.), regulating input (e.g. from ESC, ABS, Audi pre sense etc.) and driver assist system settings (e.g. speed settings).

Reading out data from the ASM memory requires special devices and access to the vehicle or the ASM. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third parties such as law enforcement agencies can also read out and analyse the stored data, provided that they have access to the vehicle or the ASM.

Use of data

Audi can read out or provide third parties with the information stored in the data recorders or other similar data in the following circumstances in particular:

- If the vehicle keeper or lessee gives their permission; or
- If the police have made an official request; or
- If ordered to do so by a court of law or government agency.

Audi may, insofar as this is legally permitted, also use the data for analysis with respect to vehicle operation and safety performance, or may provide the data to third parties for research purposes.

Information transmitted

Privacy settings

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > right control button > **Privacy**.

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

Allow data transmission

- Select and confirm **Activate data connection**. The data module for the use of all Audi connect services will be activated.

Restrict data transmission

- Select and confirm **Activate data protection**. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the data connection will be restricted or deactivated and the majority of the Audi connect services will not be available.

CAUTION

Please note that it is your responsibility to take precautions regarding data protection, anti-virus protection and protection against loss of data on mobile devices used to connect to the Internet via the Wi-Fi hotspot.

Note

- The following interfaces, if fitted, are not affected by this setting: Bluetooth, Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE), Wi-Fi connection, Audi smartphone interface (ASI), Near Field Communication (NFC), charging communication (high-voltage system), Electronic Toll Collect (ETC) and onboard diagnostic system (OBD).

– If data transmission is restricted, this has the following effects on the data transmitted by the Audi connect services and the emergency call function, if fitted.
  – The emergency call function remains available in its entirety and data will still be transmitted.
  – No data will be transmitted if an online roadside assistance call is activated; however a telephone call will be placed.
  – If the geofencing alert, speed alert and valet alert services have been activated by the key user, these remain available without restrictions and data continue to be transmitted.

Audi connect

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

Audi collects, processes, transmits and uses the personal data you provide in accordance with legal requirements to ensure that the individual Audi connect infotainment services are provided and function properly. You can use our myAudi platform, for example, to activate further Audi connect infotainment services and to transfer data to and from your vehicle. You must register once in order to be able to connect your vehicle to the platform. Audi collects, processes, transmits and uses the personal data you must provide for the registration as is necessary to ensure that Audi can provide the services and that you can use them. Using the myAudi platform and your mobile phone, you can transmit data to your vehicle for the functions of your Audi connect infotainment services and allow certain vehicle data to be transmitted from your vehicle.

If you activate certain information services included in your Audi connect infotainment portfolio, you can use the corresponding functions directly in your vehicle after entering your personal identification data (for example for access to social networks). In this case Audi passes on your identification data to the corresponding service provider. You can then access your personal content via a secure communication channel. This content is displayed and can be used in the vehicle. Audi will not store your personal content. The necessary connection data are processed and used in accordance with legal requirements to ensure that the services are provided and function properly.

Further information can be found on the MMI and on the Internet at your regional Audi site, which can be reached via www.audi.com.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > right control button > **About Audi connect**.

81B012720AJ

Accessories and modifications to the vehicle

Maintenance, repairs and technical changes

Please read the safety information ⇨ *page 272, General information* and ⇨ *page 303, Raising the vehicle*.

General information

The increasing complexity of vehicle technology and the applicable safety and environmental regulations mean that your options for performing repairs and making adjustments to your vehicle yourself are very limited.

Proof of servicing may be a condition for a claim within the guarantee/warranty period to remain valid.

Have work on your vehicle performed by a qualified workshop. This will help ensure that the functions, performance and safety of your vehicle are not impaired.

Maintenance and repairs

Your vehicle was designed to require as little maintenance as possible. However, a certain amount of regular maintenance work is necessary to ensure that your vehicle remains safe, cost-efficient and reliable. Please contact a qualified workshop for precise information on vehicle maintenance.

Certain maintenance work should also be performed between the specified intervals in severe operating conditions, such as extremely low temperatures or in areas with a high dust concentration.

Special tools, measurement instruments and other workshop equipment available to qualified workshop staff are usually required for maintenance work or repairs. These guarantee that your vehicle and all its systems will function properly and be both reliable and safe. If work is not performed correctly, this may affect the operation and reliability of your vehicle and may even invalidate any claims you may wish to make under the guarantee/warranty.

Technical changes

Unauthorised modifications to the electronic components, software, wiring or data transfer in the vehicle may cause malfunctions. Due to the way the electronic components are linked together in networks, systems which are not directly affected may also be impaired by the faults. This can seriously impair your vehicle's safety and lead to excessive wear of its components.

Depending on the country, this may also invalidate the vehicle's type approval. Qualified workshops have full information on the manufacturer-approved repair methods. They can also give advice regarding official regulations for the vehicle.

Some convenience features, such as one-touch signalling, single door unlocking and display messages can be reprogrammed using special workshop equipment. If any functions are reprogrammed, the information in this Owner's Manual may no longer be relevant for the functions that have been changed. Audi recommends having the reprogramming carried out and approved by a qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

- There is a risk of accident if maintenance work, repairs, painting or technical changes to the vehicle are not performed properly The functioning of the airbags, the driver assist systems and the vehicle may be impaired. Have work on the vehicle performed by a qualified workshop.
- The is a risk of accident if work on the vehicle is not performed properly. Serious injuries may occur as a result. Have work on the vehicle performed by a qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

A vehicle's engine compartment is a potentially hazardous area and working there can lead to serious injuries.

- Always exercise extreme caution when working in the engine compartment. Always keep to the generally accepted safety procedures and use your common sense. Never put yourself at risk of injury. ▶

– Do not perform any work in the engine compartment if you do not fully understand the procedure or if you do not have suitable information, tools and equipment.
– If you are not sure how to proceed, have the work performed by a qualified workshop. Work which is not performed properly can cause serious injuries.

CAUTION

– If maintenance work, repairs, painting or technical changes to the vehicle (e.g. installation of additional parts) are not performed properly, this can cause damage to the vehicle (e.g. corrosion).
– If emergency repairs have been performed, have your vehicle checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
– Audi cannot assume any liability for damage to the vehicle caused due to these conditions not being adhered to.

For the sake of the environment

– You can play your part in looking after the environment through regular vehicle maintenance.
– Technical changes to the vehicle can have a negative effect on both the fuel consumption and the emissions.

Note

Because of your vehicle's aluminium body concept, all servicing, repairs or other work on the car body must be carried out by an Audi workshop or a qualified workshop working to the specifications of the Audi factory. This ensures that the necessary repairs or servicing are performed properly and that only Audi Genuine Parts are installed on your vehicle. Serious damage (e.g. corrosion damage) can be caused to your vehicle if non-genuine replacement parts or accessories are used or if repairs are not performed properly.

Accessories and replacement parts

Take advice from a qualified workshop before purchasing accessories and replacement parts. Audi recommends that you have all work performed by an Audi workshop using Audi Genuine Parts and that you use Audi Genuine Accessories.

Audi cannot judge the reliability and suitability of non-genuine products or assume responsibility for them, even if they have been approved by an officially recognised technical testing authority or by the relevant authorities.

Any **retrofitted equipment** which has a direct effect on the control of the vehicle must bear the approval symbols for the respective countries (e.g. **e** mark in the European Union) and must be approved for use in your vehicle. A cruise control system is an example of this type of equipment.

Any **additional electrical equipment** which is connected, but which does not serve to control the vehicle itself, must bear the declarations of conformity for the respective countries (e.g. the CE symbol in the European Union). Examples of such equipment include refrigerator boxes, computers or ventilator fans.

Transmitters

An external aerial installed properly is required in order to operate radio transmitters inside the vehicle. If this is not the case, the increased electromagnetic radiation can cause malfunctions in the vehicle. Please observe the relevant local regulations and follow the instructions from the radio equipment manufacturer.

Qualified workshops will be able to inform you about options for installing and operating radio transmitters.

WARNING

– The use of non-approved accessories or the wrong replacement parts can cause damage to the vehicle – risk of accident!
– Never secure accessories (such as telephone brackets or cup holders) on airbag cover panels or in the areas around the airbags; ▶

this could cause injury if the airbag is triggered.

– When replacing a factory-fitted front number plate holder, the new holder must be of the same size and material as the original one. On vehicles without a factory-fitted front number plate holder, a holder must not be fitted in the front area, as this can impair the function of the vehicle's systems.

Technical data

Identification data

Vehicle data sticker

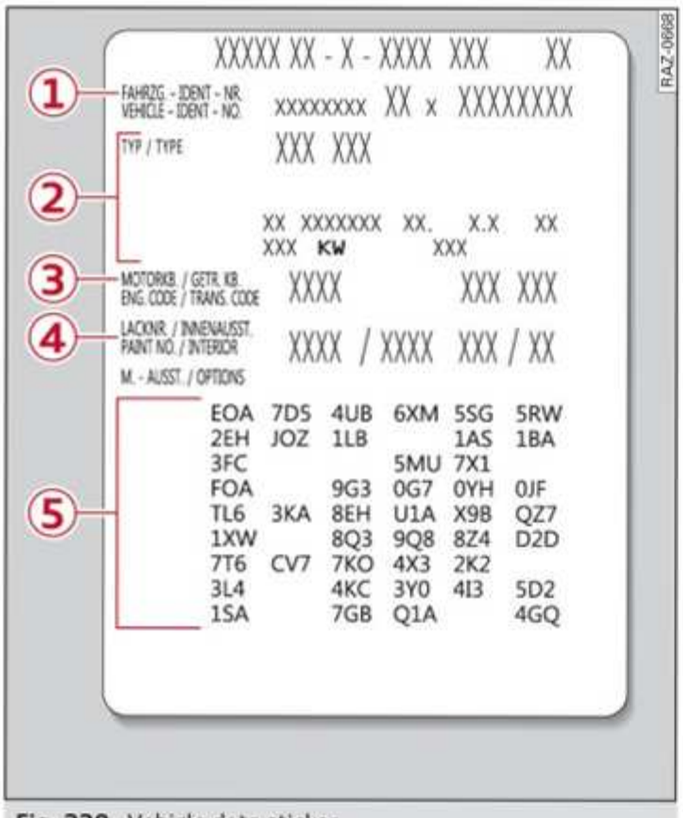


Fig. 220 Vehicle data sticker

The vehicle data sticker is located on the inside cover of the printed Owner's Manual.

The sticker lists the following data, depending on the model:

① Vehicle identification number (chassis number)
② Vehicle type / engine capacity / engine power / gearbox type
③ Engine and gearbox code
④ Paint No. / Interior equipment No.
⑤ Optional equipment codes

Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (chassis number) can be found at the following locations, depending on your country:

– Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Car information**.
– On the vehicle data sticker
– At the front of the vehicle underneath the windscreen*
– Stamped on the right side of the engine compartment

Type plate

Vehicles have a type plate in certain countries. The type plate is bonded onto the right door frame.

Explanation of technical data

The figures for some markets may vary due to special equipment as well as different export versions and test methods.

Please note that the details listed in the vehicle's registration documents can be taken as correct.

Note

In cases where technical data are not listed, the figures were not available at time of publication.

Vehicle data

Dimensions

	Length (mm)	Width (mm)	Width across mirrors (mm)	Height, unladen (mm)
Q2	4208 – 4216	1794 – 1802	2009	1503 – 1548
SQ2	4208 – 4216	1794 – 1802	2009	1503 – 1548

Capacities

	Approximate capacities
Fuel tank	50 / 55[a] ltr.
AdBlue tank[b]	11 / 12 / 13[a] ltr.
Windscreen washer system	3.1 / 3.2[a] ltr.
Windscreen/headlight washer system	3.2 / 5.2[a] ltr.

a) The values depend on the country and the vehicle's equipment.

b) The capacity may be smaller for technical reasons when filling via a filler nozzle. The capacity may be smaller for technical reasons in cold ambient conditions.

Weights

Roof load

Applies to: vehicles with roof carrier mountings

The maximum permissible roof load is 60 kg.

Kerb weight, gross vehicle weight, axle loads

The vehicle's kerb weight including the driver (75 kg) was calculated in accordance with EU regulation 1230/2012. Optional equipment may increase the kerb weight, in which case the permitted loading capacity is reduced accordingly.

The values in the tables below are given in kg.

	Kerb weight (unladen weight)	Gross vehicle weight	Maximum front axle weight	Maximum rear axle weight
Q2 30 TFSI	1325	1815	950	925
Q2 30 TDI	1455 / 1440[a]	1945 / 1940[a]	1070 / 1055[a]	965
Q2 35 TFSI	1380 / 1365 – 1370[a]	1870 / 1855 – 1860[a]	1000 / 985 – 990[a]	945 – 960 / 945 – 960[a]
Q2 35 TDI	1480	1970	1090	965
Q2 35 TDI quattro	1570	2060	1105	1030
Q2 40 TFSI quattro	1535	2045	1090	1030
SQ2 TFSI quattro	1610	2060	1100	1045

a) The value before the stroke applies to the automatic gearbox; the value after the stroke applies to the manual gearbox.

Trailer weights

The vertical load exerted by the trailer draw bar on the ball joint of the towing bracket must not exceed 75 kg.

The values in the tables below are given in kg.

	Maximum rear axle weight when towing	Trailer		
		Without brakes	With brakes on gradient up to 8%	With brakes on gradient up to 12%
Q2 30 TFSI	995	660	1500	1300
Q2 30 TDI	1035	720	1700	1500

	Maximum rear axle weight when towing	Trailer		
		Without brakes	With brakes on gradient up to 8%	With brakes on gradient up to 12%
Q2 35 TFSI	1015 – 1030 / 1015 – 1030[a)]	690 / 680[a)]	1700	1500
Q2 35 TDI	1035	740	1800	1600
Q2 35 TDI quattro	1110	750	1800	1800
Q2 40 TFSI quattro	1110	750	1700	1500
SQ2 TFSI quattro	1125	750	1600	1400

a) The value before the stroke applies to the automatic gearbox; the value after the stroke applies to the manual gearbox.

Engine data

	Max. power output (kW at rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Maximum speed (km/h)
Q2 30 TFSI	81 / 5500	200 / 2000 – 3000	197
Q2 30 TDI	85 / [3250; 2750[a)]] – 4250	[250; 300[a)]] / [1500; 1600[a)]] – [3250; 2500[a)]]	201 / 202[b)]
Q2 35 TFSI	110 / 5000 – 6000	250 / 1500 – 3500	218
Q2 35 TDI	110 / 3000 – 4200	360 / 1600 – 2750	216
Q2 35 TDI quattro	110 / 3000 – 4200	360 / 1600 – 2750	210
Q2 40 TFSI quattro	140 / 4200 – 6000	320 / 1500 – 4100	231
SQ2 TFSI quattro	221 / 5300 – 6500	400 / 2000 – 5200	250

a) The values depend on the country and the vehicle's equipment.

b) The value before the stroke applies to the automatic gearbox; the value after the stroke applies to the manual gearbox.

Other information

Driving school mode

Applies to: vehicles with driving school mode

When this function is activated, you can show the vehicle speed and the direction indicated by the turn signals on the infotainment display.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Driver assist** > **Driving school mode**.

When the menu is switched (e.g. to radio), the vehicle speed and indicated direction will appear again on the display after five seconds.

Note

The value indicated in the speedometer is the relevant speed.

Trademarks and licences

This Owner's Manual does not use any symbols to indicate trademarks or registered trademarks, such as ® or ™. However, the absence of such symbols does not constitute a waiver of the rights concerning any proprietary names.

Apple, iPhone, iPod, iPod touch, iPod shuffle, Apple CarPlay and Lightning are trademarks of Apple Inc.

All other product and manufacturer names used may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Information according to EU chemicals regulation REACH

On the basis of the European chemicals regulation REACH, Audi provides information on materials which may be present in your vehicle.

You can call up this information on the Internet using your vehicle identification number ⇨ *page 323*:

www.audi.de/reach

Information on waste disposal

General information

Please observe the relevant country-specific regulations on waste disposal and the information below. Further information on disposal, return and recycling can be obtained from Audi dealers, qualified workshops and your regional Audi sales centre's website via www.audi.com.

Batteries

As the end user, it is your responsibility to dispose of batteries correctly. The crossed-out bin indicates your legal obligation to dispose of waste correctly. This means that you are obliged to collect and dispose of batteries separately from normal domestic waste. Special care is required when handling batteries containing lithium (Li). For example these batteries must not be exposed to excessive heat and must not be damaged. Batteries containing heavy metals are marked with the chemical symbols for Cd (cadmium), Hg (mercury) and Pb (lead) in cases where these heavy metals are present in concentrations above the respective limits. The battery contains materials which can damage the health of humans and animals and can accumulate in the environment. To prevent this, it is essential to ensure separate collection and proper return.

Depending on the country, batteries may be returned free-of-charge to your Audi dealer or qualified workshop. Commercially available batteries can also be returned to the retailer.

Electric/electronic equipment

Electric/electronic equipment is identified by the symbol with the crossed-out bin . Electric/electronic equipment with this symbol must be collected and disposed of separately from normal domestic waste, according to the applicable legal regulations. Batteries contained in the equipment and separate rechargeable batteries must be removed first and disposed of separately in the appropriate manner. ▶

Depending on your country, electric/electronic equipment can be returned to local waste disposal agencies or public collection points. In addition, electric/electronic equipment can also be returned to the distributor/retailer via shipping services. The corresponding dealers/retailers can provide you with the exact conditions of return.

Note

It is your own responsibility to delete any personal data stored on the devices.

Vehicle

For information on the proper disposal of your vehicle, please visit your national/regional Audi sales organisation via www.audi.com.

All legal requirements must be complied with when scrapping the entire vehicle or specific individual components such as airbag units, batteries for remote controls, and belt tensioners. These components may contain perchlorates. Audi recommends contacting a qualified workshop.

Recycling information for France



Fig. 221 Recycling information for Owner's Manual



Fig. 222 Recycling information for electrical devices: vehicle keys, Audi connect key card, remote control for auxiliary heating/ventilation

Radio equipment

Information on UK Radio Equipment Regulations 2017

Simplified UK declaration of conformity

Depending on its equipment, your vehicle has different types of radio equipment. The manufacturers of the radio equipment declare that the equipment corresponds to the UK Radio Equipment Regulations 2017 insofar as this is required by law. The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available on the Internet at the following address:

www.audi.com/generalinfo

UK CA

Information on EU Directive 2014/53/EU

Simplified EU declaration of conformity

Depending on its equipment, your vehicle has different types of radio equipment. The manufacturers of the radio equipment declare that the equipment corresponds to the Directive 2014/53/EU insofar as this is required by law.

The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available online at the following address:

www.audi.com/generalinfo CE

Frequency table

Radio service	Frequency band	Max. radio frequency power	Supplier
Audi phone box	LTE/NR FDD band 20: 832 – 862 MHz	23dBm	37
	LTE/NR FDD band 8: 880 – 915 MHz	23dBm	37
	LTE/NR FDD band 3: 1710 – 1785 MHz	23dBm	37
	LTE/NR FDD band 1: 1920 – 1980 MHz	23dBm	37
	NR TDD band 78: 3300 – 3800 MHz	23dBm	37
	WCDMA FDDI: 1920 MHz - 1980 MHz	24 dBm	37
	GSM 1800: 1710 MHz - 1785 MHz	30 dBm	37
	LTE FDD7: 2500 MHz - 2570 MHz	23 dBm	37
	GSM 900: 880 MHz - 915 MHz	33 dBm	37
	LTE FDD 800: 832 MHz - 862 MHz	23 dBm	37
Bluetooth	2402 MHz - 2480 MHz	10 dBm	12
Connectivity box/cGW/OCU	GSM 900: 880 MHz - 915 MHz	33 dBm	29
	LTE FDD B20: 832 MHz - 862 MHz	23 dBm	29
	LTE FDD B28: 703 MHz - 748 MHz	23 dBm	29
	GSM 1800: 1710 MHz - 1785 MHz	30 dBm	29
	UMTS FDD I: 1920 MHz - 1980 MHz	24 dBm	29
	UMTS FDD III: 1710 MHz - 1785 MHz	24 dBm	29
	UMTS FDD VIII: 880 MHz - 915 MHz	24 dBm	29
	LTE FDD B1: 1920 MHz - 1980 MHz	23 dBm	29
	LTE FDD B3: 1710 MHz - 1785 MHz	23 dBm	29
	LTE FDD B7: 2500 MHz - 2570 MHz	23 dBm	29
	LTE FDD B8: 880 MHz - 915 MHz	23 dBm	29
Remote control for auxiliary heating	868.7 MHz - 869.2 MHz	25 mW ERP	26
Front radar	76-77 GHz	35 dBm	3
Remote control key	433.05 MHz - 434.79 MHz	<10 mW E.R.P	13
	125 kHz	<22.7 dBµA/m @ 10m	13
Rear corner radar	76-77 GHz	24.2 dBm (MRR1Rear)	35

Radio service	Frequency band	Max. radio frequency power	Supplier
Interface for entry and start system	125 kHz	<22.7 dBµA/m @ 10m	13
Instrument cluster	125 kHz	6.4 dBµA/m	5, 21
Mobile phone interface	GSM 900: 880 MHz - 915 MHz	33 dBm	12
	GSM 1800: 1710 MHz - 1785 MHz	30 dBm	12
	UMTS FDD I: 1920 MHz - 1980 MHz	24 dBm	12
	UMTS FDD III: 1710 MHz - 1785 MHz	24 dBm	12
	UMTS FDD VIII: 880 MHz - 915 MHz	24 dBm	12
	LTE FDD B3: 1710 MHz - 1785 MHz	23 dBm	12
	LTE FDD B7: 2500 MHz - 2570 MHz	23 dBm	12
	LTE FDD B8: 880 MHz - 915 MHz	23 dBm	12
	LTE FDD B20: 832 MHz - 862 MHz	23 dBm	12
Wireless charging	110 kHz -113 kHz	42 dBµA/m	37
Wi-Fi	2402 MHz - 2482 MHz	15 dBm	12

Supplier table

Number	Address
3	Continental ADC Automotive Distance Control Systems GmbH Peter-Dornier-Str. 10 88131 Lindau Germany
5	Continental Automotive GmbH VDO-Straße 1 64832 Babenhausen Germany
12	Harman Becker Automotive Systems GmbH Becker-Göring-Str. 16 76307 Karlsbad Germany
13	Hella KGaA. Hueck & Co. Rixbecker Straße 75 59552 Lippstadt Germany
21	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH Robert-Bosch-Str. 200 31139 Hildesheim Germany
26	Digades GmbH, digitales u. analoges Schaltungsdesign Äußere Weberstraße 20 02763 Zittau Germany
29	LG Electronics European Shared Service Center B.V. Krijgsman 1 1186 DM Amstelveen Netherlands
35	Robert Bosch GmbH Postfach 1661 71226 Leonberg Germany
37	Molex Technologies GmbH Mizarstraße 3 12529 Schönefeld Germany

Note

You can also find additional information e.g. product identifications at the Internet address www.audi.com/generalinfo.

81B012720AJ

Additional customer information



Fig. 223 Further customer information

① Singapore
② Russia
③ Belarus
④ United Kingdom (applies to products placed on the market from 01/01/2023 onwards)
⑤ Thailand
⑥ South Korea
⑦ Taiwan

United Kingdom market

UK Product Safety and Metrology Regulations

This vehicle has various devices installed that are subject to UK product regulations. The following acts as the importer of these devices for the United Kingdom market within the meaning of the Product Safety and Metrology Regulations:

Volkswagen Group United Kingdom Ltd.
Yeomans Drive, Blakelands Milton Keynes, MK14 5AN United Kingdom

Türkiye

TELSİZ EKİPMANLARI YÖNETMELİĞİ (2014/53/AB)

Aracınızda çeşitli telsiz ekipmanları bulunmaktadır. Telsiz Ekipmanları Yönetmeliği (2014/53/AB) açısından Türkiye pazarı için telsiz ekipmanı ithalatçısı[1)]:

Doğuş Otomotiv Servis ve Ticaret A.Ş
Şekerpınar Mah. Anadolu Cad., No: 45 D , PK: 41420 Çayırova/Kocaeli

Note

For some countries, further information and updates about radio equipment or product identifications for certain equipment versions ▶

1) Bu bilgi sadece resmi temsilcimiz olan Doğuş Otomotiv Servis ve Ticaret A.Ş.'nin ithal ettiği ürünler için geçerlidir.

can be found at the following Internet address: www.audi.com/generalinfo.

A

A/C cooling mode 72, 74
ABS
see Anti-lock brake system 100
ACC
see Adaptive cruise assist (driver messages) 134
Accelerator 87
Accessories 321
Active lane assist
see Lane departure warning 128, 135
Adaptive cruise assist 124
Cleaning sensors 294
Predictive control 130
Adaptive cruise assist (driver messages) . . . 134
Adaptive cruise control 124
see also Adaptive cruise assist 124
AdBlue 267
Capacity 324
Driver messages 267
Range 267
Additional phone 184, 258
Airbag system 56
Deactivating passenger's airbag 58
Air conditioner 71
see also Deluxe automatic air conditioner (2-zone) 71, 74
Air conditioner (manual) 72
Air distribution setting 72, 75
Air recirculation mode 72, 75
Alarm system
see Anti-theft alarm system 28
All-season tyres
see All-weather tyres 289
All-weather lights 39
All-weather tyres 289
Alpine roads 96
Alternative routes 218
Android Auto
see Audi smartphone interface 254
Announcements (traffic programme)
Volume 262
Anti-dazzle interior mirror 44
Anti-freeze
Coolant 278
Windscreen washer system 284
Anti-lock brake system 100
Anti-theft alarm system 28
Anti-theft wheel bolts 303
Apple CarPlay
see Audi smartphone interface 254
Armrest (front centre) 50
Ashtray 65
ASR
see Traction control system 100
Audi adaptive light 39
Audi connect
see connect 198, 199
Audi connect infotainment
Overview of services 202
Personal hotspot 200
Audi drive select 98
Audi music interface 241
Audi music stream
see Wi-Fi 205, 238
Audio files 245
Audi online manuals 7
Audio player
Bluetooth audio player 238
Wi-Fi audio player 238
Audio track 248
Audi phone box 186
Audi pre sense 138
Driver messages 140
Rear 140
Audi pre sense front 139
Audi side assist 141
Cleaning area around camera 294
Audi smartphone interface 254, 259
Audi virtual cockpit
see Instrument cluster 16
AUTO
Air conditioner 74
Automatic headlights 39
Auto Lock (central locking system) 25
Automatic gearbox 85
Auxiliary heating/ventilation 76
AUX input 241, 243
Average fuel consumption 21, 22
Average speed 21, 22
Axle loads 324

B

BACK button 156
Background lighting 43
Balance (sound) 261
Bandages
see First-aid kit 299
Bass box 305
Bass (sound) 261
Battery
Charging (12 Volt vehicle battery) 283
Vehicle battery (12 Volt) 281
Winter conditions (12 Volt vehicle battery) .282
Battery, charging (mobile devices) 186
Battery, replacing
12 Volt vehicle battery 282
Bicycle rack (trailer) 109
Biodiesel 264
Bioethanol (fuel) 263
Blind
Sun roof 37
Blower 72, 74
Bluetooth 200
Audio player 238
Connecting a mobile phone 182
Settings 259
Boost pressure display 21
Boot
see Luggage compartment 66
Boot lid
Close button 34
General information 32
Opening/closing 33
Opening/closing electrically 34
Releasing manually 35
Box spanner 300
Brake fluid
Checking brake fluid level 280
Brakes 92
Brake fluid 280
Emergency braking function 94
Hot 96
New brake pads 92
Browser
see Media centre 246
Bulbs, changing 314
Buttons
Assigning functions (multi-function steering wheel) 24
Multi-function steering wheel 17
Operating unit (MMI) 156

C

Cables (USB adapter/AUX adapter) 241
Calling up media 245
Call list 187
Call options 195
Cameras
Areas covered 113
Positions 115
Capacities 324
AdBlue 267
Caps for wheel bolts, removing 302
Car care
Washing/cleaning 293
Car keys 30
Car phone 196
Using car phone function 183
Car wash 293
Catalytic converter 271
CD drive 236
Central locking switch 27
Central locking system 25
Adjusting settings 26
Auto Lock 25
Boot lid 33
Convenience key 31
Convenience open/close 37
Driver messages 27
Locking/unlocking doors manually 28
Remote control key 31
Vehicle key 31
Centre backrest, folding up/down 68
Certificate of conformity 330
Certification 327, 330
Cetane number (diesel) 264
Changing bulbs 314
Changing settings for additional display 19
Charging
see Power sources 65
Charging battery (mobile devices) .241, 243, 244

81B012720AJ

Chassis number
see Vehicle identification number 323
Chemicals 326
Child lock
Electric windows 35
Rear doors 35
Child restraint system 59
Attaching with i-Size 62
Attaching with ISOFIX 62
Securing to top tether anchorage 63
Securing with seat belt 63
Cigarette lighter 65
Classic view 18
Cleaning 293
Cleaning/de-icing windows 295
Cleaning/treating natural leather 296
Cleaning carbon parts 295, 296
Cleaning controls and displays 296
Cleaning fabrics 296
Cleaning leatherette 296
Cleaning microfibre 296
Cleaning plastic parts 296
Cleaning rubber seals 295
Closing
Blind (sun roof) 37
Bonnet 274
Boot lid 33
Convenience close 37
Panorama sun roof 37
Power-operated boot lid 34
Windows 36
Coasting 89
see also Recuperation 89
Coat hooks 66
Colour code 323
Commands (speech dialogue system) 174
Compact temporary spare wheel 306
Compartments 66
Conference calls 188
connect 198
Data plans 205
Emergency call 207
Infotainment 199
Infotainment services 201
Online roadside assistance 208
Privacy 319
Vehicle control services 203
Connection manager 257
Connections
see Media 235, 245
Consumer information 320
Consumption
Lowering 89
Consumption (fuel) 21, 22
Contacts 193
Displaying details 194
From another directory 259
Importing/exporting 195
Memory capacity 196
Searching for 194
Storing as a destination 218
Control buttons (MMI operation) 158
Controls
Switching infotainment display on/off 157
Convenience key 25
Convenience close 37
see also Vehicle keys 30
Convenience open/close
Windows/sun roof 37
Coolant temperature gauge 19
Cooling mode 72, 74
Cooling system
Anti-freeze 278
Checking coolant level 279
Topping up coolant 279
Crosshairs 211
Cup holders 66
Current fuel consumption 21, 22
Customer information regarding radio equipment 330

D

Data plans 205
Data protection 319
Date 256
Daytime running lights 39
Deactivating passenger's airbag 58
Declarations of conformity 327
DEF
see AdBlue 267
Default settings (air conditioner) 71

Defrosting (windows) 75
DEF (instrument cluster) 16
Deluxe automatic air conditioner (2-zone) . . . 74
Demo mode
see Presentation mode 218
Destination from map
Via MMI touch 211
Dictating
E-mail 192
Text messages 190
Diesel
Fuel 264
Paraffin-based fuel 264
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF)
see AdBlue 267
Digital rights management 235
Dimensions 323
Dipped headlights 39
Directional tread (tyres) 305
Directory
see Contacts 193
Display 17
Cleaning 296
Infotainment display 157, 257
Multi-function steering wheel 17
Variants (MMI) 157
Distance covered 21, 22
Distance warning 134
Doors
Child lock 35
Courtesy lighting 43
Locking/unlocking manually 28
Door safelock 28
Downhill speed control 96
Driver information system
Economy tips (analogue instrument cluster) . 23
Economy tips (Audi virtual cockpit) 22
Efficiency program 23
Energy consumers (Audi virtual cockpit) . . . 21
On-board computer (analogue instrument cluster) 22
On-board computer (Audi virtual cockpit) . . 21
Switching between displays 17
View 18
Drives
see Media 235, 245
Drive select
see Audi drive select 98
Drive system (driver message) 91
Driving abroad 205
Driving away 84
Driving off-road 97
Driving off (assist function)
see Hold assist 94
Driving program 133
Driving school mode 326
Driving time 21, 22
Driving tips
Driving efficiently 89
Driving off-road 97
Driving through water 97
Hills and gradients 96
Dust filter
see Enhanced air filter with activated carbon 71
Dynamic volume control
see System volume 261

E

E-mail 191
E10
see Ethanol (fuel) 263
eco mode (air conditioner) 74
Economical route 218
EDL
see Electronic differential lock 100
EDR
see Event data recorder (EDR) 317
Efficiency assist
Predictive control 130
Efficiency program 23
Electrical socket
see Power sources 65
Electrical system 281
Electric windows 36
Malfunction 36
Electromechanical parking brake 93
Electronic differential lock 100
Electronic immobiliser 30
Electronic stabilisation control 100
Embedded SIM card 199

81B012720AJ

Emergency assist 143
Emergency braking function 94
Emergency call 189, 207
Emergency running 88
Emission control system 270, 272
Energy consumers 21
Energy management 90
Engine 89
  Coolant 278
  Jump-starting 306
  Power output 325
  Running in 89
  Start/stop system 90
  Starting/stopping 81
  Switching off in an emergency 81
Engine braking effect 89
Engine compartment
  Layout 275
  Opening/closing bonnet 274
  Safety information 272
Engine oil
  Checking 275
  Consumption 275
  Dipstick 277
  Oil change intervals 284
  Temperature gauge 20
  Topping up 275
  Type 275
  Warning lamp 276
Engine start/stop mode
  see Start/stop system 90
Engine start system 83
Engine stopping
  Coasting 89
  see also Start/stop system 90
Enhanced air filter with activated carbon 71
Entertainment drawer 162
Entry
  Using MMI touch 159
  Using the speller 164
Entry/exit lights 41
Environmental tips
  Filling the tank 265
  Leaks 273
EPB
  see Electromechanical parking brake 93
ESC
  see Electronic stabilisation control 100
ESC offroad 101
eSIM
  see Embedded SIM card 199
Ethanol (fuel) 263
EU Directive 2014/53/EU 327
Event data recorder (EDR) 317
Extended view 18
Exterior lighting 39
Exterior mirrors 44
  Folding in 44
  Folding in (setting) 26
External voice control 181

F

Factory settings
  Multi Media Interface 257
Fader (sound) 261
FAME (fuel) 264
Fastening rings 69
Fast forward/rewind (audio/video file) 245
Fast route 218
Favourites
  Media 247
  Navigation 212
  Telephone 189
File formats (media sources) 250
Filling the tank 265
  Fuel tank flap 265
  Releasing tank flap manually 266
Finding entries
  see Search function 165, 247
Fire extinguisher 299
First-aid kit 299
Flooded roads, tips for driving 97
Floor mat 49
Floor panel 69
Fog light(s) 39
Forward gear
  see Transmission positions 85
Four-wheel drive
  see quattro 100
Frequency band
  see Waveband 229

Front cabin (overview) 10
Front collision warning
see Audi pre sense front 138
Fuel 263
Capacity 324
Current fuel consumption 21, 22
Fuel gauge 16
Lowering consumption 89
Fuel economy
Recuperation 21
Fuel range 21, 22
Fuses 312

G

GALA
see Speed-dependent volume control 260
Gear shift indicator 23
Glove box 66
Gradients, driving on 96

H

Handbrake
see Electromechanical parking brake 93
Handsfree 183
Hands Free Profile 183
Hazard warning lights 42
Headlight range control 39
Headlights 39
Headlight range control 39
Washer system 45
Washer system (topping up washer fluid) . 284
Washing 294
Headlight washer system
Capacity 324
Head restraints
Adjusting 52
Removing/installing 52
Heated
Exterior mirrors 44
Rear window 73, 75
Seats 73, 75
Washer jets 45
HFP
see Hands Free Profile 182
High-visibility vest 299
Hill hold assist 84
Hills, driving on 96
Hold assist 94
Home address 212, 217
Horn 10
Hotspot
see Wi-Fi 205, 238

I

i-Size (attaching child restraint systems) 62
Ignition
Switching on/off 81
Immobiliser
see Electronic immobiliser 30
Importing/exporting contacts 195
Indicator lamps
see Warning lamps 11
Inflation pressures
Tyre pressure loss indicator 291
Tyres 288
Input level (media) 248
Inspection intervals
see Service interval display 284
Instrument cluster 16
Cleaning 296
Failure 16
Gear shift indicator 23
Service interval display 284
Instruments
Adjusting brightness 43
Interior lights 43
Interior mirror 44
Interior monitor 28
Intermittent wipe (windscreen wipers) 45
Internet
see connect 198, 199
Internet radio 240
iPod/iPhone
see Audi music interface 241
ISOFIX (attaching child restraint systems) . . . 62

J

Jack 300, 303
Jacking points 303

81B012720AJ

Jack plug (3.5 mm)
see AUX input 241, 243
Jukebox 237
Jump-starting 306

K

Key-operated switch for passenger's airbag . . 58
Keys 25, 30
Convenience open/close 37
Remote control key 30
Replacement key 30
Replacing battery 32
Safelock mechanism 28
Unlocking/locking 31
Kick-down 87

L

Lane assist
see Lane departure warning 128, 135
see Lane guidance (adaptive cruise assist) . 128
Lane departure warning 135
Lane guidance (adaptive cruise assist) 128
Language, setting 256
Lap timer 120
Launch control 87
Leather, cleaning/treating 296
Left-hand traffic 41
Left control button 18
Letters, entering (using the speller) 164
Licence conditions (MMI) 262
Lights 39
Changing bulbs 314
Driving on right/left 41
Exterior 39
Interior 43
Interior/reading lights 43
Light sensor/rain sensor
Automatic headlights 39
Switching rain sensor on/off 45
Locking/unlocking 25
By remote control 31
In the lock 28
Using Audi connect vehicle control services . 31
With the central locking switch 27
With the convenience key 31
Luggage compartment 66
Cover 68
Extending 68
Fastening rings 69
Power sources 65
Luggage rack
see Roof carrier 69
Lumbar support 50

M

Mailbox 193
Main beam headlights 40
Main beam assist 40
Maintenance 320
Maintenance intervals
see Service interval display 284
Make-up mirrors 45
Malfunction, electric windows 36
Manual air conditioner
see Air conditioner (manual) 72
Manual gear selection 86
Manual operation
Boot lid 35
Doors 28
Panorama sun roof 37
Map
Display 226
Functions 221
How to use 220
Settings 222
Update 210
Map update 224
Matt paintwork, washing 293
Maximum speed 325
Media 235
Drives 236
Media centre 246
Media drives
Formats supported 250
Memory capacity
Directory 195
Jukebox 237
Memory card
SD card reader (MMI) 236
Types/formats supported 250

Memory list
see Favourites 231
MENU button 156
Menu language
see Language, setting 256
Menus/symbols 166
Messages 190
see also E-mail 191
Mileage recorder 20
Resetting 20
Mirrors 44
Anti-dazzle setting 44
MMI
see Multi Media Interface 156
MMI search
see Search function 165, 247
MMI touch 159
Mobile hotspot
see Personal hotspot 200
Mobile phone
see Telephone 182
Mobile phone tray
see Audi phone box 186
Mountain passes 96
Mounting pin (for changing wheels) 300
MP3
see Jukebox 237
Multi-function steering wheel
Operation 17
Speech dialogue system 24
Switching between displays 17
Switching between tabs 17
Multi-function steering wheel plus 168
Multi Media Interface 156
Music
see Media 235, 245
Music collection
see Jukebox 237
Mute 261
myAudi 201, 214
Update 225

N

Natural commands (speech dialogue system) 180
NAV/MAP button 210
Navigation 210
Better route 228
Voice guidance 220
see also Map 220
Navigation (instrument cluster) 171
Network selection (telephone mode) 195
Neutral
see Transmission positions 85
NOx catalytic converter
see AdBlue 267
Number plate holder 321
Numbers/characters, entering (using the speller) 164

O

Octane rating (petrol) 263
Off-road
see Driving off-road 97
Oil
see Engine oil 275
On-board computer (analogue instrument cluster) 22
On-board computer (Audi virtual cockpit) . . . 21
ON/OFF button (MMI) 156
Onboard diagnostic system (OBD) 317
Online destinations
see Point of interest search 214
Online map 223
Online map update 224
Online media 240
Online Owner's Manual 7
Online roadside assistance 208
Online services
see connect 198, 199
Online traffic information 227
Opening 25
Blind (sun roof) 37
Bonnet 274
Boot lid 33
Convenience open 37
Fuel tank flap 265
Panorama sun roof 37
Power-operated boot lid 34
Windows 36
Opening/closing
see Unlocking/locking 25, 31

81B012720AJ

Operation
Multi-function steering wheel 17
Multi Media Interface 158
Speech dialogue system 174
Options menu 18, 158, 163
Overtake prevention 126
Overview diagram (front cabin) 10

P

Paddle levers 86
Paint code 323
Paint damage 295
Panorama sun roof 37
Closing manually 37
Convenience open/close 37
Paraffin-based fuel 264
Park assist 153
Parking 84
Parking aids 144
Adjusting volume 144, 146
Cleaning sensors/camera 294
Finding a parking space 150
Park assist 153
Parking system plus 145
Rear cross-traffic assist 149
Reversing camera 148
Trailer view 149
Parking and manoeuvring 144
Parking brake
see Electromechanical parking brake 93
Parking lights 40
Parking lock
Manual release 95, 96
see also Transmission positions 85
Particulate filter 271
Path descriptions in Owner's Manual 159
Pause (audio/video file) 245
Pedals 87
Performance (engine) 325
Personal hotspot 200
Personal route assist 216
Petrol 263
Phone book
see Contacts 193
Picture format (video) 248
Playback (media) 245
Playlist 247
Point of interest search 214
see also Special destination 213
Polishing 295
Pollen filter
see Enhanced air filter with activated carbon 71
Power-operated boot lid 34
Power sources 65, 186, 241, 243, 244
Power steering
see Steering 99
Predictive control 130
Pre sense
see Audi pre sense 138
Presentation mode 219
Pressure display (boost) 21
Programme guide
Radio 229
Progressive steering 99
Pyrotechnic components 320

Q

quattro 100
Selective wheel torque control 100

R

Radio 229
Detailed station information 231
Radio text 230
Station list 229
Radio equipment 321, 327
Radio Equipment Directive 327
Radio frequency
see Waveband 229
Radio transmitters 321
Rain sensor/light sensor
Automatic headlights 39
Switching rain sensor on/off 45
Random playback 248
REACH (chemicals regulation) 326
Reading lights 43
Rear armrest
see Cup holders 66
Rear cross-traffic assist 149

Rear of vehicle
Washing rear window 45
Rear seats, folding down 68
Rear window heating 73, 75
Recuperation 21
Reminder signal 256
Remote control
Auxiliary heating/ventilation 78
Remote control key 25, 30
Convenience open/close 37
LED 32
Replacement key 30
Replacing battery 32
Safelock mechanism 28
Synchronisation 32
Unlocking/locking 31
see also Vehicle keys 30
Repair kit
Tyre Mobility System (tyre repair kit) 300
Repairs 320
Replacement key 30
Replacement parts 321
Replacing battery
Vehicle keys 32
Reset
see Restart (MMI) 262
Restart (MMI) 262
Rest recommendation 119
Retaining hooks 66
Rev counter 16, 19
Reverse gear
see Transmission positions 85
Reversing camera 148
Rewind (audio/video file) 245
Right-hand traffic 41
Right control button 18
Rims 289
Washing 294
Ring tone settings 196
Rolling
Electromechanical parking brake 93
Hold assist 94
Neutral (N) 85
Rolling away 84
Roof
see Panorama sun roof 37
Roof carrier 69
Roof load 324
Rotary pushbutton with joystick function (MMI operation) 162
Route criteria 219
Route guidance
see Navigation 171, 210
Running in
New brake pads 92
New tyres 286
New vehicle 89

S

Safelock mechanism 28
Safety
Telephone 182
SAP
see SIM Access Profile 182
Saving fuel
Coasting 89
Economy tips (analogue instrument cluster) . 23
Economy tips (Audi virtual cockpit) 22
Efficiency program (analogue instrument cluster) 23
Energy consumers (Audi virtual cockpit) . . . 21
Recuperation 21
Scrappage 320
Screen
see Display 17
Screwdriver 300
SD card reader (MMI) 236
SDS
see Speech dialogue system 174
Search areas (special destination) 213
Search function 165
Media 247
Navigation 210
Radio 229
Telephone 194
Seat belts 53
Cleaning 296
Securing child restraint system 63
Seats
Adjusting 50
Cleaning 296
Folding down 68

81B012720AJ

Head restraints 51
Seat heating 73, 75
Selection menu 18, 158, 163
Selective catalytic reduction
see AdBlue 267
Selector lever 85
Selector lever position
see Transmission positions 85
Self-help 299
Self-learning navigation
see Personal route assist 216
Sensors
Areas covered 113
Positions 115
Serial number (IMEI) 196
Service interval display 284
Service intervals
see Service interval display 284
Service Schedule (digital) 7
Settings
Directory 196
Map 222
Media 248
Navigation 218
Radio 232
Speech dialogue system 257
System (MMI) 256
Telephone 195
Wi-Fi hotspot 205
Shuffle
see Random playback 248
Side assist
Cleaning sensors 294
see also Audi side assist 141
Side lights 39
SIM Access Profile 183
SIM card 199
SIM card reader 185, 199
Smartphone
see Telephone 182
SMS
see Text messages 190
Snow chains 290
Software update
see System update (MMI) 260
Software (MMI)
Licence conditions 262
Update 260
Version 260
Sound settings 260
Source overview 245
Spare wheel 306
Special destination 213
Speech dialogue system 174
Commands 175
Multi-function steering wheel 24
Operation 174
Settings 257
Volume 262
Speed-dependent volume control 261
Speed display (driving school vehicles) 326
Speed limit display
see Traffic sign recognition 116
Speed limits
see Traffic sign recognition 116
Speedometer 16
Speed regulation systems
Cruise control 122
Speed limiter 122
Speed warning function 116
Speller 164
Sport view 18
Start/stop system 90, 91
Switching off/on 90
Starting with jump leads 306
Starting (engine) 91
Station memory
see Favourites 231
Steering 99
Steering lock 81, 83, 99
Steering wheel
Adjustment 51
Manual adjustment 51
Paddle levers 86
see also Multi-function steering wheel . 17, 24
Stopover (navigation) 215
Stopping vehicle 84
Storage compartments 66
Streaming
see Online media 240
Stretch net 69

Subwoofer 261
Sun roof
see Panorama sun roof 37
Sun visors 45
Supplementary heater 71
Surround sound 261
Suspension 99
Suspension control 99
Switching between calls 188
Switching between tabs
see Multi-function steering wheel 17, 24
Switching character sets (MMI touch) 159
Switching engine off 91
Symbols 166
Navigation 220
Traffic 226
see also Warning lamps 11
Synchronisation (air conditioner) 74
System settings (MMI) 256
System update (MMI) 260
System volume 261

T

Tailgate
see Boot lid 33
Tank
Capacity 324
Technical changes 320
Technical data 323
Telephone 182
Audi phone box 186
Connecting a mobile phone 182
Dialling a number 187
Options during a call 188
Playing music 238
Settings 195
SIM card 185
Telephone mode 195
Temperature display
Coolant 16
Outside temperature 20
Temperature setting 72, 74
Tethering
see Personal hotspot 200
Text messages 190
Throttle
see Accelerator 87
Tightening torque (wheel bolts) 305
Time 256
Timer
see Lap timer 120
tiptronic
see Manual gear selection 86
TMC
see Traffic information 226
Tools 300
Top tether anchorage (securing a child restraint system) 63
Torque
Engine 325
Wheel bolts 305
Touch pad
see MMI touch 159
Tow-away protection 28
Tow-starting 309
Towing 103
Draw bar weight 103
Rear carrier systems 109
Removable towing bracket 105
Trailer stabilisation 108
Trailer weight 103, 324
Towing away 308
Towline anchorage 310
TPMS
Tyre pressure loss indicator 291
Traction control system 100
Trademarks 326
Traffic announcements
see Traffic programme (TP) 230
Traffic avoidance 219
Traffic information 226
Traffic programme (TP) 230
Traffic sign recognition 116
Trailer mode (navigation) 219
Trailer view 149
Transmission positions 85
Treble (sound) 261
Turn signal display (driving school vehicles) . 326
Turn signals 40
Type plate 323

81B012720AJ

Tyres 286, 300
Changing 302
Directional tread 305
Inflation pressure 288
Lettering 286
Load index 286
Low-profile tyres 290
Manufacturing date 286
Service life 287
Speed rating 286
Tyre pressure loss indicator 291
Tyre pressure (towing a trailer) 103
Wear indicator 287

U

Unlocking/locking
By remote control 31
In the lock 28
With the convenience key 31
USB charging socket 241, 243, 244
USB input 65
USB stick
see Audi music interface 241

V

Vehicle
Dimensions 323
Identification data 323
Raising 303
Securing 84
Starting 81
Stopping 84
Taking out of service 298
Unlocking/locking 31
Vehicle control services 203
Vehicle data sticker 323
Vehicle identification number 323
Vehicle keys 25, 30
Vents, adjusting 76
Version information 260
VIEW button 17
VIN
see Vehicle identification number 323
Voice control function
External 181
Voice guidance
see Multi-function steering wheel 17, 24
Volume 261
Volume mute
see Mute 261

W

Warning lamps 11
Warning triangle 299
Wash/wipe 45
Washing 293
Washing ornamental trim/mouldings 295
Washing rear lights 294
Washing tailpipes 295
Waveband 229, 231
Waxing 295
Web radio 240
Weights 324
Wheel bolts 289
Changing wheel(s) 302
Wheel covers, removing 302
Wheel imbalance 287
Wheels 286
Changing 302
Tyre pressure loss indicator 291
Washing 294
Wi-Fi
Audi music stream 238
Audio player 238
Online media 240
Personal hotspot 200
Settings 205
Using hotspot 201
Window blind
see Panorama sun roof 37
Windows
Child lock 35
Cleaning/de-icing 295
Convenience open/close 37
Defrosting 72, 75
Demisting 72, 74, 75
Electric windows 36
Opening/closing 36
Windscreen 45
Windscreen washer system 45, 284
Capacity 324

Windscreen wipers 45
Winter conditions
Cooling system 278
De-icing windows 295
Defrosting windows 72, 75
Diesel 264
Rear window heating 73, 75
Seat heating 73, 75
Snow chains 290
Tyres 289
Vehicle battery (12 Volt) 282
Washing the vehicle 293
Windscreen washer system 284
Winter tyres 289
Wiper blades
Changing (front) 47
Changing (rear) 47
Cleaning 46
WLAN
see Wi-Fi 205, 238

Z

Zooming (map) 211, 220

81B012720AJ

No part of this publication may be reprinted, reproduced or translated without the written permission of AUDI AG. AUDI AG reserves the right to change the information in this publication without prior notice. All rights under the laws of copyright are expressly reserved by AUDI AG.

AUDI AG, Auto-Union-Straße 1,
85057 Ingolstadt, Germany

© 2023 AUDI AG

Owner's Manual
English 11.2023
81B012720AJ



81B012720AJ

www.audi.com